

# THE PPE REVIEW

Philosophy, Politics and Economics



Volume 5, August 2017

# THE PPE REVIEW

Philosophy, Politics and Economics

# **EDITORS' NOTE**

Welcome to the latest issue of The PPE Review: Philosophy, Politics and Economics! Following the success of our previous issues, we are very pleased to present this newest edition. The confluence of philosophy, politics and economics as academic disciplines allows for a wide range of ideas, hypotheses, and methodologies, and this is reflected in the range of articles in this issue.

Philosophy, Politics and Economics aims to encourage this kind of multidisciplinary discourse and investigation, especially among high school students who may be contemplating a career that involves one or more of these fields. Once again we received many submissions for this issue, and while many impressive articles were received, we selected the seven that best exemplified the combination of the three disciplines. Thank you again to all scholars who took the time and effort to send us your articles. We hope to read your future work and congratulations to the newest crop of PPE scholars!

# CONTENTS

Social Entrepreneurship Using Game Theory	5
Alois Alzheimer: Defining, Understanding, and Delineating Dementia	13
The Fukushima Daiichi Nuclear Power Plant: Lessons from a Preventable Nuclear Accident	21
Edward Snowden: Taking a stand for American Liberty	31
Gender and Politics in the US	40
Taking a Stand in History: The Third Estate in the French Revolution	47
Women's Rights in China	58
Industrialization and Human Rights	66
Taking a Stand: Angela Merkel and the Syrian Immigrant Crisis	74
Factors That Determine The State Of Death	84
Alan Turing's Royal Pardon: Taking a Stand Against Re-writing History	96
Objective, Obliteration and Oblivion of Giordano Bruno's Ideas	111
Revolutions, Coups and Social Equality	122
Customized Tissue Repair Therapeutic Cloning Moving Towards iPS Technology	129
The Great Sioux War of 1876: Native Americans Taking a Stand in History	141
Social Enterprises in a Business Setup	156
Religion Based Information	166
Terrorism in the 21 <sup>st</sup> Century	173
World War II in Korea	179
Turkey Coups and Stock Market	185
Wertheimer's Modes and Applications of Productive Thinking	196

# Social Entrepreneurship Using Game Theory

Aaron Youngmin Lee  
North London Collegiate School Jeju

---

## Abstract

The purpose of the present research involves discovering the connection between game theories and the association with social entrepreneurship. In order to comprehensively make the association, various types of game theories need to be examined so as to provide sufficient background information for the synthesis that will follow thereafter. The article first explores the various aspects of social entrepreneurship including but not limited to the definition of terms that are contained in the phenomenon. Moreover, the article interrogates the various types of game theories among them the prisoner's dilemma, the chicken game, and coordination game. The provision of the examples of these games particularly with respect to the economic aspect of the game provides a great example of the economic application of the game theory as far as social entrepreneurship may be concerned. After examining social entrepreneurship and game theory as stand-alone concepts, the paper then strives to make the connection between the two conceptions. It is revealed that the game theory enables social entrepreneurs to make tactical decisions at the business level that then allows them to floor competition. In addition, the section uncovers the economic impact that game theory has on communities when it is properly applied by a social entrepreneur. Further, the paper examines the impact that specific types of game theory such as the prisoner's dilemma can have on social entrepreneurship. Essentially, the paper provides evidence as to the importance of the game theory to social entrepreneurs and the manner in which the decisions that are made within its realms positively impact the economic wellbeing of the host community.

## Introduction

Social entrepreneurship has in the recent past depended on the successful integration of pertinent theories such as the game theory. According to numerous definitions, social entrepreneurship refers to realization and application of sustainable and innovative ideas to support social change at a significant scale in multiple fields such as healthcare, education, environment, and business development among others (Choi & Majumdar, 2014). Studies have revealed that social entrepreneurs have various characteristics that make them unique and capable of bringing change. For example, they are innovative and push for change to better situations (Grimes et al., 2013). On the other hand, game theory refers to a formal study of cooperation and conflict between individuals or groups of people

such as managers, employees, and consumers among others. Various authors argue that it focuses on their decisions, which affect each other and analyzes the outcomes thereof (Griskevicius, Cantú, & Vugt, 2012). In addition, extensive literatures reveal that the application of the game theory is widespread and this has made it a very important concept. The theory has been useful in areas such as the military, evolutionary biology, war, business, economics, politics as well as psychology and it has been employed to address fundamental issues in those areas. Therefore, since game theory has many applications, social entrepreneurs can use it to investigate the decisions and behaviors of certain groups of people in order to come up with strategies that will improve their society (Lepoutre, 2011).

## **Social Entrepreneurship**

The role of social entrepreneurship in modern society is found in its capacity to provide an entrepreneurship form that is altruistic and one which emphasizes on the societal benefits therein. The broad purpose of social entrepreneurship leads to the creation of various terms and concepts that may be defined differently. A social entrepreneur is one of the fundamental terms within the purview of the discussion and according to numerous authors, it refers to a person who identifies immediate societal issues and then seeks to comprehend the broader context of a challenge that crosses various disciplines and theories (Pless, 2012). Moreover, the term social capital as used in social entrepreneurship refers to a form of cultural and economic capital whereby the social networks are pivotal and the transactions therein are characterized by numerous aspects including reciprocity as well as market agents who produce services and goods for the wider society.<sup>1</sup> Social mission is another important term in social entrepreneurship. According to numerous literatures, it is the ability of a company to do economic good as far as the society is concerned and it is one of the fundamental aspects that shapes the economic image of a social enterprise (Gedajlovic, 2013). Also, there are various concepts within social entrepreneurship and they include conceptions such as entrepreneurship. Eckhardt and Shane (2003) postulate that “The concept of entrepreneurship refers to the identification, evaluation and exploitation of opportunities to bring new products or services into existence as new outputs to be sold at prices higher than their cost of production” (34). Feinberg posits that ‘opportunities’ is another concept that is found within the social entrepreneurship discussion (Feinberg, 2006). He states that it refers to the chances that are derived from prevailing societal social challenges and it encompasses an endeavor to establish social value. Lastly, the concept of social economy is paramount as it is derived from the connection between the social purpose and profit-seeking mandate of a social enterprise (Doherty, Haugh, & Lyon, 2014). Therefore, it is a concept that examines the economic viability of enterprises as well as the value of charities and non-profit organizations within the traditional economic principles.

Research has been conducted to determine the characteristics of social entrepreneurs. Given that social entrepreneurs are tasked with finding solutions for matters that affect the society, they have been demonstrated as being innovative and this positively affects their capacity to find new products and services (Felício, 2013). Miller et al. (2012) state that social entrepreneurs constantly strive to improve the existing options for success at a larger scale. Additionally, social entrepreneurs have been demonstrated to put emphasis on creating ecological and social value and optimize fi-

nancial value (Abu-Saifan, 2012). Social entrepreneurs have also been indicated to believe in the strength of the society and the ability of people to develop on a social and economic perspective (Leboucher, 2012). These characteristics are important as they ensure that a social entrepreneur succeeds in their endeavor to make the society a better place.

## Game theory

As mentioned before, social entrepreneurs can employ various game theories to explore decisions and behaviors of people in order to improve their society. Specifically, this paper will examine prisoner's dilemma, the chicken game, and coordination game.

Prisoner's dilemma assumes two people that have been arrested after committing a crime; consequently, they are separated and each one is told to confess in order to get a reduced sentence. Notably, each prisoner does not know what the other may decide (Rapoport, 2012). This allows the individual to scrutinize not only the behavior of the opponent, but also himself or herself, in order to predict the decision of the opponent and optimally respond. For example, this game theory may rise when Google and Apple executives want to make a decision on whether to collude so as exercise duopolistic authority on the market regarding similar operating software that they both have. Both firms know that ethical collaboration between them is important as this will lead to restricted output and raised prices, which will then permit them to enjoy abnormal profits. However, the application of Prisoner's dilemma indicates that Apple and Google lack the capacity to maintain a stable equilibrium, even when they are conniving, and an assumption is made to the effect that there are no other market competitors during this period (Holt, Johnson, & Schmidtz, 2015). Consequently, this will result to a situation whereby either Apple or Google cheats thereby making them accrue greater profits, which means that the other party will lose its market share.

Chicken game assumes two players who dare to drive towards each other in a straight line to see who between them will swerve off the track to avoid contact, which may lead to dire consequences. The one that maintains the straight line gains more points as opposed to the one who avoids contact. Specifically, this theory may apply to a situation whereby two firms A and B engage in price wars since they have a similar product (Archetti & Scheuring, 2012). If they both insist on selling the products at below-cost prices, they both risk going bankrupt. However, if one of the firms, say B, eventually gives up leading to the winner, A, having the entire market, then there will be a loser and a winner in the market. In relation to The Chicken Game, A has maintained the straight line while B has veered off the track and this has resulted to A gaining more traction in the market. The act for survival of one firm leads to an exacerbation of the situations of all the firms. For this reason, the last remaining firm will be the winner, but it would have lost a huge amount of profits a situation that may affect its economic wellbeing within the market.

In coordination game, two parties are asked to choose between a set of items. In case they choose the same item, they are rewarded; otherwise, they are not (Wittek, Snijders, & Nee, 2013). Their choices are independent of each other, meaning that they do not know what the other may have chosen. An example of this theory may involve a case whereby a petrol station at a particular place has to decide whether to sell diesel or petrol. Similarly, prospective customers who want to buy vehicles are also debating on whether to buy diesel or petrol vehicles for their usages. If the petrol station chooses to sell diesel and the customers also decide to buy diesel-run vehicles, then the two

will benefit from their independent decisions. However, if they make contradictory decisions, then both of them will lose out.

## Social Entrepreneurship Using Game Theory

According to Bart et al. (2013), the duo of social entrepreneurship and game theory are similar in the sense that they both permit decision-making processes that are going to impact the economic aspects of other people's lives. Indeed, numerous literature reviews regarding the impact of game theory on social entrepreneurship argue that the usage of game theory is particularly fundamental when it comes to the plotting of tactics by social entrepreneurs. According to various researchers, the applicability of the game theory in social entrepreneurship businesses is particularly prominent at the tactical level of the business. In order to validate this argument, Rotterdam (2016) posits that the most important business and, by extension, economic innovation have been affected by game theory. Thus the usage of game theory proffers social entrepreneurs with many analytical tools that they can in turn utilize to interrogate economic associations that various older tools such as the price theory could not comprehensively analyze (Hauert & Szabó, 2005; Rabin, 1993; Friedman, 1990; Aumann, 1989). This has allowed social entrepreneurs to employ the usage of game theory when they formulate tactical stratagems on how to win games that may involve the launch of new products in the market or the manner in which they can establish their products' prices.

According to Santos (2012), social entrepreneurs have been demonstrated as having accepted the usage of the game theory to make important decisions regarding the economic wellbeing of their community. It is further argued that game theory offers insights that can be considered as actionable in the eyes of social entrepreneurs (McMillan, 2013; Myerson, 2013; Shell, 2014). Various researchers posit that communities and social entrepreneurs are all surrounded by games that produce outcomes, which affect every individual in a society. The impacts of these outcomes encapsulate aspects of a community and/or society that both the members and the social entrepreneurs therein do not possess the regulation capacity over them. Game theory offers conceptual frameworks that permit social entrepreneurs to comprehend and predict before their competitions in the market, the happenstances that are likely to occur in games that may involve important aspects of their investments such as price (Samuelson, 2016). Various assertions have been provided in order to attempt to explain this particular impact of game theory on businesses including social entrepreneurship. McAdams (2013) supports this line by stating that "Game theory can elucidate the reasons as to why certain business entities incline towards unprofitability, the cycle of overbuilding and the overcapacity, as well as the predisposition to implement actual alternatives earlier in comparison to optimal circumstances."

As mentioned before, there are various types of game theories that can be used by social entrepreneurs to take care of the interests of the people. As an instance, the prisoner's dilemma game theory possesses the capacity to determine the strategy that people may choose. In most cases, it has been shown that people can only choose the stratagems that will offer them the best economic outcome for every person that will be affected by the decision (Dresher, Shapley, & Tucker, 2016; Colman, 2013; Manshaei, 2013). This particularly falls within the definition of the game theory and specifically the prisoner's game whereby social entrepreneurs have to be cognizant of the trade-off that may exists between value-creation and value-capture when they make certain decisions, particularly ones that may affect the economic wellbeing of the society as well as the business. However,

critics have postulated that the usage of prisoner's dilemma, inasmuch as it may be used to ensure good stratagems for the involved players are achieved, may also accentuate the individualism that exists in people (Roth, 2002; Dufwenberg & Kirchsteiger, 2004). It has been indicated that in a few cases, social entrepreneurs may undertake decisions that only empower their ventures economically, leaving other players in a bad state.

Moreover, other authority voices on the matter have stipulated that the game theory has the capacity to highlight levels of existing competition in the line of social entrepreneurship that people may be undertaking. Specifically, the usage of the chicken game can prove particularly useful in this respect as Teece (2014) states that it can be used to merge the efforts of various individuals in order to ensure that the society is a better place. To highlight this point, various social entrepreneurs may decide to offer a certain line of products. Invariably, the differences in the qualities of the product are going to be accentuated as people become accustomed to them. In order for the society to benefit from the same product, the competition will have to die by way of one of the social entrepreneurship making low quality product leaving the market (Schotter, 2008; Camerer, 2003). By making such a decision, the society is going to benefit from using high-quality products that may essentially give them value for their money. As a consequence, the decision will make the society better-off in comparison to its initial state.

Finally, the level of choices that groups of individuals make and having knowledge regarding them ensures that the game theory to be play an important role in social entrepreneurship. The coordination game is particular integral in this aspect as it ensures that individuals in one group comprehend the choices that other people from other groups are making (Gardner, 2013). This allows them to understand the alternative decisions and choices that factions within a group or other groups may be making. By doing this, the faction that uses the coordination game gains an upper hand and makes decisions that are advantageous to them (Giocoli, 2003). In most cases, these decisions are inclined towards making the society a better place economically. Therefore, through the usage of the coordination game, social entrepreneurs would simulate the decisions that the competitors would make thereby allowing them to be a step ahead of them. For this reason, the utilization of game theory gives social entrepreneurs an insight into what other groups and/or competitors do leading them to make brilliant choices.

## Conclusion

The analysis has revealed that the game theory plays a fundamental role in the social entrepreneurship realm. Social entrepreneurs particularly benefit from it owing to the fact that it can assist them to investigate certain issues in certain groups of people in the society and help to uncover their solution. The various types of game theory can be used by social entrepreneurs to proffer solutions to other societal matters. Also, the usage of game theory by social entrepreneurs principally impacts the economic aspect of the society. Therefore, knowledge in gaming theory is undoubtedly an added advantage to social entrepreneurs.

## References

Abu-Saifan, S. (2012). Social entrepreneurship: definition and boundaries. *Technology Innovation Management Review*, 2(2).

Archetti, M., & Scheuring, I. (2012). Review: Game theory of public goods in one-shot social dilemmas without assortment. *Journal of Theoretical Biology*, 299, 9-20.

Aumann, R. J. (1989). Game theory. In *Game Theory* (pp. 1-53). Palgrave Macmillan UK.

Batjargal, B., Hitt, M. A., Tsui, A. S., Arreagle, J. L., Webb, J. W., & Miller, T. L. (2013). Institutional polycentrism, entrepreneurs' social networks, and new venture growth. *Academy of Management Journal*, 56(4), 1024-1049.

Blackburn, R. A., Hart, M., & Wainwright, T. (2013). Small business performance: business, strategy and owner-manager characteristics. *Journal of small business and enterprise development*, 20(1), 8-27.

Camerer, C. (2003). *Behavioral game theory: Experiments in strategic interaction*. Princeton University Press.

Choi, N., & Majumdar, S. (2014). Social entrepreneurship as an essentially contested concept: Opening a new avenue for systematic future research. *Journal of Business Venturing*, 29(3), 363-376.

Colman, A. M. (2013). *Game theory and its applications: In the social and biological sciences*. Psychology Press.

Dresher, M., Shapley, L. S., & Tucker, A. W. (Eds.). (2016). *Advances in Game Theory*. (AM-52) (Vol. 52). Princeton University Press.

Dufwenberg, M., & Kirchsteiger, G. (2004). A theory of sequential reciprocity. *Games and economic behavior*, 47(2), 268-298.

Doherty, B., Haugh, H., & Lyon, F. (2014). Social enterprises as hybrid organizations: A review and research agenda. *International Journal of Management Reviews*, 16(4), 417-436.

Eckhardt, J. T., & Shane, S. A. (2003). Opportunities and entrepreneurship. *Journal of management*, 29(3), 333-349.

Feinberg, R. (2006). Effective Management of Social Enterprises: Lessons From Businesses and Civil Society Organizations in Iberoamerica. *Foreign Affairs*, 85(6), 169-170.

Felício, J. A., Martins Gonçalves, H., & da Conceição Gonçalves, V. (2013). Social value and organizational performance in non-profit social organizations: Social entrepreneurship, leadership, and socioeconomic context effects. *Journal Of Business Research*, 66(10), 2139-2146.

Friedman, J. W. (1990). *Game theory with applications to economics*. Oxford University Press, USA.

Gardner, R. (2003). *Games for business and economics*. Wiley.

Gedajlovic, E., Honig, B., Moore, C. B., Payne, G. T., & Wright, M. (2013). Social capital and entrepreneurship: A schema and research agenda. *Entrepreneurship Theory and Practice*, 37(3), 455-478.

Giocoli, N. (2003). *Modeling rational agents: From interwar economics to early modern game theory*. Edward Elgar Publishing.

Grimes, M. G., McMullen, J. S., Vogus, T. J., & Miller, T. L. (2013). Studying the origins of social entrepreneurship: compassion and the role of embedded agency. *Academy of management review*, 38(3), 460-463.

Griskevicius, V., Cantú, S. M., & Vugt, M. V. (2012). The evolutionary bases for sustainable behavior: Implications for marketing, policy, and social entrepreneurship. *Journal of Public Policy & Marketing*, 31(1), 115-128.

Hauert, C., & Szabó, G. (2005). Game theory and physics. *American Journal of Physics*, 73(5), 405-414.

Holt, C., Johnson, C., & Schmidt, D. J. (2015, January). Prisoner's dilemma experiments. In *Cambridge University Press*.

Leboucher, C., Chelouah, R., Siarry, P., & Le Méne, S. (2012). A swarm intelligence method combined to evolutionary game theory applied to the resources allocation problem. *International Journal of Swarm Intelligence Research (IJSIR)*, 3(2), 20-38.

Lepoutre, J., Justo, R., Terjesen, S., & Bosma, N. (2011). *Designing a global standardized methodology for measuring social entrepreneurship* (No. 1107). Global Entrepreneurship Research Association.

Manshaei, M. H., Zhu, Q., Alpcan, T., Bacşar, T., & Hubaux, J. P. (2013). Game theory meets network security and privacy. *ACM Computing Surveys (CSUR)*, 45(3), 25.

McMillan, J. (2013). *Game theory in international economics*. Taylor & Francis.

Miller, T. L., Grimes, M. G., McMullen, J. S., & Vogus, T. J. (2012). Venturing for others with heart and head: How compassion encourages social entrepreneurship. *Academy of management review*, 37(4), 616-640.

Myerson, R. B. (2013). *Game theory*. Harvard university press.

Pless, N. M. (2012). Social entrepreneurship in theory and practice—an introduction. *Journal of Business Ethics*, 1-4.

Rabin, M. (1993). Incorporating fairness into game theory and economics. *The American economic review*, 1281-1302.

Rapoport, A. (Ed.). (2012). *Game theory as a theory of conflict resolution* (Vol. 2). Springer Science & Business Media.

Ridley-Duff, R., & Bull, M. (2015). *Understanding social enterprise: Theory and practice*. Sage.

Roth, A. E. (2002). The economist as engineer: Game theory, experimentation, and computation as tools for design economics. *Econometrica*, 70(4), 1341-1378.

Rotterdam, E. (2016). *Game Theory for Managers: EUR.Nl. Eur.* Accessed October 7, 2016. <http://www.eur.nl/minor/minoren/faculteit/rsm/gbfp/>.

Samuelson, L. (2016). Game Theory in Economics and Beyond. *The Journal of Economic Perspectives*, 30(4), 107-130.

Santos, F. M. (2012). A positive theory of social entrepreneurship. *Journal of business ethics*, 111(3), 335-351.

Schotter, A. (2008). The economic theory of social institutions. *Cambridge Books*.

Shell, K. (2014). *Game theory and applications*. T. Ichiishi, A. Neyman, & Y. Tauman (Eds.). Academic Press.

Teece, D. J. (2014). The foundations of enterprise performance: Dynamic and ordinary capabilities in an (economic) theory of firms. *The Academy of Management Perspectives*, 28(4), 328-352.

“What Is a Social Entrepreneur ? 2016. *Schwabfound.org*. Accessed October 7, 2016. <http://www.schwabfound.org/content/what-social-entrepreneur>.

Wittek, R., Snijders, T., & Nee, V. (Eds.). (2013). *The handbook of rational choice social research*. Stanford University Press.

Wynn, S., & Felin, T. (2013). Game Theory, Conditional Preferences, and Social Influence. *PloS One*, 8(2).

# Alois Alzheimer: Defining, Understanding, and Delineating Dementia

Jeong Hwa Lee  
Seoul International School

---

## Author's biography:

I am a rising senior attending Seoul International School. My career goal is straightforward: I want to study business and become a social entrepreneur by establishing a company with social values. In order to achieve my goal, I've created a start-up business focused on developing an app called Pindicate, a GPS tracking app for Alzheimer's patients. Through one of my business competitions, I have found out that Alzheimer is one of the most prevalent diseases that has no direct cure, which motivated me to deeply delve into the subject, ultimately prompting me to write this paper on Alzheimer's disease and develop an app for Alzheimer's patients. By using Pindicate and my future education as a steppingstone, I am driven to become an innovator and a pioneer for the betterment of the society.

## Abstract

Alzheimer's disease is one of the most prevalent and quickly increasing illnesses that takes man loved ones. However, Alzheimer's disease is commonly confused with dementia and is viewed as the same type of brain disease. Even throughout history, mental illnesses were merely viewed as symptoms of aging, and without advanced medical technology, mental illnesses were group together into one category. This paper discusses Alois Alzheimer's role in taking a stand against rigid scientific practices and institutional difficulties in order to discover Alzheimer's disease and to distinguish it as a separate and unique brain disorder. It also examines how Alzheimer invented innovative techniques to circumvent the conventions of the time, which ultimately helped him characterize the disease.

Although the human brain is viewed as the center of intelligence and reason, knowledge about the role and significance of it was scarce up until recent history. The first known reference to a brain illness, dementia specifically, was recorded on papyrus around 1700 BCE when an Egyptian writer documented several brain related injuries (Bainbridge, 2008). These medical documents revealed that Egyptians recognized the heart and the diaphragm as the beginnings of "mental life," and knew that memory disorders could come with old age (Gross, 1998). During the Enlightenment,

dementia was often referred to as “second childhood,” “imbecility,” and “organic brain syndrome”. Although various forms of dementia were recognized throughout history, the medical community lacked a systematic description of the clinicopathological characteristics of the illness until the end of the 19th century (Beach, 1987). The prevailing recommendation was institutionalization to keep patients separated from society.

After utilizing cutting edge research in the study of a 51-year-old woman with a history of memory impairment, hallucinations, and delusions, Alzheimer was successful in describing the pathological and clinical features that are now associated with Alzheimer’s disease (Maurer, Volk, and Gerbaldo, 1997; Maurer and Maurer, 1999; Spielmeyer, 1916). These findings would serve as the foundation for much of the contemporary research attempting to cure the disease (Cipriani, Dolciotti, and Picchi, 2011). Alzheimer’s disease currently affects over 25 million people, making it the most common neurodegenerative disease in the world (Qiu, Kivioelto, and von Strauss, 2009). There are an estimated 7 million people with Alzheimer’s disease in Europe and 5 million in the United States, which is very likely to increase to 14~16 million by 2050 (Jellinger, 2006).

Ultimately, Alzheimer left behind the conventions of medicine at the time in order to investigate mental disorders using scientific processes that would allow him to define, understand, and treat these medical issues in a responsive way. He worked the prevailing psychiatric system in order to champion this demographic of patients and determine the primary characteristics of senile dementia, which would later allow for the understanding that this condition was not merely a sign of normal aging or a psychological condition but rather a distinct disease process (Yanagihara, 1999).

## **The History of Medicine Up to the 19th Century**

The history of medicine up to the 19th century was still in its developing stage, as the world lacked a clear correlation between life, death, disease, and medicine. Even during the Renaissance, there were blurred differentiations between animate and inanimate objects as well as mythical presumptions of matter and living things (Roizin, 1957). In the field of psychiatry, witches, alchemy, and zodiac signs defined the diagnosis and treatment of mental diseases (Roizin et al., 1957). It was not until the Reformation period that scientists turned from the traditional view that mental illnesses were caused by mystical outside forces to views that they were conditions of the mind (Roizin et al., 1957).

Misconceptions about relationships between the human body and structure were disproven by famous scientists of the 16<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> centuries such as Andrea Vesalius, Isaac Newton, Robert Hooke, and Robert Boyle. The work of Charles Darwin, Gregor Mendel, Robert Koch, Louis Pasteur, and Claude Bernard changed the face of biology. Finally, the era of modern scientific medicine began with William Harvey’s study of blood circulation in 1628 (Weatherall, Greenwood, Chee, and Wasi, 2006).

## **Dementia in History**

The word dementia is derived from Latin, meaning “without mind” (Cipriani, Dolciotti, Picchi, and Bonuccelli, 2011). Throughout history, dementia was accepted as merely a symptom of aging. The ancient Egyptians thought the diaphragm and heart drove mentality and knew that major

memory dysfunctions could develop with age (Signoret and Hauw, 1991). Plato and Aristotle made similar observations regarding the correlation between age and memory loss (Cicero, 1923). While Plato viewed mental disorders as either bodily or moral disturbances, Aristotle emphasized that the whole bodily organism affects the mental state, and was able to mark a difference between acquired and congenital diseases. In addition to Plato and Aristotle, Hippocrates played a pioneering role in psychiatry by classifying mental disorders into phrenitis, mania, and melancholy and noting the association between vulnerability of a mental disease and hereditary factors.

Numerous authors of the Hellenistic Empire such as Aulus Celsus, Aretheus of Cappadocia, and Galen studied dementia, while Aretheus was the first to note the differences between long term and acute psychiatric and neurological disorders (Boller and Forbes, 1998; Donnet, Foncin, and Habib, 1991). Hippocrates and Galen both considered that long term and seemingly irreversible declines in cognitive functions were results of a disease located in other organs (Boller et al., 1998). While some researchers credit ancient Greeks with being the first to conceptualize dementia, Galen was the first to document dementia as a mental disorder (Halpert, 1983; Torack, 1983).

The term “dementia” has been defined differently throughout history. In the 18<sup>th</sup> century, it was defined as an acquired intellectual deficit (Cipriani et al., 2011). Therefore, patients who presented with severe trauma to the head were diagnosed with dementia. Before 1800, there were many similar disorders, which were labeled as “lethargy” and “stupidity” (Berrios, 1987). The lack of understanding of such disorders led to various patients marked as being in their “second childhood.” Ultimately, it was not until French physician Philippe Pinel and his student Jean Etienne Esquirol that senile dementia was differentiated and received its own classification of a mental disorder (Caixeta, Costa, Marques Vilela, and da Nobrega, 2014).

Pinel, a professor at the Paris Health School and the personal physician of Napoleon, sorted mental disorders into four groups: melancholy, mental retardation, mania, and dementia (Grange, 1963). Esquirol identified subtypes, incorporated clinical observation, and termed new concepts of mental disorders (Trichet and Lacroix, 2016). Esquirol was essential in the classifications of these disorders and was responsible for making the important distinction between dementia and stupidity (Cipriani et al., 2011). He has been quoted as comparing a man suffering with dementia as a wealthy man who has abruptly become poor while someone with amentia (idiocy), he describes as having always been miserable and wanting (Esquirol, 1838). Even with these advancements, dementia was still considered a natural sign of aging until the 19<sup>th</sup> century (Torack et al., 1983). The prevalence and the severity of the disease that leads to impairment and death highlight the significance of Alois Alzheimer taking a stand against previous notions of the disease and its treatments.

### **Alois Alzheimer: Scientist, Neurologist, Psychiatrist**

Alois Alzheimer was born on June 14, 1864 in Marktbreit-am-Main, a small town in Franconia (Goedert and Ghetti, 2007). Early into his university studies, he became interested in anatomy as well as forensic psychiatry, which sparked a lifetime passion for pathologies of the brain (Hippius and Neundorfer, 2003). After completing an essay in anatomy and defending his thesis, he also studied medicine at the Universities of Berlin, Tubingen, and Wurzburg where he received his MD in 1888 (Goedert et al., 2007; Graeber, 2006). In December 1888, Alzheimer started to work at the Frankfurt Asylum for the Mentally Ill and Epileptics in Frankfurt-am-Main, staying there for 14 years (Maurer et al., 1999). Alzheimer was able to contribute to the Frankfurt asylum by organizing

and modernizing it through no-restraint policies, hydrotherapy, and occupational therapy. He was heavily influenced by the Emil Sioli, the founder of the asylum, who believed that mental diseases were brain diseases and had to be treated in a respectful manner (Thiele, 1956).

While working in the asylum, Alzheimer met Franz Nissl, the assistant medical director of the Frankfurt asylum, who would greatly impact his career. Although young, Nissl was already a renowned histopathologist, having invented a new method for staining nerve cell bodies called the “Nissl Stain.” Quickly, Nissl and Alzheimer became close colleagues and lifelong friends (Kraepelin, 1920). Through their shared interests in histopathology and the study of brain illnesses, they were able to collaborate on the subject of psychiatry by utilizing emerging tools for microscopic analysis of the brain and the cerebral cortex (Gaupp, 1916; Spielmeyer et al., 1916).

Nissl was dedicated to developing novel methods of discovering symptoms while Alzheimer focused on associating psychiatric symptoms with histological results obtained from brain autopsies (Alzheimer, 1891). Their investigation of the anatomy of the cerebral cortex lasted until 1895 when Nissl accepted position at the University of Heidelberg under Emil Kraepelin, the most influential psychiatrist at that time (Cipriani et al., 2011). During his partnership with Nissl, Alzheimer was able to publish two research papers on cerebral arteriosclerosis and progressive paralysis (Alzheimer, 1896).

### **Auguste Deter and the First Characterization of Alzheimer’s Disease**

On 25 November 1901, Alzheimer began studying a 51-year-old patient named Auguste D., who had experienced a significant decline in her memory and was constantly afflicted with paranoia. When Auguste D. died in the asylum on 8 April 1906, Alzheimer asked for her brain and records to be sent to Munich for analysis (Alzheimer, 1907; Alzheimer, 1911). By using the silver staining method discovered by Max Bielschowsky, Alzheimer was able to make observations that would have profound impact on the medical world (Bielschowsky, 1902; Bielschowsky, 1903; Bielschowsky, 1904). In the patient’s cerebral cortex, Alzheimer found an abnormal thickening and proliferation of neurofibrillary tangles. He described his findings of the “peculiar disease of the cerebral cortex” at the 37th reunion of Southwest German psychiatrists in November 1906 (Alzheimer et al., 1891).

Through histological analysis of Auguste Deter’s degenerating neurons, Alzheimer was able to identify neurofibrillary tangles as being one of the principal pathological characteristics of the condition we know as Alzheimer’s disease. After other scientists noted the same tangles and plaques described by Alzheimer in patients with severe cognitive decline, the medical community began to accept Alzheimer’s as a biological disease and not a normal symptom of aging (Kumar, Mittal, Chaudhary, and Deep, 2014).

### **Overcoming the Institutional Difficulties in Studying Senile Dementia in the 1800’s**

Alois Alzheimer’s research did not gain monumental recognition initially since he was battling institutional difficulties in studying senile dementia. One of the notable characteristics of 1860s Germany was the increase in university hospital psychiatric clinics and state managed asylums. Psychiatric clinics were defined as smaller institutions focused on researching and teaching. The director of these clinics was a psychiatrist and a member of the faculty. In contrast, asylums were large

institutions that focused on the isolation and care of helpless patients. Patients with mental illnesses were shunned from society and trapped in these facilities (Toodayan, 2016).

The rise in university facilities was viewed as a response to the extremely overcrowded conditions in the larger asylums. These smaller institutions were designed to treat short-term patients suffering with curable or acute symptoms with the idea that access to earlier treatment options would help to attenuate the further deterioration of psychiatric conditions and prevent the development of chronic conditions requiring long-term institutionalization. University psychiatric institutes favored patients with short-term conditions, as they were more beneficial in teaching physicians to be able to recognize symptoms early in hopes of finding a cure rather than the chronically, incurably ill. This separation of patients with chronic and acute mental illnesses became the norm in psychiatric care in Germany (Engstrom, 2007).

This sharp distinction of care between asylums and psychiatric clinics became an issue for Alzheimer and his research after leaving the asylum in 1903. Senile dementia was considered part of the chronic condition type of mental illness and therefore patients diagnosed with it would be sent to the large asylums, which meant that Alzheimer lacked access to information about the medical conditions of those patients. Alzheimer would begin treating patients who would eventually be transferred to asylums during the early stage of the disease and he would have a difficult time keeping track of the disease progression as well as obtaining postmortem anatomic specimens (Maurer and Maurer, 1998).

To resolve these difficulties, Alzheimer developed several strategies that altered the way specimens were received. One strategy Alzheimer used was taking advantage of “free beds”. Free beds were publically subsidized beds at care facilities, which Alzheimer used to prevent his patients from being discharged to the asylum. Alzheimer would ardently argue to prevent families or state officials from requesting the transfer to a cheaper facility. By doing so, Alzheimer was able to gain more time to inspect patients’ brains with the emerging tools (Engstrom et al., 2007). Furthermore, if the patient passed away while under his care, this would allow him to gather the anatomic specimens necessary for his research (Engstrom et al., 2007). Such method was evident when Alzheimer delayed Auguste Deter’s dismissal to the asylum. This delay in the transfer of Auguste is ultimately what allowed Alzheimer to be able to collect the invaluable specimens that led to the descriptions of Alzheimer’s disease; such descriptions are still used to diagnose patients today.

Another method he often used was creating personal network contacts with directors of asylums called alienists. As a result, they would allow for specimens to be delivered to the university facilities, which therefore enabled the collection of more data. Both Alzheimer and Kraepelin incorporated the use of alienists to promote programs that offered an exchange of data between asylum and research facility physicians. This tactic resulted in the ability to track patient and disease progression after they had been transferred to other institutions.

The methods employed by Alzheimer and his colleges circumvented the conventions of the time in order to gain access to unreachable data. The implementation of these methods helped boost the available information of psychiatric diseases, their symptoms, and possible treatment options. It was through these case studies that Alzheimer was able to closely scrutinize his patients, document the progression of the disease, and designate certain illnesses as Alzheimer’s disease.

## Unsung Hero

As medicine began to develop throughout the 18th and 19th century, Alzheimer looked beyond behavioral issues toward neuropathological issues, which allowed for advancements in the study, diagnosis, and treatment of dementia. By adopting innovative techniques, Alzheimer was able to examine the brain of his first patient, Auguste Deter, and identify critical anomalies that led to the discovery of the Alzheimer's disease. Alois Alzheimer's contributions to science lay not only in the identification of the disease that would bear his name but also in the way that he performed his work. Ultimately, Alzheimer's groundbreaking characterization of a new disease has touched the lives of many and triggered an international research effort.

In the end, it was "the father of psychiatry," Emil Kraepelin, who first separated this new disease from general senile dementia and coined the term Alzheimer's disease. In fact, Kraepelin played an important role as Alzheimer's collaborator, as he provided the laboratory for Alzheimer to work in and published Alzheimer's work in the eighth edition of his book "*Psychiatrie*," which received broad endorsement. However, it was Alzheimer who took a stand against medical norms to distinguish between dementia and Alzheimer's disease, and provided invaluable contributions to modern medicine. Alois Alzheimer was a legendary neuropathologist and a clever physician who emphasized the care of his patients over the conventions of the day and restrictive scientific practices for the benefits of society.

## References

### Primary Sources

Alzheimer A (1891) Über einen Fall von spinaler progressiver Muskelatrophie mit hinzutretender Erkrankung bulbärer Kerne und der Rinde. *Arch Psychiat Nervenkrankh* 23:459–485.

Alzheimer A (1896) Die Frühform der allgemeinen progressiven Paralyse. *Allg Z Psychiat* 52:533–595.

Alzheimer A (1907) Über eine eigenartige Erkrankung der Hirnrinde. *Allg Z Psychiat* 64:146–148.

Alzheimer A (1911) Über eigenartige Krankheitsfälle des späteren Alters. *Z ges Neurol Psychiat* 4:356–385.

Bielschowsky M (1902) Die Silberimprägnation der Achsenzylinder. *Neurol Centralbl* 21:579–584.

Bielschowsky M (1903) Die Silberimprägnation der Neurofibrillen. *Neurol Centralbl* 22:997–1006.

Bielschowsky M (1904) Die Silberimprägnation der Neurofibrillen: einige Bemerkungen zu der von mir angegebenen Methode und den von mir gelieferten Bildern. *J Psychol Neurol* 3:169–189.

Cicero, M. T. (1923). *De senectute*. *Loeb classical library* (pp. 8-99) Harvard University Press.

Esquirol, J. E. (1838). Des maladies mentales considérées sous le rapport medical, hygiénique et medico-legal.

Kraepelin, E. (1910). Das senile und präsenile Irresein. Verlag von Johann Ambrosius Barth. *Psychiatrie: Ein Lehrbuch für Studierende und Ärzte* (pp. 593-632). Leipzig: Johann Ambrosius Barth

Kraepelin E (1920) Lebensschicksale deutscher Forscher (Alzheimer, Brodmann, Nissl). *Muenchener Med Wochenschr* 67:75-78.

## Secondary Sources

Bainbridge, David. Beyond the Zonules of Zinn: A Fantastic Journey Through Your Brain. Harvard University Press: 2008

Beach TG (1987) The history of Alzheimer's disease: three debates. *J Hist Med Allied Sci* 42: 327-34

Berrios, G. E. (1987). Dementia during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries: A conceptual history. *Psychol Med*, 17(4), 829-837.

Boller, F., & Forbes, M. M. (1998). History of dementia and dementia in history: An overview. *Journal of the Neurological Sciences*, 158, 125-133.

Caixeta, L., Costa, J. N., Marques Vilela, A. C., & da Nobrega, M. (2014). The development of the dementia concept in the 19th century. *Arq Neuropsiquiatr*, 72(7), 564-567.

Cipriani, G., Dolciotti, C., Picchi, L. et al. *Neurol Sci* (2011) 32: 275.

Cipriani, G., Dolciotti, C., Picchi, L., & Bonuccelli, U. (2011). Alzheimer and his disease: A brief history. *Neurological Sciences : Official Journal of the Italian Neurological Society and of the Italian Society of Clinical Neurophysiology*, 32(2), 275-279.

Cotman CW, Poon WW, Rissman RA, Blurton-Jones M (2005) The role of caspase cleavage of tau in Alzheimer disease neuropathology. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* 64: 104-112

Engstrom, E. (2007) *Researching Dementia in Imperial Germany: Alois Alzheimer and the Economics of Psychiatric Practice*, Cult Med Psychiatry 31 (3): 405-412

Gaupp, R (1916) Alois Alzheimer. *Muenchener Med Wochenschr* 6:195-196.

Goedert M, Ghetti B (2007) Alois Alzheimer: his life and times. *Brain Pathol* 17:57-62

Graeber, M. B. (2006). Alois Alzheimer., 08/04/2006.

GRANGE, K. M. (1963). Pinel or Chiarugi? *Medical History*, 7, 371-380.

Gross, Charles G. *Brain, Vision, Memory: Tales in the History of Neuroscience*. The MIT Press: 1998.

Halpert, P. B. (1983). Development of the term "senility" as a medical diagnosis. *Minn Med*, 66, 421-424.

Hippius, H., & Neundorfer, G. (2003). The discovery of Alzheimer's disease. *Dialogues in Clinical Neuroscience*, 5(1), 101-108.

Jelic V, Kivipelto M, Winblad B (2006) Clinical trials in mild cognitive impairment: lessons for the future. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 77: 429–438

Jellinger KA (2006a) A view on early diagnosis of dementias from neuro-pathology. In: Herholz K, Morris C, Perani D (eds) *The Dementias: early diagnosis and evaluation*. Taylor & Francis, New York, pp 311–428

Kumar, S., Mittal, R., Chaudhary, S., & Deep, J. C. (2014). Role of trace elements in Alzheimer's disease. *Open Access Library Journal*.

Maurer K, Maurer U (1998) *Alois Alzheimer. Das Leben eines Arztes und die Karriere einer Krankheit*. Piper Verlag: München.

Maurer U, Maurer K (1999) Auf den Spuren der Auguste D. Alois Alzheimer – Sein Leben und Werk. *Forschung Frankfurt* 4: 74–77

Maurer K, Volk S, Gerbaldo H (1997) Auguste D and Alzheimer's disease. *Lancet* 349: 1546–1549

Signoret, J. L., & Hauw, J. J. (1991). Maladie d'Alzheimer et autres demences.

Spielmeyer W (1916) Alzheimers Lebenswerk. *Z Gesamte Neurol Psy- chiatr* 33: 1–44

Thiele R (1956) Wilhelm Griesinger. In: *Grosse Nervenärzte, Band I*. K Kolle (ed.), pp. 115–127. Thieme Verlag: Stuttgart.

Toodayan, N. (2016). Professor alois alzheimer (1864-1915): Lest we forget. *Journal of Clinical Neuroscience : Official Journal of the Neurosurgical Society of Australasia*, 31, 47-55.

Torack RM (1983) The early history of senile dementia. In: Reisberg B (ed) *Alzheimer's disease*. Free Press, New York, p 24

Trichet, Y., & Lacroix, A. (2016). Esquirol's change of view towards pinel's mania without delusion. *History of Psychiatry*.

Weatherall, D., Greenwood, B., Chee, H. L., & Wasi, P. (2006). Science and technology for disease control: Past, present and future. In D. T. Jamison, J. G. Breman & A. R. Measham (Eds.), *Disease Control priorities in developing countries* (2nd ed., pp. Chapter 5). New York: Oxford University.

Yanagihara, T. (1999). Clinical characteristics of senile dementia in japan. *Rinsho Shinkeigaku*, 39(1), 45-46.

# The Fukushima Daiichi Nuclear Power Plant: Lessons from a Preventable Nuclear Accident

Amy Sunjae Lee  
Korea International School Jeju

---

## Abstract

The nuclear disaster at the Fukushima Daiichi nuclear power plant in Japan began after an earthquake struck Japan causing the plant to power down. Hours later, a tsunami hit the plant and knocked out the back-up generators. For weeks after the initial event, the operator of the plant rushed to contain fires, explosions, and meltdowns as radiation entered into the environment and waste water contaminated both the ground water and the Pacific Ocean. Five years later, the situation on the ground has not yet returned to normal, and the contaminated water could continue to cause harm to the Pacific Ocean until 2020.

The following paper demonstrates how flaws in design plans and philosophy combined with a failure to prepare for an accident of this nature resulted into what the French Institute for Radiological Protection and Nuclear Safety called “the largest single contribution of radionuclides to the marine environment ever observed.” Although the disaster began with a natural event, it was the failure of the Japanese to prepare for it that resulted in weeks of chaos, the loss of a valuable power plant, and damage to the environment that has not yet been repaired even five years on.

## Introduction

On March 11th, 2011, a 9.0-magnitude earthquake shook the coast of the island of Honshu, which is the most populous island of Japan.<sup>2</sup> At the time, there were four nuclear power plants in the area, and all of the plants suffered a power cut as a result of the earthquake.<sup>3</sup> An hour after the earthquake, a tsunami caused by the quake came crashing down on the coast, and the flooding knocked out the Fukushima Daiichi power plant’s backup generators, which were pumping water into the nuclear reactors to keep them cool and stable after the initial shutdown from the earthquake. The failure of the backup generators resulted in the overheating of the nuclear cores, and the operators

2 Natalie Wolchover, “Timeline of Events at Japan’s Fukushima Nuclear Reactors,” *LiveScience*, March 17, 2011, <http://www.livescience.com/13294-timeline-events-japan-fukushima-nuclear-reactors.html> (accessed October 3, 2016).

3 Wolchover, “Timeline of Events.”

rushed to contain the damage and prevent a catastrophic incident. Unfortunately, the issues with the power plant continued over the days and weeks after the initial incident. On March 12th, the pressure of Unit 1 was twice as high as the references levels, and when workers attempted to lower the pressure, there was an explosion, and the 20-km area around the facility was evacuated. The next day, March 13th, the operators were still working to cool the reactors when led a partial meltdown occurred in two of the reactors at Daiichi. On March 14th, a skeleton crew continued to inject seawater into Daiichi because the backup generators were not yet fixed.<sup>4</sup> On the 15<sup>th</sup>, the efforts continued to stabilize the reactors continued, but Unit 4, which was previously thought to be in cold shut down, was on fire and releasing radiation into the air. By March 16th, they were still working to stabilize the facility when the pressure in Unit 3 dropped substantially, and Unit 5, which was supposed to be in shut down, was experiencing a drop in water levels.<sup>5</sup> Despite these problems, it was only weeks after the earthquake that officials began admitting that important pieces of the plant had been severely damaged, and workers continued to dump seawater in the units until March 22nd. Over the coming days, officials would begin to find high levels of radiation in the soil, in food products, and in people, which had been caused by the various meltdowns, fires, and explosions at the plant. On March 30th, it was announced that the Fukushima Daiichi plant would be permanently shut down because the earthquake, explosion, and the corrosion from weeks of seawater had done too much damage.<sup>6</sup> Despite the shutdown, the release of radiation had already affected the surrounding area, and contaminated waste water continued to pour into the ground water supply and the Pacific Ocean.

In the days, weeks and months after the disaster at Fukushima, officials and scientists struggled over what to call the event. The earthquake and subsequent tsunami were the catalysts for the event, but was the accident solely the result of a natural disaster? The answer was decidedly no, and in 2012, the Japanese parliament and the chairman of the Nuclear Accident Independent Investigation Commission reported that the plant failures would not be regarded as a natural disaster, and instead, they would be classified as a man-made disaster.<sup>7</sup> The following paper will explore the design flaws and operator errors that contributed to the weeks of failures at Fukushima Daiichi, which resulted in the loss of a plant worth billions of dollars and led to contaminated ocean waters across the globe.

## Background

### Public View of Nuclear Power

Despite the admission of the Fukushima incident as a man-made disaster, the incident did not result in a significant fall-out in Western public opinion regarding the use of nuclear power. In 2012, a Gallup poll showed that 57 percent of Americans favored nuclear power, and this number was pre-

<sup>4</sup> Wolchover, “Timeline of Events.”

<sup>5</sup> Wolchover, “Timeline of Events.”

<sup>6</sup> Wolchover, “Timeline of Events.”

<sup>7</sup> BBC News, “Fukushima report: Key Points in Nuclear Disaster Report,” BBC News, July 5, 2012, <http://www.bbc.com/news/world-asia-18718486> (accessed October 3, 2016).

cisely the same as it was before the event.<sup>8</sup> The results came from the annual environment survey, which has demonstrated varying degrees of support for nuclear resources. The survey also asked Americans if they believe that nuclear plants are safe, and 57 percent said yes, which was down only one point from the 2011 survey. However, there was an uptick from 36 percent to 40 percent in the number of people who do not believe nuclear power plants are safe.<sup>9</sup>

Five years on, however, public opinion on nuclear energy began to change. In a 2016 poll by Gallup, Americans responded negatively to the question of nuclear power for the first time since the question was introduced in 1994.<sup>10</sup> The survey showed that 54 percent of respondents oppose using nuclear power, which was a significant increase from 43 percent in 2015. Meanwhile, those who favor nuclear power came in at 44 percent, and this was a significant decrease from 51 percent.<sup>11</sup>

## Ethical Considerations for the Site

According to a report from the Nuclear Regulatory Committee (NRC), there were several ethical requirements in place when designing sites for Japanese nuclear power plants.<sup>12</sup> One of the important protections afforded to nuclear power plant sites is protecting them from natural disasters, like earthquakes and tsunamis, and this protection requirement is a primary focus in both Japan and the United States. However, compared to the same NRC report, the United States has significantly more rules regarding natural disasters because it has 10 regulations and guides on earthquakes and floods while Japan has only three requirements or guidelines.<sup>13</sup>

However, not only did Japan have guides in place for these kinds of natural disasters, but the issues that appeared in the wake of the 2011 earthquake had actually been predicted over two decades earlier. In 1990, the U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission created a report that identified one of the “most likely causes” of a nuclear accident stemming from an external event as coming from an “earthquake-induced diesel generator failure and power outage leading to failure of cooling systems.”<sup>14</sup><sup>15</sup>

8 Frank Newport, “Americans Still Favor Nuclear Power a Year After Fukushima,” Gallup, March 26, 2012, <http://www.gallup.com/poll/153452/americans-favor-nuclear-power-year-fukushima.aspx> (accessed October 3, 2016).

9 Newport, “Americans Still Favor Nuclear Power.”

10 Rebecca Riffkin, “For First Time, Majority in U.S. Oppose Nuclear Energy,” Gallup, March 18, 2016, <http://www.gallup.com/poll/190064/first-time-majority-oppose-nuclear-energy.aspx> (accessed October 3, 2016).

11 Riffkin, “For First Time, Majority in U.S. Oppose Nuclear Energy.”

12 Nuclear Regulatory Committee, “A comparison of U.S. and Japanese regulatory requirements in effect at the time of the Fukushima accident,” *Nuclear Regulatory Committee* (2013), <http://www.nrc.gov/docs/ML1332/ML13326A991.pdf> (accessed October 6, 2016), 11.

13 Nuclear Regulatory Committee, “A comparison of U.S. and Japanese regulatory requirements,” 13.

14 Makiko Kitamura and Maki Shiraki, “Japan’s Reactor Risk Foretold 20 Years Ago in U.S. Agency Report,” *Bloomberg*, March 16, 2011, <https://www.bloomberg.com/news/articles/2011-03-16/japan-s-reactor-risk-foretold-20-years-ago-in-u-s-nuclear-agency-s-report> (accessed October 6, 2016).

15 Nuclear Regulatory Committee, “Severe Accident Risks: An Assessment for Five U.S. Nuclear Power Plants,” *Nuclear Regulatory Committee* (1990) <http://www.nrc.gov/reading-rm/doc-collections/nuregs/staff/sr1150/v1/> (accessed October 6, 2016).

## Risk Assessment of Potential Accidents in Japan

According to the 2013 NRC report, the regulatory requirements did not consider the risk of events beyond design failures, like tsunamis or terrorist attacks. Additionally, the report found that the severe accident management measurements in place also did not consider natural disasters, and the use of Extensive Damage Mitigation Guidelines was not required by the Japanese government. Finally, in the years prior to the accident at Fukushima, both the Japanese nuclear industry and Japanese regulators said publically that “the possibility of severe accidents was sufficiently low, to the extent that a severe accident could not occur from an engineering viewpoint.”<sup>16</sup> This meant that they failed to even consider the possibility of the kind of accident that would occur at Fukushima Daiichi in rules and regulations, which made it difficult to respond to the accident when it did happen, as shown both in the introduction and in the next section.

## Aftermath of the Accident

The aftermath of the Fukushima incident was not simply the loss of billions of dollars’ worth of equipment and facilities, nor was it the temporary release of radioactive material into the surrounding area. The aftermath also included major leaks of radioactive and contaminated water heading into the surrounding groundwater as well as 300 tons of contaminated water that entered the Pacific Ocean not only every day in the year after the accident but through to 2014.<sup>17</sup><sup>18</sup> The rate of the leak into the sea was enough to fill an Olympic-size swimming pool with contaminated water in eight days, and the leak continued despite the Japanese government taking over “emergency measures” from Tokyo Electric Power, who was the operator of the plant.<sup>19</sup> The result has been what the French Institute for Radiological Protection and Nuclear Safety called “the largest single contribution of radionuclides to the marine environment ever observed.”<sup>20</sup> Although it took several years for Japanese regulators to admit this, when the news broke, scientists working in the area were unsurprised because the radiation levels they had been measuring in fish and in the sea had not fallen since the time of the accident, which suggested the situation was not under control.<sup>21</sup> There are efforts in place on behalf of the Japanese government and the local Fukushima Prefecture to help restore the environment and rebuild communities; however, the contaminated water may continue to flow until 2020.<sup>22</sup>

16 Nuclear Regulatory Committee, “A comparison of U.S. and Japanese regulatory requirements,” 3.

17 Patrick Kiger, “Fukushima’s Radioactive Water Leak: What You Should Know,” *National Geographic*, August 9, 2013, <http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/energy/2013/08/130807-fukushima-radioactive-water-leak/> (accessed October 7, 2016).

18 D. MCN, “Treading water,” *The Economist*, March 12, 2014, <http://www.economist.com/blogs/banyan/2014/03/fukushima-three-years> (accessed October 7, 2016).

19 Takashi Hirokawa, Jacob Adelman, Peter Langan, and Yujui Okada, “Fukushima Leaks Prompt Government to Emergency Measures,” *Bloomberg*, August 26, 2013, <https://www.bloomberg.com/news/articles/2013-08-26/fukushima-filter-shutdown-adds-to-tepco-water-management-woes> (accessed October 7, 2016).

20 Institute de Radioprotection Et De Surete Nucleaire, “Synthese acutalisee des connaissances relatives a l’impact sur le milieu marin de rejets radioactifs du site nucleaire accidente de Fukushima Dai-ichi,” October 26, 2011, [http://www.irsn.fr/FR/Actualites\\_presse/Actualites/Documents/IRSN-NI-Impact\\_accident\\_Fukushima\\_sur\\_milieu\\_marin\\_26102011.pdf](http://www.irsn.fr/FR/Actualites_presse/Actualites/Documents/IRSN-NI-Impact_accident_Fukushima_sur_milieu_marin_26102011.pdf) (accessed October 7, 2016).

21 Kiger, “Fukushima’s Radioactive Water Leak.”

22 D. MCN, “Treading water.”

## Literature Review

The accident at Fukushima Daiichi may have started with an earthquake and a tsunami; however, studies and reports on the event admitted that the extent of the damage is not the result of a natural disaster but rather of design flaws and poor planning.<sup>23</sup> As a result, Kenichi says that the most important lesson to take away from the disaster was not a failure to predict a tsunami or not taking seismic activity seriously enough, but rather, the importance of having both a design philosophy and guidelines that provides clear provisions for the event of any accident or event, man-made or natural, to prevent any severe accidents from occurring from the reactor.<sup>24</sup>

The reports also showed that the design guidelines for the plant were wrong, and they did not provide any consideration of what would happen if there was a long-term loss of power. Reports also showed that the design plans also did not make a distinction between normal use of equipment and emergency use of equipment.<sup>25</sup>

Investigations showed that it was not simply the design guidelines were not just wrong. The possibility of disaster was beyond the scope of design assumptions and into the design philosophy because the accident was referred to by the Japanese government and the industry as an engineering impossibility. Because of this attitude, they did not include devices for detecting hydrogen or provide any essential measures for safety and the prevention of hydrogen explosions. This happened despite cases where major accidents not accommodated in designs which were prevented only coincidentally.<sup>26</sup>

Because the cause of the disaster has been identified, Kenichi proposes a plan for recurrence prevention. The first step would be to clarify accountability and responsibility among regulatory authorities because despite it being deemed a man-made disaster, no one had taken responsibility for the events even six months after the disaster began.<sup>27</sup> Furthermore, greater efforts need to be regarding communication after these events. One month after the meltdown occurred on March 11, 2011, the government announced that a meltdown had not occurred, which led to questions regarding whether the information being communicated both to the Japanese public and to the international community was appropriate. Finally, the report stresses that “no matter how high the prediction is set, there is always a possibility of an event that exceeds it.” Enacting this design concept was considered crucial in any circumstances, and the Kenichi report proposes that any nuclear reactor that could not operate at capacity to fulfill these conditions should not re-enter operation.<sup>28</sup>

The prefecture’s preparations for moving forward include both setting new guidelines for the design and operation of nuclear power plants and revitalizing the area around the Fukushima Daiichi plant. The Fukushima Prefecture also outlined a plan for revitalization the area. Three basic concepts were included for this process:

1. “Building a safe, secure and sustainable society free from nuclear power”

23 Ohmae Kenichi, “What should we learn from the severe accident at the Fukushima Dai-ichi Nuclear Power Plant?” October 28, 2011, [http://pr.bbt757.com/eng/pdf/pressrelease\\_111028.pdf](http://pr.bbt757.com/eng/pdf/pressrelease_111028.pdf) (accessed October 7, 2016).

24 Kenichi, “What should we learn?” 2.

25 Kenichi, “What should we learn?” 2.

26 Kenichi, “What should we learn?” 2.

27 Kenichi, “What should we learn?” 2.

28 Kenichi, “What should we learn?” 2.

2. “Revitalization that brings together everyone who loves and cares about Fukushima
3. “A homeland we can all be proud of once again.”<sup>29</sup>

The prefecture also outlined major priority projects for revitalization including “living with peace of mind” by engaging in environmental restoration, rebuilding lively hoods, protecting the health of citizens, and focusing on supporting young people and children.<sup>30</sup> An additional project was given the title of “work in your hometown,” and it included reviving primary industries as well as revitalizing small and medium enterprises, and promoting renewable energy. Finally, the project “rebuild towns, connect people” included a focus on development for areas that had been hit by the tsunami and rebuilding connections within Fukushima both in the area and outside it by revitalizing tourism. The program also further outline the steps for environmental restoration, which included decontamination throughout the whole prefecture, working to ensure food safety, dealing with contaminated waste, and establishing environmental creative strategy hubs.<sup>31</sup>

## Analysis

The disaster began with seismic activity and a tsunami that exacerbated the issues by causing flooding in the areas around Fukushima Daiichi. Yet, the past five years of issues at the Fukushima Daiichi Nuclear Power Plant are not the result of fallout caused directly by the earthquake, but rather, fallout caused by design flaws, design philosophy, and complications resulting from a plant and a system that was not prepared to deal with the effects of not only a natural disaster but a nuclear accident in general. While a design flaw alone may have resulted in the effects the world has seen, it was also a lack of acknowledgement that this could happen that led to an unpreparedness to take on this kind of accident that exacerbated design flaws and the fallout from the natural disaster, and the result is an accident that may not see major restoration efforts or even end the flow of contamination until 2020, which is nearly a decade after the initial event occurred.

This kind of unpreparedness for natural disasters or nuclear accidents is not an issue that affects every country using nuclear power. What is more, the reaction seen at the power plant after the earthquake was not unprecedented. At the time of the accident the United States was far more prepared for the fallout from natural disasters or accident than Japan was, and it had three times as many regulations governing what to do in these events than Japan had at the time. Additionally, the 1990 NRC report specifically outlined that what happened at Fukushima Daiichi was the most likely scenario for a major nuclear accident, which means that the idea that this could happen had already been outlined in an official report and was available to both industry regulators and operators in Japan.

The radiation emission from the meltdowns have been determined to predominantly affect Japan, and only one percent of the radiation was estimated to reach Europe.<sup>32</sup> However, the understanding of this is tenuous because before the accident, there had been no study to estimate the

29 Fukushima Prefecture, “Progress of the Plan for Revitalization in Fukushima Prefecture (First Version) [Outline],” June 2012, <https://www.pref.fukushima.lg.jp/uploaded/attachment/147743.pdf> (accessed October 7, 2016).

30 Fukushima Prefecture, “Progress of the Plan,” 1.

31 Fukushima Prefecture, “Progress of the Plan,” 2.

32 John Ten Hoeve and Mark Jacobson, “Worldwide health effects of the Fukushima Daiichi nuclear accident,” *Energy & Environmental Science* (2012).

global risk of the spread of radiation in the event of an accident. A study by Ten Hoeve and Jacobson suggested that the majority of mortality related to radiation would remain in Japan; however, this study did not consider the contaminated water that has been spilling into the ocean and what effect that may have on mortality and morbidity from radiation exposure.<sup>33</sup> This is an important question because over 80 percent of the radioactive materials released wound up in the Pacific Ocean. Data showed that the peak flow of radioactive material released into the ocean was in the immediate aftermath of the earthquake and through the month following, but there was a factor 1000 decrease in radionuclides in May onwards.<sup>34</sup> Additionally, research performed over the past five years shows that only a small portion of this radiation fell to the sea floor, and the rest was carried out to sea. This is important because of the size of the Northern Pacific Ocean: much of the radiation was diluted because of the volume of water in the northern part of the Pacific Ocean.<sup>35</sup>

The U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission insists that the low level radiation in the contaminated water that is leaking in to the high-volume Pacific Ocean does not pose any health or environmental risk to the United States because what is carried that far has been significantly diluted.<sup>36</sup> Simulated studies of a measured release of the concentration of radioactive materials in the North Pacific also showed that even though the measurements showed that the concentration of radioactive material created by the Fukushima accident were the highest recorded, the study found that the total amount was not very large, and the overall concentration in the North Pacific was actually smaller than past events, and as a result, the radioactive material would not reach any other oceanic basins.<sup>37</sup> Additionally, a five year review conducted by a Scientific Committee on Oceanic Research Working Group found that the initial release of the radioactive material was unprecedented, but the amount of radioactive materials released was only 1/50<sup>th</sup> of what would be released by nuclear weapons, and was only 1/5<sup>th</sup> of the material released at Chernobyl.<sup>38</sup> Ultimately, the five year review found that the human risk as a result of the radiation was modest compared to the loss of lives caused by the earthquake and tsunami. However, should more questions arise about the concentration of the materials and where they travelled, scientists are able to use the diluted levels of materials to trace the ocean's currents for further investigation.<sup>39</sup>

Although the global harm resulting from the accident is considered to be low, those on the Asian side of the Pacific have not been as lucky as countries on the American side of the ocean particularly in regards to the economic impact of the disaster. In 2016, fishing was still banned in

---

33 Ten Hoeve and Jacobson, "Worldwide health effects of the Fukushima Daiichi nuclear accident."

34 Buesseler, Aoyama, and Fukasawa, "Impacts of the Fukushima Nuclear Power Plants on Marine Radioactivity," *Environmental Science and Technology* (2011), 45(23): 9931-9935.

35 Ken Buesseler, "5 years later, Fukushima radiation continues to see into the Pacific Ocean," *PBS NewsHour*, March 9, 2016, <http://www.pbs.org/newshour/updates/fukushima-radiation-continues-to-leak-into-the-pacific-ocean/> (accessed October 7, 2016).

36 Jessica Kratchman and Chuck Norton, "Fukushima Water Contamination – Impacts on the U.S. West Coast," *U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission*, January 2015, <http://www.nrc.gov/docs/ML1502/ML15021A530.pdf> (accessed October 7, 2016).

37 Tsumune, Tsubono, Aoyama, Hirose, "Distribution of oceanic 137Cs from the Fukushima Dai-ichi Nuclear Power Plant simulated numerically by a regional ocean model," *Journal of Environmental Radioactivity*, (2012) 111:100-108.

38 Science Daily, "Fukushima and the oceans, what do we know five years on?" June 30, 2016, *Science Daily*, <https://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2016/06/160630214454.htm> (Accessed October 11, 2016).

39 Aoyama, Hult, Hamajima, Lutter, Marissens, Stroh, and Tzika, "Tracing radioactivity from Fukushima in the Northern Pacific Ocean," *Applied Radiation and Isotopes* (2016) 109:435.

waters within 10 kilometers of the meltdown, and there are still questions regarding how the water has impacted marine life.<sup>40</sup>

## Conclusion

The earthquake and tsunami that triggered the nuclear accident at Fukushima Daiichi could not have been prevented; however, the Japanese government and the operator of the plant could have done significantly more to mitigate the effects of the natural disaster on the plant simply by preparing for this kind of disaster, which was considered to be the most likely cause of a nuclear accident by an American report. Studies have found that if the operators and regulators had created guidelines for both the design and the design philosophy, it would have helped the operators deal with the challenges that arose in the hours, days, weeks and years after the initial failures. These guidelines might have also created a chain of command and communication that would have provided greater clarity regarding responsibility for the disaster and cleaning up during the aftermath of the event. Ultimately, the Fukushima Daiichi disaster was predicted and could have been prevented, and understanding this sets an important precedent for the future of nuclear power both in Japan and around the world.

## References

Aoyama, M, M Hult, Y Hamajima, G Lutter, G Marissens, H Stroh, and F Tzika. 2016. "Tracing radioactivity from Fukushima in the Northern Pacific Ocean." *Applied Radiation and Isotopes* 109: 435.

BBC News. 2012. "Fukushima report: Key points in nuclear disaster report." *BBC News*, July 5. Accessed October 3, 2016. <http://www.bbc.com/news/world-asia-18718486>.

Buesseler, Ken. 2016. "5 years later, Fukushima radiation continues to seep into the Pacific Ocean." *PBS NewsHour*, March 9. Accessed October 7, 2016. <http://www.pbs.org/newshour/updates/fukushima-radiation-continues-to-leak-into-the-pacific-ocean/>.

Buesseler, Ken, Michio Aoyama, and Masao Fukasawa. 2011. "Impacts of the Fukushima Nuclear Power Plants on Marine Radioactivity." *Environmental Science and Technology* 45 (23): 9931-9935.

Fukushima Prefecture. 2012. *Progress of the Plan for Revitalization in Fukushima Prefecture (First Version) [Outline]*. Outline, Fukushima Prefecture. Accessed October 7, 2016. <https://www.pref.fukushima.lg.jp/uploaded/attachment/147743.pdf>.

Hirokawa, Takashi, Jacob Adelman, Peter Langan, and Yuji Okada. 2013. "Fukushima leaks Prompt Government to 'Emergency Measures'." *Bloomberg*, August 26. Accessed October 7, 2016. <https://www.bloomberg.com/news/articles/2013-08-26/fukushima-filter-shut-down-adds-to-tepco-water-management-woes>.

40 Jiji, "Fukushima fishermen to expand operations off crippled nuclear plant," *Japan Times*, January 27, 2016, [http://www.japantimes.co.jp/news/2016/01/27/national/fukushima-fishermen-to-expand-operations-off-crippled-nuclear-plant/#.V\\_0CAOB97IU](http://www.japantimes.co.jp/news/2016/01/27/national/fukushima-fishermen-to-expand-operations-off-crippled-nuclear-plant/#.V_0CAOB97IU) (accessed October 11, 2016).

Institut de Radio Protection et de Surete Nucleaire. 2011. *Synthese actualisee des connaissances relatives a l'impact sur le milieu marin de rejets radioactifs du site nucleaire accidente de Fukushima Dai-ichi*. Institut de Radio Protection et de Surete Nucleaire. Accessed October 7, 2016. Institut de Radio Protection et de Surete Nucleaire.

Jiji. 2016. "Fukushima fisherman to expand operations off crippled nuclear plant." *Japan Times*, January 27. Accessed October 11, 2016. [http://www.japantimes.co.jp/news/2016/01/27/national/fukushima-fishermen-to-expand-operations-off-crippled-nuclear-plant/#.V\\_0CAO-B97IU](http://www.japantimes.co.jp/news/2016/01/27/national/fukushima-fishermen-to-expand-operations-off-crippled-nuclear-plant/#.V_0CAO-B97IU).

Kenichi, Ohmae. 2011. *What should we learn from the severe accident at the Fukushima Dai-ichi Nuclear Power Plant?* Press Release, BBT University. Accessed October 7, 2016. [http://pr.bbt757.com/eng/pdf/pressrelease\\_111028.pdf](http://pr.bbt757.com/eng/pdf/pressrelease_111028.pdf).

Kiger, Patrick. 2013. "Fukushima's Radioactive Water Leak: What You Should Know." *National Geographic*, August 9. Accessed October 7, 2016. <http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/energy/2013/08/130807-fukushima-radioactive-water-leak/>.

Kitamura, Makiko, and Maki Shiraki. 2011. "Japan's Reactor Risk Foretold 20 Years Ago in U.S. Agency Report." *Bloomberg*, March 16. Accessed October 6, 2016. <https://www.bloomberg.com/news/articles/2011-03-16/japan-s-reactor-risk-foretold-20-years-ago-in-u-s-nuclear-agency-s-report>.

Kratchman, Jessica, and Chuck Norton. 2015. *Fukushima Water Contamination - Impacts on the U.S. West Coast*. Washington DC: U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission. Accessed October 7, 2016. <http://www.nrc.gov/docs/ML1502/ML15021A530.pdf>.

MCN, D. 2014. "Treading water." *The Economist*, March 12. Accessed October 7, 2016. <http://www.economist.com/blogs/banyan/2014/03/fukushima-three-years>.

Newport, Frank. 2012. "Americans Still Favor Nuclear Power a Year After Fukushima." *Gallup*, March 26. Accessed October 3, 2016. <http://www.gallup.com/poll/153452/americans-favor-nuclear-power-year-fukushima.aspx>.

Nuclear Regulatory Commission. 1990. *Severe Accident Risks: An Assessment for Five U.S. Nuclear Power Plants*. Government Report, Washington D.C.: U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission. Accessed October 6, 2016. <http://www.nrc.gov/reading-rm/doc-collections/nuregs/staff/sr1150/v1/>.

Nuclear Regulatory Committee. 2013. *A comparison of U.S. and Japanese regulatory requirements in effect at the time of the Fukushima accident*. Government Report, Washington DC: Nuclear Regulatory Committee. Accessed October 6, 2016. <http://www.nrc.gov/docs/ML1332/ML13326A991.pdf>.

Riffkin, Rebecca. 2016. "For First Time, Majority in U.S. Oppose Nuclear Energy." *Gallup*, March 18. Accessed October 3, 2016. <http://www.gallup.com/poll/190064/first-time-majority-oppose-nuclear-energy.aspx>.

Science Daily. 2016. "Fukushima and the oceans: What do we know, five years on?" *Science Daily*, June 30. Accessed October 11, 2016. <https://www.sciencedaily.com/releases/2016/06/160630214454.htm>.

Ten Hoeve, John, and Mark Jacobson. 2012. "Worldwide health effects of Fukushima Daiichi nuclear accident." *Energy Envrionmental Science*.

Tsumune, Daisuke, Takaki Tsubono, Michio Aoyama, and Katsumi Hirose. 2012. "Distribution of oceanic  $^{137}\text{Cs}$  from the Fukushima Dai-ichi Nuclear Power Plant simulated numerically by a regional ocean model." *Journal of Environmental Radioactivity* 111: 100-108. doi:10.1016/j.jenvrad.2011.10.007.

Wolchover, Natalie. 2011. "Timeline of Events at Japan's Fukushima Nuclear Reactors." *Live Science*, March 17. Accessed October 3, 2016. <http://www.livescience.com/13294-time-line-events-japan-fukushima-nuclear-reactors.html>.

# Edward Snowden: Taking a stand for American Liberty

Emma Yujung Lee  
Seoul International School

---

## Thesis

Freedom and privacy are two of the most sacred tenets of Americanism, represented over and over as a central theme of history, literature, and art. By exposing global surveillance schemes implemented in part by American agencies tasked with defending the freedoms of Americans, Edward Snowden took a stand at great personal risk and sacrifice. Thus, Edward Snowden should be celebrated as a champion of the people rather than outcast as a criminal.

### 1. Introduction: American themes of freedom

- a. History is filled with inspirational quotes of man's autonomy
  - i. "Give me liberty or give me death!" Patrick Henry
  - ii. "They who can give up essential liberty to obtain a little temporary safety deserve neither liberty nor safety." Benjamin Franklin
  - iii. "Liberty has never come from the government. Liberty has always come from the subjects of it. The history of liberty is a history of resistance." Woodrow Wilson.
- b. Americans are prone to regard themselves as "more free"
  - i. Freedom in songs
  - ii. Cultural tropes of "freedom"
- c. Those who take a stand in order to defend our freedoms have historically been the most highly celebrated in American history. Although Edward Snowden is presently outcast for his legal crimes, history will prove him to be a true hero in the American tradition.

### 2. Who is Edward Snowden?

- a. Early life
- b. Employment at Dell and CIA
- c. Employment at NSA
- d. Leaking of NSA classified documents

- i. 15,000 or more Australian intelligence files
- ii. British officials estimate at least 58,000 British intelligence files.
- iii. NSA Director Keith Alexander initially estimated that Snowden had copied anywhere from 50,000 to 200,000 NSA documents (Later estimates suggested 1.7 million documents)
- iv. In July 2014, *The Washington Post* reported «roughly 160,000 intercepted e-mail and instant-message conversations, some of them hundreds of pages long, and 7,900 documents taken from more than 11,000 online accounts.”
- v. A U.S. Defense Intelligence Agency report declassified in June 2015 said that Snowden took 900,000 Department of Defense files, more than he downloaded from the NSA.
- e. Flying to Hong Kong to meet with journalists
- f. Seeking asylum in Russia

### **3. What did the documents say?**

- a. NSA is allowed to sweep Americans' phone records
- b. Google, Facebook, Microsoft, and Apple must comply with NSA orders to provide users' personal information
- c. Britain's version of the NSA taps fiber-optic cables around the world
- d. NSA spies on foreign world leaders
- e. NSA has the ability to circumvent most encryption software

### **4. Why is Edward Snowden important?**

- a. Like so many before him, Edward Snowden is a warrior for American constitutional rights
  - i. Amendment IV states: The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.
  - ii. That which is revealed by Snowden's leak undoubtedly contracts the fourth amendment by violating the privacy and liberty of Americans and world citizens at large.
- b. History has celebrated those who fight for constitutional rights. Edward Snowden is already a champion of the people and in the future, he will be favored by history as well.

## **I. Let Freedom Ring**

Following the attacks on September 11, 2001, Americans began to feel especially patriotic and defensive of their freedoms. Toby Keith may have demonstrated this freedom most colorfully in his song “Courtesy of the Red, White, and Blue”: “*Hey Uncle Sam, put your name at the top of his list and the Statue of Liberty started shakin' her fist and the eagle will fly, man, it's gonna be hell, when you hear Mother Freedom start ringin' her bell and it feels like the whole wide world is raining down on you, brought to you courtesy of the Red White and Blue*”

Toby Keith wasn't the only one to feel his freedoms were endangered, post-9/11. Military enlistment spiked in 2002 and 2003 (Defense Manpower Data Center) as young Americans rallied to protect their rights against the threat of terrorism. When the French Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dominique de Villepin, opposed the US invasion of Iraq at a UN Security Council meeting (Michaels, 2010), the US Chairman of the United States House Committee on House Administration Bob Ney ordered the three House cafeterias to change the labeling of 'French fries' to 'freedom fries' (Bakalian, 2009).

Freedom and privacy are two of the most sacred tenets of Americanism, represented over and over as a central theme of history, literature, and art. Patrick Henry said, "give me liberty or give me death!" and Americans have truly taken this sentiment to heart. Historically, Americans have been, by nature, prone to viewing themselves as having great personal freedoms (Wike et. al., 2015), and some of the most celebrated figures in American history are those who most vehemently defended those freedoms. George Washington took a stand for the American colonies against the English with his fellow Founding Fathers—Jefferson, Hamilton, Madison, Monroe—and sculpted the American republic as we know it (Mayo, 1959, p. 135-50). Abraham Lincoln took a stand against slavery and held together a crumbling Union (Abraham Lincoln, 1929). Lucretia Mott and Elizabeth Cady Stanton took a stand against the patriarchy (Beard, 1933, p. 4-12). Thurgood Marshall, Martin Luther King Junior, and Bayard Rustin took a stand for civil rights (Altbach, 1966, p. 233-34). The list goes on and on, and the names of these historical "stand-takers" adorn American currency (U.S. Bureau of Engraving and Printing), institutions of higher learning, libraries, and federal buildings, towns, and cities throughout the land ("List of Places..." 2016). Fighting for freedom is one of the great American past times.

If we can learn one thing from these historically significant men and women, it's that we need not agree with or submit to those who wish to oppress our freedoms, no matter what social constant must be upheld, and no matter the motivation. Today, American rights to privacy are slowly being stripped under the guise of protecting American freedoms (NYCLU, 2016), which presents a compelling irony: can freedoms be protected through the systematic removal of freedoms?

In 2013, a young American hero took a stand against an oppressive government when he released hundreds of thousands of classified American documents detailing global surveillance schemes, and other such documents exposing nefarious government activities seeking to restrict American freedoms (Famularo, 2013 pgs. 1-2). This whistleblower exposed these activities at great personal risk and sacrifice, much like our other historical stand-takers did before him. His name is Edward Snowden.

## II. Who is Edward Snowden?

Edward Snowden comes from a long lineage of Americans who have dedicated their careers to America and to the civil services and federal government. His mother worked as a chief deputy of the United States District Court of Maryland (Mitchell, 2013). His father worked as Coast Guard Officer. His maternal grandfather was a rear admiral for the US Coast Guard (US Coast Guards Flag Officers Index) who later went on to work for both the FBI. Snowden's sister Jessica became an attorney and was employed at the Federal Judicial Center in Washington, DC. The expectation to

pursue a career in the ‘family business’ of sorts was undoubtedly encouraged in the Snowden household.

Illness unfortunately prevented Edward Snowden from graduating from high school, but upon taking the GED, Snowden enrolled in community college where he began studying computer science while pursuing a Masters degree through the University of Liverpool. Between 2004 and 2005, Snowden spent 4 months in the US Army Reserves as a Special Forces candidate (Ackerman 2013). In a 2014 interview with the German broadcasting network ARD, Snowden said, “I wanted to fight in the Iraq war because I felt like I had an obligation as a human being to help free people from oppression”—this sentiment would later be repeated as his primary incentive for releasing the secret documents. However, Snowden was discharged after breaking both legs in a training accident.

Later, Snowden landed a job as University of Maryland’s Center for Advanced Study of Language, which had ties to the National Security Agency. By 2006, Snowden got a job at the Central Intelligence Agency as an information-technology worker. This feat was a direct result of his prolific computer skills, which outweighed his lack of formal education. Beginning in 2007, Snowden was placed in Geneva, Switzerland to manage computer network security for the CIA. With his position, he was given a wide range of clearances to view sensitive documents and become privy to classified information. According to an interview with The Guardian, this is when his fundamental grievances with the government began. “Much of what I saw in Geneva really disillusioned me about how my government functions and what its impact is in the world,” he said. “I realized that I was part of something that was doing far more harm than good” (Greenwald, “Edward Snowden”, 2013).

While employed by the government, Snowden discovered that the American federal government had been collecting data on its citizens illegally. “Each time you pick up the phone, dial a number, write an email, make a purchase, travel on the bus carrying a cellphone, swipe a card somewhere, you leave a trace – and the government has decided that it’s a good idea to collect it all, everything. Even if you’ve never been suspected of any crime,” (Greenwald, “Edward Snowden”, 2013) says Snowden. Still, at that time, he did not speak out in the hopes that a new presidential administration would loosen these policies with the lessening terrorist threat.

In 2009, Snowden left the CIA to work as a contractor assigned to NSA facilities in Japan, then in Hawaii. All the while, he kept quiet and worked hard, but as Obama took office and his new policies began to unfold, Snowden’s resolve hardened as he realized that policies intending to protect people’s privacy were becoming weaker, while surveillance on citizens was becoming stronger (Greenwald, “Edward Snowden”, 2013). His breaking point came in 2013, when, as Snowden describes, he saw the Director of National Intelligence, James Clapper, lie under oath to Congress. When asked whether the US government was collecting information on its citizens, Clapper responded “No sir... not wittingly.” Proof of this exchange is easily found in the notes from the Congress hearing.

In a live question and answer forum organized by the Free Snowden campaign, Mr. Snowden said, “Seeing that really meant for me that there was no going back. Beyond that, it was the creeping realization that no one else was going to do this. The public had a right to know about these programs. The public had a right to know that which the government is doing in its name and that which the government is doing against the public.” And with that, Snowden’s decision was made. He began raising his concerns to anyone who would listen. “(I) made tremendous efforts to report these programs to co-workers, supervisors, and anyone with the proper clearance who would listen.

The reactions of those I told about the scale of the constitutional violations ranged from deeply concerned to appalled, but no one was willing to risk their jobs.”

Snowden made the decision that he would have to reach externally for support. In 2012, Snowden made contact with Glenn Greenwald, a journalist and blogger with *The Guardian*. At this time, Snowden was determined to remain anonymous, so he requested a public encryption key in order to send documents securely. In 2013, Snowden anonymously made contact with documentary filmmaker Laura Poitras. To both of these sources, Snowden began to leak thousands of documents that he had collected while working at the NSA data storage facility in Hawaii.

According to a special on the program 60 Minutes, Snowden had access to about 15,000 or more Australian intelligence files and an estimated 58,000 British intelligence files, and NSA Director Keith Alexander estimated that he had copied anywhere from 50,000 to 200,000 estimated documents, that number growing to 1.7 million later on. He shared this information with several journalists, including Greenwald and Poitras, and revealed to the public that the governments had been hiding a global surveillance program. He was charged with theft of government property and two charges under the 1917 Espionage Act; the US government was desperate to find him.

In May 2013, Snowden left Hawaii, telling his supervisors he was going back to the US for epilepsy treatment, but instead went to Hong Kong. He fled the US and went into hiding, after he disclosed that the NSA had been monitoring calls. After staying in a hotel for a while, Snowden began staying in houses of men and women seeking political asylum, in rural and impoverished regions of Hong Kong. Snowden’s Hong Kong lawyers arranged the stays with these people, because they were people that “went through the same process when they were feeling their countries” according to Mr. Tibbo, another lawyer of Snowden.

After his stay in Hong Kong, he left for Moscow, Russia where he was granted a one-year asylum. His Russian lawyer revealed that Snowden was in an undisclosed location due to safety reasons, and the White House expressed its disappointment to Russia. Up until 2015, he stayed in Russia, receiving a three-year residency permit. While living in Russia, he showed no intention of working for the Russian government or leaking classified documents to Russia or China.

### III. What did the documents say?

By this time, Edward Snowden has become a household name due to his steady presence in news and the bipartisan debate on whether he is a true patriot or a true traitor. However, this debate has somewhat obscured the overwhelming weight and legitimacy of the claims that Snowden made in his original correspondences published by *The Guardian* which include, but are not limited to:

- The NSA has the ability and the permission to sweep American’s phone records and has been systematically collecting data from major cell-service providers such as Verizon (Greenwald, “NSA Collecting Phone Records...” 2013)
- The FBI and NSA’s top-secret PRISM program allows the US government to mine data from nine leading Internet companies: Microsoft, Yahoo, Google, Facebook, PalTalk, AOL, Skype, Youtube, and Apple. The government has full access to messages and personal information shared with these providers (Gellman, 2017).

- GCHQ, a British spy agency, has partnered with the NSA to wiretap fiber-optic cables running in, out, and around Britain. The program is able to extract data from the cables and store the data for analysis and surveillance (MacAskill et. al., 2013)
- The NSA has wiretaps on at least 35 world leaders and has been publicly accused of such by German Chancellor Angela Merkel (Ball, 2013).
- The NSA has the ability to circumvent most encryption software and has inserted a number of 'backdoors' and 'trapdoors' into commercial encryption software (Borger et. al., 2013).

These are only a few of the revelations leaked in the hundreds of thousands of documents put forth by Snowden. The revelations are valuable in a number of ways, not only for the invasion of privacy inflicted upon presumably innocent world citizens and even world leaders, but also for the reaction that such accusations have elicited from the American government, who seems to have collectively proclaimed that they are justified in such secret invasions.

#### IV. Why is Snowden important?

Like so many before him, Edward Snowden is a warrior for American constitutional rights along side Malcolm X, Martin Luther King Jr., and John Lewis. At a point when human rights seemed definitely secured and protected, Snowden revealed an abhorrent reality where the government trusted to protect its citizens' privacy was actually violating it.

Amendment IV states: *the right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.*

That which is revealed by Snowden's leak undoubtedly contradicts the Fourth Amendment by violating the privacy and liberty of Americans and world citizens at large. While some argue that he betrayed the government and violated the trust of his company, his valor to take the risk and expose the violation of the constitutional right elicited strong reactions from the citizens in order to create change for the better. History has celebrated those who fight for constitutional rights. Edward Snowden is already a champion of the people and in the future, he will be favored by history as well.

#### References

Abraham Lincoln. (1929). *Advocate of Peace through Justice*, 91(2), 82-87. Retrieved from <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2068123>

Ackerman, S. (2013) Edward Snowden Did Enlist For Special Forces, US Army Confirms. *The Guardian*, June 10, 2013. Retrieved from <https://www.theguardian.com/world/2013/jun/10/edward-snowden-army-special-forces>

Altbach, P. (1966). "Black Power" and the US Civil Rights Movement. *Economic and Political Weekly*, 1(6), 233-234. Retrieved from <http://www.jstor.org/stable/4356980>

ARD Interview With Edward Snowden (January 27, 2014) ARD Interview with Edward Snowden (H. Siebel, Interviewer) [Transcript] Retrieved from <https://edwardsnowden.com/2014/01/27/video-ard-interview-with-edward-snowden/>

Bakalian, A., & Bozorgmehr, M. (2009) *Backlash 9/11: Middle Eastern and Muslim Americans Respond*. University of California Press. Retrieved from <http://www.jstor.org/stable/10.1525/j.ctt1pngn5>

Ball, J. (2013). "NSA monitored calls of 35 world leaders after US official handed over contacts". *The Guardian*. Retrieved from <https://www.theguardian.com/world/2013/oct/24/nsa-surveillance-world-leaders-calls>

Ball, J. (2015). "Of Snowden and the NSA, only one has acted unlawfully – and it's not Snowden". *The Guardian*. Retrieved from <https://www.theguardian.com/world/2015/may/07/edward-snowden-whistleblower-nsa-bulk-surveillance-illegal>

Beard, M. (1933). Lucretia Mott. *The American Scholar*, 2(1), 4-12. Retrieved from <http://www.jstor.org/stable/41203917>

Borger, J., Ball, J., & Greenwald, G. (2013). "Revealed: how US and UK spy agencies defeat internet privacy and security". *The Guardian*. Retrieved from <https://www.theguardian.com/world/2013/sep/05/nsa-gchq-encryption-codes-security>

Current and Projected National Security Threats to the United States: Hearing Before the Selected Committee on Intelligence of the United States Senate, One Hundred Thirteenth Congress, First Session (March 2013).

Defense Manpower Data Center (2016). Office of the Secretary of Defense, U.S. Department of Defense

Famularo, J., Handel, W., & Kepe, M. (2013). [Editor's Note]: State Building on a New Frontier. *Georgetown Journal of International Affairs*, 1-2. Retrieved from <http://www.jstor.org/stable/43134317>

Free Snowden. (The Courage Foundation). (January 23, 2014). *Live Q&A With Edward Snowden*. Retrieved from <https://www.freesnowden.is/asksnowden/>.

Gellman, B., Poitras, L., Gellman, B., & Poitras, L. (2017). "U.S., British intelligence mining data from nine U.S. Internet companies in broad secret program". *Washington Post*. Retrieved from [https://www.washingtonpost.com/investigations/us-intelligence-mining-data-from-nine-us-internet-companies-in-broad-secret-program/2013/06/06/3a0c0da8-cebf-11e2-8845-d970ccb04497\\_story.html?utm\\_term=.5ae3becffd21](https://www.washingtonpost.com/investigations/us-intelligence-mining-data-from-nine-us-internet-companies-in-broad-secret-program/2013/06/06/3a0c0da8-cebf-11e2-8845-d970ccb04497_story.html?utm_term=.5ae3becffd21)

Greenwald, G. (2013). "NSA collecting phone records of millions of Verizon customers daily". *The Guardian*. Retrieved from <https://www.theguardian.com/world/2013/jun/06/nsa-phone-records-verizon-court-order>

Greenwald, G., MacAskill, E., & Poitras, L. (2013). "Edward Snowden: The Whistleblower Behind The NSA Surveillance Revelations". *The Guardian*. Retrieved from <https://www.theguardian.com/world/2013/jun/09/edward-snowden-nsa-whistleblower-surveillance>.

History Of BEP And U.S. Currency (2016). U.S. Bureau Of Engraving And Printing – *Moneyfactory.Gov*. Retrieved from <http://www.moneyfactory.gov/uscurrency/history.html>

Hogan, M. & Shepherd, T. (2015). "Information Ownership and Materiality in an Age of Big Data Surveillance." *Journal of Information Policy* (Issue 5).

Holt, J. & Steven, M. (2015). "The Privacy Ecosystem: Regulating Digital Identity in the United States and European Union." *Journal of Information Policy*.

Hosenball, M. (2013). "NSA chief says Snowden leaked up to 200,000 secret documents". *Reuters*. Retrieved from <http://www.reuters.com/article/us-usa-security-nsa-idUS-BRE9AD19B20131114>

Keith, T. (2002). Courtesy of the Red, White, and Blue [Recorded by Toby Keith]. On *Unleashed* [album]. Nashville: DreamWorks Records.

Kelly, M. (2013). NSA: Snowden Stole 1.7 MILLION Classified Documents And Still Has Access To Most Of Them. *Business Insider*. Retrieved from <http://www.businessinsider.com/how-many-docs-did-snowden-take-2013-12>.

Ledgett, Rick. (2013 December 15). Interview by John Miller. *60 Minutes* [Television broadcast]. CBS.

"List Of Places Named After People In The United States". Accessed September 29, 2016 from Wikipedia: [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_places\\_named\\_after\\_people\\_in\\_the\\_United\\_States](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_places_named_after_people_in_the_United_States)

MacAskill, E., Borger, J., Hopkins, N., Davies, N., & Ball, J. (2013). "GCHQ taps fibre-optic cables for secret access to world's communications". *The Guardian*. Retrieved from <https://www.theguardian.com/uk/2013/jun/21/gchq-cables-secret-world-communications-nsa>

Mayo, B. (1959) George Washington. *The Georgia Review* 13, no. 2. Retrieved from <http://www.jstor.org/stable/41398143>.

Mazzetti, M. and Schmidt, M. (2013). "Officials Say U.S. May Never Know Extent of Snowden's Leaks". *The New York Times*

Michaels, G., & Zhi, X. (2010). Freedom Fries. *American Economic Journal: Applied Economics*, 2(3), 256-281. Retrieved from <http://www.jstor.org/stable/25760227>

Mitchell, A. (June 2013). What We Know About NSA Leaker Edward Snowden. *U.S. News*. Retrieved from [http://usnews.nbcnews.com/\\_news/2013/06/10/18882615-what-we-know-about-nsa-leaker-edward-snowden?lite](http://usnews.nbcnews.com/_news/2013/06/10/18882615-what-we-know-about-nsa-leaker-edward-snowden?lite)

New York Civil Liberties Union (n.d.) *Nyclu.Org*. Accessed September 29 2016. On homepage: [http://www.nyclu.org/pdfs/eroding\\_liberty.pdf](http://www.nyclu.org/pdfs/eroding_liberty.pdf).

Reitman, J. (2013). "Snowden And Greenwald: The Men Who Leaked The Secrets". *Rolling Stone*. Retrieved from <https://www.rollingstone.com/politics/news/snowden-and-greenwald-the-men-who-leaked-the-secrets-20131204>

Rusbridger, A. & MacAskill, E. (2014). "Edward Snowden interview – the edited transcript". *The Guardian*.

"United States Bill of Rights." *National Archives and Records Administration*.

U. S. Coast Guard Retired Flag Officers Index (n.d.) United States Coast Guard. *Uscg.Mil*. Retrieved from <http://www.uscg.mil/history/people/RetiredFlagOfficerIndex.asp#Br>

Wike, R., Stokes, B. & Poushter, J. (2015). America's Global Image. *Pew Research Center's Global Attitudes Project*. Retrieved from <http://www.pewglobal.org/2015/06/23/1-america-s-global-image/>.

Yegorov, O. (2016). "Edward Snowden keen to return home after 3 Years in Russia." Russia Beyond the Headlines. Retrieved from [https://www.rbth.com/politics\\_and\\_society/2016/09/15/edward-snowden-keen-to-return-home-after-3-years-in-russia\\_630317](https://www.rbth.com/politics_and_society/2016/09/15/edward-snowden-keen-to-return-home-after-3-years-in-russia_630317)

# Gender and Politics in the US

Frank Appletree  
Saint Paul American School  
Beijing, China

---

## Introduction

This paper is focused on the gendered nature of politics where now gender has an impact on how people think, organize, or the information and knowledge they have in the world. The study of the role of especially women has proved to be quite an interesting research topic. The current political situation of the world and especially the United States involving specifically the female gender is made all the more impressive in that as recently as the 1920s women didn't even have the right to vote. Besides voting, women were completely left out of the formal structures of the political scene. They were outsiders that could not hold elective office not even serving on juries (Ramirez, Soysal & Shanahan, 1997).

While the current state of politics can be considered a considerable step in the right direction thanks to the historical fight fueled by women to get equal rights in the world of politics, there is still a long way to go. Long gone are the days that a woman could not have a separate legal identity from her husband, but still, new challenges stand in the way of political equality among all genders. By understanding that politics aims to instill its values in society without any discrimination based on gender, race, tribe, or any other orientation then this would act as a stepping stone to achieve equality in the landscape of politics (Campbell, 1992).

Since the nineteenth amendment to the constitution made it possible for women to vote, many women have indeed participated in politics actively besides the voting process. However, gender stereotypes about voters as well as politicians of the female gender still exist. Indeed the study of women in the field of comparative politics has been found wanting (Merkl, 1976). Historically women have faced barriers in their fight for equal political rights and this struggle is up until now happening. While women have made strides in politics as seen in the almost record number of 86 women in Congress, this is put to shame when you consider for every one woman in Congress there are five men. Women may have the same equal political rights but the gender biases are hurting their stand in the political life (Vega & Firestone, 1995).

Experts have found that the barriers that hinder the success of women in politics are lower as compared to the past, but the issue is that these barriers no matter how insignificant they may seem do exist and are playing a quite significant role. Female lawmakers in the Congress have been proposing bills that have brought greater attention to the issues affect the female gender most notably

children. While this is a progress to be proud of, there are some bills that have been shot down due to the lack of support. These initiatives as much as they are helpful, face stern rejection as they could potentially lead to a newer political world not focused on or influenced by gender (Karen, 1991).

### **History of women struggles to gain equal political rights**

During the beginning of the 20th century, the one thing that was clear was that the political structure favored some people more than others. This was brought about mostly by differences in religion, class, race, region, and ethnicity. However, gender was perhaps among the biggest issues in this structure as women were marked as secondary citizens meaning that they more than often suffered discriminations. With time, however, women found ways in which they infiltrated the different sectors of political life, though equality was and is still a big issue today (Hunter, 1992).

In 1900, the legal standing of a woman was essentially attached to their marital status where a separate legal identity was non-existence meaning they could not participate in political activities such as voting or hold public office. Let alone political issues, a woman did not have the right to share information about family planning or even control her own biological reproduction. No separate legal identity would mean that a woman could not sue or be sued. Some of other rights that women didn't have were the option to pursue their career of choice or even own property.

One of the barriers to women's charge in the political field was the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution which they were not under "persons" meaning that equal protection under the law was nothing but a distant dream then. The women's responsibility was confined to the homes where the boy child was raised to be a future citizen but the daughter child was to be raised so they could be the mothers of tomorrow.

In the 1830s, at a time when women speaking in public was considered scandalous, Sarah and Angelina Grimké started speaking against slavery and this would lay foundations for the women to make the step to change the political world in the 20th century (Birney, 1969). The Seneca Falls Convention in 1848 also had a part to play in the progress women have made today on the political platform. It's rightfully considered the first ever women's convention to be held in the USA soil with the main focus being to address the rights of women (Wellman, 2010). This was the first wave that would build foundations for the antifeminism force that would take over the political world in the United States. This was more than just the simple right to vote as it was focused on the wide women's right. These courageous acts led to more and more women appearing in public setting by 1900, and this led to the strengthening of the foundation. This started to bear fruits where women's education was expanded and they could now choose a variety of career paths unlike before. Women's suffrage movements gained a lot of power and this led to increased individualism especially in the urban areas and they pushed for equal rights of the most basic rights (Buechler, 1990).

At its inception, the suffrage movement was driven mostly by the educated white women but by 1910s it had become a mass movement where its goals and aims adhered to African American women as well as those in the working class who had their own political agendas and used this movement as a gateway to push their agendas such as racial discrimination which was shared by the class of working people (Buechler, 1990). The effect of the suffrage movement combined with other factors was the Nineteenth Amendment to the Constitution where American Woman Suffrage Association was dismantled and formed a new as the League of Women Voters (Young, 1989). The

purpose of the newly formed movement was to teach women from all walks of life how to exercise their voting rights (Brown, 1993).

As mentioned above there was increased individualism among women and this lack of solidarity meant that the subsequent women movements created had little impact on the stand of women in politics as their constitutions were not only narrow but they also differed in priorities. However, all was not well as still women suffered legal discriminations especially those who had sought to live as professions. Thus, an Equal Rights Amendment was introduced in 1923 by The National Women's Party but was rejected by other suffragists who viewed this as a risk to their recently acquired rights from the Nineteenth Amendment to the Constitution (Zimmerman, 1991).

While women had found their voices there still remained distinct racial lines. Although the African American Woman supported the cause through the mass movements her voice was muted. In 1950, a lot changed where women would work in the labor force as the effects of the Second World War had a telling and lasting impact (Goldin, 1991). However, the traditional gender roles took their place and the male returned to having most of the rights. The women were, however, not to be shot down and this saw the rise of activism among women from different constituencies.

The years between 1960 and 1980 was the home of not only women rights but also wider rights revolution that aimed at eliminating the legally sanctioned discriminations based on gender and race. The women's movement led direct assaults on the structure of their rights and this left a telling mark on the landscape of politics. Women were pushing for issues like child care, domestic violence, abortion, and sexual harassment. While the Equal Rights Amendment may have gone down in defeat in 1982, this contrasted to the early years of the 20th century as the new right had seen an overwhelming growth of political power (Soule & King, 2006). While the women did focus on individualism they never lost sight of the task at hand which was to ensure equal rights in the political environment.

This new wave of antifeminism flourished mostly because of the insecurities introduced into the economy thanks to the Vietnam War which almost crippled it. This situation while unsuitable for the country represented a catalyst that the women movements were missing. This only hastened the approach on the point of having equal legal rights as those of their male counterparts. Their directness and aggressive nature in which they pushed for the settling of issues such as sexual harassment, and domestic violence served to reveal how deep this problem had been entrenched in the country for decades. Antifeminism became a strong force in the 1970s thanks to the mobilization of anti-abortion forces (Qian, 2004).

The changes that occurred up until this point in history illustrated a long journey to ensure that the political field did not tip the advantage based on the gender of the candidates running for public office or being involved in any one of the many political activities. The direction in which women politics took could not be envisioned in 1900, where now women are not only enjoying equal rights but are making serious advancements in the field of politics and to imagine this all started with a courageous public speaking (Qian, 2004).

## Women involvement in recent politics

Ever since the nineteenth amendment to the constitution, women have made remarkable steps in infiltrating the political world as well as working their way through the many levels of gov-

ernment in existence of the United States. This has truly been one journey that took a lot of sacrifices and the fruits have been worth it, with more still to come. Perhaps the first significant climb to political power happened in the Supreme Court. In 1981, Sandra Day O'Connor was named as the first Supreme Court Justice by the then President Ronald Reagan. The Supreme Court has served as an example to illustrate the ascendance of women to political power as Sandra Day O'Connor was joined by Ruth Bader Ginsburg. Successions happened in the Supreme Court where Sonia Sotomayor and Elena Kagan soon claimed the seats of power too. To add to this, women comprised a third of the nine sitting justices in the Supreme Court in 2012.

The Secretary of State is another position of political power that was first held by a woman named Madeline Albright who was appointed by President Bill Clinton in 1996. This post was to be held by another woman named Condoleezza Rice brought into the power seat in 2005 by President George W. Bush. This post was also held by Hillary Clinton.

How far women have come in politics is perhaps illustrated even better by Hillary Clinton who has run for the presidency twice. While she was the twenty- fifth woman to attempt to hold the presidency seat the first time she ran, she almost came close to becoming the first woman to win the nomination of a major party. However, she did manage to do just that in 2016 and was truly marginally close to beating President Donald Trump to the hot seat, where people had been for once considering the possibility of having a woman president. Though she did not win, she managed to transcend gender in one of the most truly remarkable showings of that anyone from any gender can strive and conquer politics. By making history, Hillary Clinton could change the entire landscape of politics where now more and more women will view the political world as one that they can conquer regardless of their gender. This could have an effect of improving on the 20% of women in the Congress as this will lead to more women interested in politics where they believe that their genders don't matter as much as their ideas and policies they are looking to implement.

This represents significant steps as the first woman to run for presidency known as Victoria Claflin Woodhull came about 150 years ago in 1872 before the nineteenth amendment to the constitutions and the only way she was able to join the race was because she had started a newspaper firm that had a huge support for women's suffrage. Though, she would go on to receive no single vote running on the Equal Rights Party (Goldsmith, 2011).

## **Barriers to women in politics today**

One interesting question you might ask is the number of women in office that low almost 100 years into getting the right to vote and participate in politics. Do you blame the political system for being or impenetrable or are the women uncertain, unwilling, or just plain uninterested? These are few of the questions that people ask while trying to understand the low number of women at the political offices.

One of the factors that handicap female candidates are campaign funding which will tend to favor the male. This is because of the gender wage gap that exists as a result of many factors which leave women with lower incomes. Besides the gender wage gap, disproportionate unpaid family care and occupation segregation all account for the low incomes. There is no public funding allowed in the United States and this means women are at a disadvantage before even the race starts (Schneir, 1994).

Another factor is more a social/ cultural barrier where there are persisting gender roles where for instance masculinity is associated with leadership. Hence, a lack of women in the high political positions may change the perception of both women and men leading them to rethink women's "ability to rule". This leads to even other women candidates to perceive electoral environment biased against women and also highly competitive. By thinking they are less likely to qualify than their male counterparts, they are already handing over the advantage to the men.

According to several surveys, women were more likely than men to think of politics as pointless. This was furthered by where women are brought into politics but are forced to conform to the male norms. The perception of the ideal candidate needs to be altered so that women can be given more opportunity to run.

The last barrier is going to cover is about the time constraints and family work where the woman holds the majority of the responsibility of household tasks and child care. This leads to a situation where women will spend most of their time at home compared to men. The constant persistence of women to deal with child care and other responsibilities makes it difficult to juggle a political position in between as these activities are rarely equally shared and hence, the woman suffers (Okin, 1989).

### **Getting more women involved in politics**

The strong suffrages led to the addressing of women rights and while it may sound ironical, the current political environment is in need of a strategic and coordinated feminist movement that will perhaps increase the participation levels of women in politics as the parties are looking quite ineffective in doing just that. A feminist movement could sponsor more female candidates which would in pressurize those in office regardless of their gender. This movement would also be well within their rights to push policies that would bring about gender equality which seems to be the root of multiple problems. To ensure that the feminist movement is effective it needs to be autonomous such that it does not affiliate with any single party as this will make increase the power it has so that it can apply pressure to the parties (Alexander, 2012).

The current situation of women's movements is dire as most are struggling and this is taking with it the "civic voice" of women. The broad-based movements need to be replaced by more local movements which will have a higher chance of getting young feminist interested in the movement as well as in politics. There has been a noted deterioration in the level activism in the grass root due to this issue.

Another measure would be to ensure that women and girls feel positive about their role in society by ensuring that laws, procedures, and policies aim to ensure gender equality. Gender analysis during policy making will go a long way into ensuring that the rights and needs of women are catered for and that they are provided with an easy route to get into politics (MacKinnon, 2001).

### **Conclusion**

There can be no questioning the dedication that women have gone through to ensure that they are subjected to the same rights as men. However, the entire struggle that women put is at risk

due to poor policy making behind the scenes and also the slow but inevitable crumbling of feminist movements. While the number of women in politics continues to increase, the gender stereotype is threatening to undo the good work where besides men, women themselves expect men to perform better in politics. Therefore, to avoid falling back to the women's revolution in politics better policy making as well as movements that organize women is crucial (Alexander, 2012).

## References

Adamany, D. W. (1975). Political money: A strategy for campaign financing in America. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press.

Alexander, A. C. (2012). Change in women's descriptive representation and the belief in women's ability to govern: A virtuous cycle. *Politics & Gender*, 8(4), 437-464.

Birney, C. H. (1969). The Grimké Sisters: Sarah and Angelina Grimké, the First American Women Advocates of Abolition and Woman's Rights. Lee and Shepard.

Brown, J. K. (1993). The Nineteenth Amendment and Women's Equality. *The Yale Law Journal*, 102(8), 2175-2204.

Buechler, S. M. (1990). Women's movements in the United States: woman suffrage, equal rights, and beyond. Rutgers University Press.

Campbell, D. (1992). Writing security: United States foreign policy and the politics of identity. U of Minnesota Press.

Goldin, C. D. (1991). The role of World War II in the rise of women's employment. *The American Economic Review*, 741-756.

Goldsmith, B. (2011). Other powers: The age of suffrage, spiritualism, and the scandalous Victoria Woodhull. Knopf.

Hunter, J. D. (1992). Culture wars: The struggle to control the family, art, education, law, and politics in America. Basic Books.

Karen, D. (1991). The politics of class, race, and gender: Access to higher education in the United States, 1960-1986. *American Journal of Education*, 99(2), 208-237.

MacKinnon, C. (2001). Sex Equality (Casebook).

Merkl, P. H. (1976). The Study of Women in Comparative Politics: Reflections on a Conference. *Signs: Journal of Women in Culture and Society*, 1(3, Part 1), 749-756.

Okin, S. M. (1989). Justice, gender, and the family. Basic books.

Qian, Z. E. N. (2004). An Analysis of American Anti-feminism Movement in the 1970s [J]. *Journal of Huaihua University*, 6, 021.

Ramirez, F. O., Soysal, Y., & Shanahan, S. (1997). The changing logic of political citizenship: Cross-national acquisition of women's suffrage rights, 1890 to 1990. *American sociological review*, 735-745.

Schneir, M. (Ed.). (1994). Feminism in our time: the essential writings, world war II to the present. Vintage.

Soule, S. A., & King, B. G. (2006). The stages of the policy process and the equal rights amendment, 1972–1982. *American Journal of Sociology*, 111(6), 1871-1909.

Vega, A., & Firestone, J. M. (1995). The effects of gender on congressional behavior and the substantive representation of women. *Legislative Studies Quarterly*, 213-222.

Wellman, J. (2010). *The Road to Seneca Falls: Elizabeth Cady Stanton and the First Woman's Rights Convention*. University of Illinois Press.

Young, L. M. (1989). *In the Public Interest: The League of Women Voters, 1920-1970* (No. 96). Praeger Pub Text.

Zimmerman, J. G. (1991). The Jurisprudence of Equality: The Women's Minimum Wage, the First Equal Rights Amendment, and *Adkins v. Children's Hospital*, 1905-1923. *The Journal of American History*, 78(1), 188-225.

# Taking a Stand in History: The Third Estate in the French Revolution

Gina Jeong  
Cupertino High School

---

## Introduction

In the years before the French Revolution began, French society was divided up into three sections called estates. The clergy members and the nobility both had their own separate estates, and the other 97 percent of the population were bunched together in what was called the Third Estate. Despite being the largest group in French society, the Third Estate held the least political and economic power. However, after several hundred years of living in this kind of unequal society and the emergence of a period of change in philosophical, political, and economic thought combined with a severe fiscal crisis, the citizens of France came together to rise up against both the monarchy and the oppressive societal system that kept them down to create a new order for the country they called home. After banding together, the Third Estate threw off the yoke of an ancient societal system and created a new country that included both a new government and a new way of living where everyone was born equal.

The following essay outlines the three structures that provided the impetus for this revolution – the old system, the Enlightenment, and the financial crisis - to show how these events were used by the masses to take a stand in history, create a new social and political order that included fundamental freedoms and social mobility for all, and pave the way for the modern French state.

## Background

From the time of the middle ages to the revolution, the Kingdom of France operated within what is called the Ancien Régime.<sup>41</sup> The Ancien Régime included a three pronged system that had been in use from the medieval period, which divided society into different ‘estates’. These estates were aptly titled the First Estate, Second Estate, and Third Estate.<sup>42</sup>

---

41 William Kibler, et al, *Medieval France: An Encyclopedia* (New York, Routledge: 1995), 283.

42 William Duiker and Jackson Spielvogel, *World History* (Boston, MA: Wadsworth, 2010), 521.

The First Estate was the smallest of the three. The people occupying this group were the most powerful people in France, second only to the monarchy itself.<sup>43</sup><sup>44</sup> Made up primarily of the clergy, the number of people included was around 130,000. Though the group made up a small percentage of the population, the First Estate held 10 percent of the land in the kingdom.<sup>45</sup> They were also exempt from paying taxes to the crown, and they had the power to collect a 10 percent tax from the Third Estate called the tithe.<sup>46</sup> Furthermore, if a member of the clergy, or the First Estate, broke the law, they faced trial in separate courts run by the Church.<sup>47</sup>

The Second Estate was slightly larger than the first, and it was primarily made up of French nobility. The 350,000 people in the Second Estate owned approximately 25 to 30 percent of the land in France, and as nobility, they played important roles in French society including working as leadership in the government, military, court, as well as in the church.<sup>48</sup> Landowners in the Second Estate were responsible for the tailie tax; however, they passed their tax burden off on their tenants, who occupied the Third Estate.<sup>49</sup>

The Third Estate was the largest estate of the Ancien Regime. It included all of those who were not included in the first two estates, which was approximately 97 percent of the kingdom's population.<sup>50</sup> Although the wealthiest populations occupied the First and Second estates, not everyone in the Third Estate was poor.<sup>51</sup> In fact, the group included a variety of incomes, occupations, and levels of education. However, the majority of the Third Estate (approximately 75 to 80 percent) were peasants.<sup>52</sup> Many of those peasants were working with landlords, and there was a build-up of resentment caused by tensions with landlords over landlord rights.<sup>53</sup>

Only eight percent of the population was considered to be middle class. Their occupations included industrialists, merchants, and bankers, and they benefited economically from a period of prosperity that came after 1730.<sup>54</sup> However, their relative wealth did not secure them the social or political privileges reserved for the nobility and the clergy. The disconnect between economic and social power would become one of the driving forces in uniting against both the bourgeoisie and the peasants of the Third Estate against the monarchy and the Ancien Regime itself.

---

43 David Parker, *Class and State in Ancien Regime France: The Road to Modernity?* (London: Routledge, 1996), 93.

44 Jocelyn Hunt, *The French Revolution* (London: Routledge, 2005), 3.

45 Duiker and Spielvogel, 521.

46 UCL Museums & Collections, "The Three Estates Information Sheet," University College London, <https://www.ucl.ac.uk/museums/learning-resources/secondary-schools/downloadable-lessons/three-estates-student-sheets.pdf> (accessed November 3, 2016).

47 Peter Mantin, *The French Revolution* (Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann Educational, 1992), 6

48 Duiker and Spielvogel, 521.

49 G.J. Cavanaugh, "Nobles, Privileges, and Taxes in France: A Revision Reviewed," *French Historical Studies*, 8, no 4 (1974), 682.

50 Duiker and Spielvogel, 522.

51 Duiker and Spielvogel, 521.

52 Jackson Spielvogel, *Western Civilization, Alternate Volume: Since 1300* (Stamford, CT: Cengage Learning, 2015), 568

53 David Hunt, "Peasant Politics in the French Revolution," *Social History*, 9, no 3 (1984), 287.

54 Duiker and Spielvogel, 521.

## Literature Review

Understanding the French Revolution requires an understanding of several important factors operating in French society at the time. The make-up of the Ancien Régime and the new allegiances being formed were important for establishing the actors involved. Second, the development of Enlightenment philosophy as a challenge to the Ancien Régime provided a theoretical framework and justification for change.<sup>55</sup> Finally, the economic issues facing the kingdom in 1787 and 1788 were enough to spark a revolution. The lopsidedness of societal groups in the Ancien Régime has already been outlined. To understand their mobilization, the literature review will first look to the Enlightenment philosophy at work and then turn to the economic issues at play as well as consider the potential role of outside events, such as the American Revolution.

### Enlightenment Philosophy

The Ancien Régime was not just a societal structure. It also included a set of virtues and values inherited from the Middle Ages including austerity, self-sacrifice, and courage.<sup>56</sup> These were the values that separated the nobility and clergy from the Third Estate, and they underlined why the groups should remain separate. However, Enlightenment philosophy emerged and demonstrated a transformation in public thought and the way people approached vital societal issues.<sup>57</sup> One French Enlightenment thinker, Voltaire, wrote explicitly in favor of free speech and freedom of expression for the French people. Not only did he write out these ideas based on the newly formed tradition of rationalism, but he openly mocked those, like the church, who prevented these freedoms from being exercised.<sup>58</sup>

The writer and philosopher Turgot's letters and movement during the Enlightenment provided a change in the political, economic, and social philosophy of France.<sup>59</sup> Turgot argued against church control of important government functions. He believed that men, not their god, would be the ones to move society forward.<sup>60</sup> Moreover, he wrote that change was important for society and that progress was not just good but vital. Additionally, Turgot believed that the French tax system needed to be more equitable and should ask more of those who could afford to pay instead of relying so heavily on the Third Estate. His contributions to economics was the most influential work at the time, and his suggestions are reflected in the revolutionary doctrine.

---

55 John Markoff, "Allies and Opponents: Nobility and Third Estate in the Spring of 1789," *American Sociological Review*, 53, no 4 (1988), 477.

56 C.B.A. Behrens, *The Ancien Régime* (London: Harcourt, Brace & World, Inc, 1967), 119.

57 Behrens, 123.

58 Robin Winks and Thomas Kaiser, *Europe: From the Old Regime to the Age of Revolution* (New York: Oxford University Press, 2004), 106.

59 R. Palmer, "Turgot: Paragon of Continental Enlightenment," *The Journal of Law & Economics*, 19, no. 3 (1976): 610.

60 Winks and Kaiser, 105.

## The American Revolution

The American Revolution in 1776 may have played a minor role in the French Revolution.<sup>61</sup> The two revolutions share strands of similar philosophies, and some similar political motivations and connections were identified by Alphonse Aulard nearly fifty years after the revolutions took place.<sup>62</sup> Indeed, Tocqueville also wrote a note, that was not incorporated into his work, asking “Why have very similar principles and political theories driven the United States only to a change of government, and France to a total subversion of her society. Idea which could be very fruitful, although I don’t know where to place it.”<sup>63</sup> Much of the understanding of these two events as happening in tandem with each other remains within this vein, and most recognition of any correlation between the revolutions faces heavy criticism from scholars of many backgrounds.

## Financial and Revolutionary Events

A combination of the above philosophical and political issues with a long-standing fiscal crisis sparked the series of events that began the French Revolution. In regards to the economic crisis, Louis XV had severely weakened the economic state of France during and after the French defeat in the Seven Years’ War between England and his grandson Louis XVI.<sup>64</sup> The monarchy continued to mismanage national finances as Marie Antoinette continued to spend money on her extravagant fashion, throwing parties at Versailles, and even allegedly paying millions to foreign emperors.<sup>65</sup> Furthermore, tax issues ensured that the lack of funds presented by the budget crisis would persist for many years.<sup>66</sup> Finally, France did not have a central bank, and most of the nation’s income came from private loans and taxes collected from the peasantry.<sup>67</sup>

The extravagance of the monarchs hit the people hard. In France, the bread was the main source of food.<sup>68</sup> However, the price of bread was unbearable. At one point, it cost 88% of a person’s income to buy only two loaves of bread. This was a stark contrast to the way the elites lived and spent money.<sup>69</sup>

Finally, the Estates-General was called for the first time since 1614<sup>70</sup> to discuss the matter of France’s dire finances. However, despite having double representation,<sup>71</sup> the vote of the Third Estate only carried the same voting weight as the other groups, which meant they could be outvoted by the

---

61 Library of Congress, *The Impact of the American Revolution Abroad* (Honolulu: University Press of the Pacific, 2002), 22.

62 Alphonse Aulard, *The French Revolution: A Political History* (New York: Charles Scribner’s Sons, 1910),

63 Library of Congress, 23.

64 Sylvia Neely, *A Concise History of the French Revolution* (Lanham: Rowman & Littlefield, 2008), 29.

65 Will Bashor, *Marie Antoinette’s Darkest Days* (London: Rowman and Littlefield, 2016), 155.

66 Nelson White, 229.

67 Duiker and Spielvogel, 521.

68 Colin Heywood, *Childhood in Nineteenth Century France* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1988), 32.

69 Lisa Bramen, “When Food Changed History: The French Revolution,” Smithsonian, July 14, 2010, <http://www.smithsonianmag.com/arts-culture/when-food-changed-history-the-french-revolution-93598442/> (accessed November 25, 2016).

70 J. Michael Hayden, *France and the Estates General of 1614* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2008), 1.

71 Sally Waller, *France in Revolution, 1776-1830* (Oxford: Heinemann Educational Publishers, 2002), 20.

other two groups, which was problematic for their interests because a two-thirds vote was required to pass a motion.<sup>7273</sup>

## Analysis

The products of the first months of the French Revolution included three important events: the storming of the Bastille, the creation of the *French Declaration to the Rights of Man*, and the creation of *Women's Petition to the National Assembly*.

While many factors motivated rebellion, the dismissal of Jacques Necker, a state minister favored by the Parisians, represented a final blow to the people and caused them to revolt. At dawn on July 14<sup>th</sup> of 1789, revolutionaries took up their weapons and gathered at the Bastille, a state prison located on the east side of the city of Paris. A group of men climbed over the outer wall of the Bastille and lowered the drawbridge. Following their lead, a further 300 revolutionaries rushed in and attempted to lower the second drawbridge.

De Launay, the prison governor, ordered his men to open fire to protect the Bastille. For a moment, it seemed as though they would be able to hold back the crowd. But as time passed, more and more Parisians joined in the fighting. Further defense floundered when a group of soldiers escaped from the French army and joined the side of the mob. De Launay was forced to surrender, and the cannons and the gunpowder were seized, seven prisoners were freed, and de Launay and his men were murdered.

The storming of the Bastille by the crowds of Parisians on July 14<sup>th</sup> of 1789 marked the end of the Ancien Régime and the official beginning of the French Revolution.

The *French Declaration of the Rights of Man* was created by the National Assembly that broke away from the Estates-General.<sup>74</sup> It established a secular natural law designed to be free of the religious doctrine, dogma, and authority that had accompanied previous French law. Under the *Declaration*, men were not born into groups that pre-determined their destiny. Rather, they were born free and in the eyes of the law, all men were born equal. The rights that every man was to be equal under included: liberty, security, and the freedom to resist oppression. The *Declaration* also transferred sovereignty from the crown to the people so that French sovereignty would for the first time reside in the nation itself instead of the monarch.<sup>75</sup>

As noted above, the Declaration provided equality to all men.<sup>76</sup> This meant that for the first time, the law did not apply to some people, like the Third Estate, while not applying to others, like the nobility and clergy. It could not be used arbitrarily, and it provided for access to property, free-

72 Vivian Gruder, *The Notables and the Nation: The Political Schooling of the French* (Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 2007), 349.

73 Edward Weisband and Courtney Thomas, *Political Culture and the Making of Modern Nation States* (New York: Routledge, 2015), 74.

74 National Assembly of France. The Declaration of the Rights of Man and Citizen 1789, Retrieved from [https://www.americanbar.org/content/dam/aba/migrated/2011\\_build/human\\_rights/french\\_dec\\_rightsofman.authcheckdam.pdf](https://www.americanbar.org/content/dam/aba/migrated/2011_build/human_rights/french_dec_rightsofman.authcheckdam.pdf) (accessed October 31, 2016).

75 Ibid.

76 Nicholas Capaldi and Gordon Lloyd, *Liberty and Equality in Political Economy* (Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, 2016), 58.

dom, and progress under the philosophy of rationalism. However, it did not include these protections for women,<sup>77</sup> despite the fact that they held increasingly public roles during this period.<sup>7879</sup>

Women in general had had few rights under the Ancien Régime. For example, while they could testify in a criminal court, they could not participate in notarized acts like the writing of a will.<sup>80</sup> Furthermore, they were more akin to property than autonomous human beings because their rights were owned by their fathers until they were married, and only after the death of her husband could a woman expect any kind of relative independence.<sup>81</sup> However, despite their lack of social rights, the clergy or nobility could send female attendees the Estates-General, and even some widows from the Third Estate had found a way to participate in a handful of primary assemblies.<sup>82</sup> By the time the revolution arrived in 1789, some of the old portrayals of women were as shaky as the justifications for the Ancien Régime, and the philosophy that broke down around justifications for the Ancien Régime also began to break down around the deprivation of rights for women.

In the spirit of the *Declaration*, a group of women banded together to deliver an anonymously authored petition, which if accepted, would ensure that they were fairly represented under the law.<sup>83</sup> Together, French women marched on Versailles in October of 1789 to propose the document that stipulated that men and women should have equal rights with the argument that if women could be punished under the law then they should also receive protections from it. However, the measure failed, and women were forced to continue fighting for representation for several centuries.

## Conclusion

The founding of the French Republic was not a gradual transition in which the ruling elite decided it was time to provide equal access to the political process. Nor did they decide to ensure freedom and fairness throughout society regardless of economic means or birthright. Rather, it was the oppressed societal majority, who were fed up with not only the government but the entire societal system in France, who chose to band together under mutual resentment and contempt for those who had withheld economic, social, and political privileges from them. The result was the overthrow of a system of organization that had been in place for hundreds of years. The economic crises provided an important catalyst for this revolution, but it was a combination of changes in societal and political thought through the Enlightenment and the erosion of the justification for a failing system that propelled this movement forward, ensured its success, and replaced it with a system that was based on social equality. While the French Revolution did not ensure that every French man and woman would be political and social equals overnight, it was an important stepping stone for this transition. Ultimately, it showed that a group of people who come together under the same cause can stand up to history.

77 Karen Offen, European Feminisms, 1700-1950 (Stanford: Stanford University Press, 2000), 51.

78 TarabairShinde, “Why Blame Women?”, in Women Imagine Change, eds. Eugenia, DeLamotte, Natania Meeker, Jean O’Barr (New York: Routledge, 1997), 488.

79 Sophie Mousset, Women’s Rights and the French Revolution (New Brunswick: Transaction Publishers, 2007), 1.

80 Jane Abray, “Feminism in the French Revolution,” The American Historical Review, 80, no. 1 (1975), 43.

81 Abray, 44.

82 Abray, 44.

83 Women’s Petition to the National Assembly, Retrieved from George Mason University, <https://chnm.gmu.edu/revolution/d/629/> (accessed October 31, 2016).

## Primary Sources

National Assembly of France. n.d. "The Declaration of the Rights of Man and of the Citizen 1789." American Bar Association.

[https://www.americanbar.org/content/dam/aba/migrated/2011\\_build/human\\_rights/french\\_dec\\_rightsofman.authcheckdam.pdf](https://www.americanbar.org/content/dam/aba/migrated/2011_build/human_rights/french_dec_rightsofman.authcheckdam.pdf).

The Declaration of the Rights of Man and of the Citizen instituted natural laws that were set apart from the religious basis. It was created by the national assembly of France. Through this declaration, the idea of freedom and equality was introduced and secured. In addition, it also announced that the nation of France would no longer in the hands of monarchs but rather in the hands of the people.

n.d. Women's Petition to the National Assembly. <https://chnm.gmu.edu/revolution/d/629/>.

The Women's Petition to the National Assembly was issued by French women who demanded equal rights between men and women. This document describes sexual inequality by arguing why one is more protected and superior than the other but they are both equally punished under law. The document ordered the government to provide equal protection and rights to men and women.

## Secondary Sources

Abrray, Jane. 1975. "Feminism in the French Revolution." *The American Historical Review* 80 (1): 43-62.

Jane Abrray's journal discusses the limited rights of women under the Ancien Regime. The author describes how women had only few rights, and they were often discouraged under many limitations. However, at the same time, she included positive rights of women by stating how some women were able to participate in the primary assemblies despite of their unequal position to men.

Aulard, Alphonse. 1910. *The French Revolution: A Political History*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons. Aulard's book lists the events that occurred in French Revolution chronologically. The author also argued that French Revolution is very similar to American Revolution by demonstrating how both revolutions shared similar philosophies, beliefs, political motivations, and connections.

Bashor, Will. 2016. *Marie Antoinette's Darkest Days*. London: Rowan and Littlefield.

Bashor's book traces the last days of the ex-queen Marie Antoinette. The book begins when she was separated from her family and was sent prison. He also discussed the issues that had led up to this point. In addition, he included financial mismanagement of the queen as one of the factors that contributed to the chaos.

Behrens, C.B.A. 1967. *The Ancien Regime*. London: Harcourt, Brace & World, INC.

This essay gives a thorough explanation about the Ancien Regime. It includes the roots of the Ancien Regime that can be traced back to the ideas developed in the Middle Ages. Additionally, the author incorporates ideas from the Middle Ages to further explain the separation of the estates. The author also discusses the results of Enlightenment, a period when new ideas flooded and encouraged transformations in social structure.

Bramen, Lisa. 2010. "When Food Changed History: The French Revolution." Smithsonian, July 14. Accessed November 25, 2016. <http://www.smithsonianmag.com/arts-culture/when-food-changed-history-the-french-revolution-93598442/>.

This article describes one of the factors that led up to the revolution: the price of bread. The author includes statistics to illustrate how expensive the bread was at that time. Furthermore, the author also discussed the importance of bread to the French people to suggest why the price of bread became one of the factors that contributed to the revolution.

Capaldi, Nicholas, and Gordon Lloyd. 2016. *Liberty and Equality in Political Economy*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar.

The book is a part of the series *New Thinking in Political Economy*. It considers the debate between liberty and economy by comparing and contrasting Locke and Rousseau. The authors attempt to present a new perspective on two historical philosophical texts.

Cavanaugh, G.J. 1974. "Nobles, Privileges, and Taxes in France: A Revision Reviewed." *French Historical Studies* 8 (4): 681-692.

This article provides an explanation about the different duties of the three estates, including taxes and the privileges in France. The author demonstrates the privileges of the first and the second estate. The first estate was excused from paying taxes, and the second estate was responsible only for the tallied tax. The author also describes how the third estate was different from the first two. The third estate carried the burden of taxes themselves because they had to pay taxes to both the church and the monarch.

Duiker, William, and Jackson Spielvogel. 2010. *World History*. Boston, MA: Wadsworth.

This textbook explains the social structure that lasted in France from Middle Ages up until the revolution. The textbook also describes how the French people had been divided up into groups called estates and were classified as first, second or third estate based on their social status.

Gruder, Vivian. 2007. *The Notables and the Nation: The Political Schooling of the French*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.

In this book, the author examines the reasons why the people decided to take an oppositional side of the government. The author includes how unfair it was for the third estate to carry the same voting weight as the other two estates in the meeting, since the two estates always outvoted the third estate. This resulted in the third estate opposing the government.

Hayden, J Michael. 2008. *France and the Estates General of 1614*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Hayden's book provides an extensive description of first estate general meeting in 1614. The meeting was held to discuss France's economic condition and international relations. The book is based on complex research and primary sources, including records from the royal councils.

Heywood, Colin. 1988. *Childhood in Nineteenth Century France*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

The book explores the lives of children in post-revolution France. It includes children from rural and urban backgrounds, how industrialization impacted childhood, and how children's lives changed across the nineteenth century.

Hunt, David. 1984. "Peasant Politics in the French Revolution." *Social History* 9 (3): 277-299.

Hunt's essay describes the conflicts that had been created by the Ancien Régime by demonstrating how much land was promoted to the first and the second estate, which made up 3% of the population, and how much land was promoted to the third estate, which made up the 97% of the population. Uneven land distribution resulted in a conflict between the peasants and the land-owners over the land-rights.

Hunt, Jocelyn. 2005. *The French Revolution*. London: Routledge.

Hunt's book provides a good explanation of the background information and primary causes of the French Revolution. She includes background information by explaining the three estate social system in France as well as why the system eventually resulted in revolution.

Kibler, William, Grover Zinn, John Bell Henneman Jr, and Lawrence Earp. 1995. *Medieval France: An Encyclopedia*. New York: Routledge.

This work describes how society within the kingdom of France operated from the Middle Ages through to the French revolution. The author also explains the Ancien Régime, a political and social system employed in France for several hundred years.

Library of Congress. 2002. *The Impact of the American Revolution Abroad*. Honolulu: University Press of the Pacific.

This book provides an explanation of the impact of the American Revolution on the world, including how American independence gave hope to the people of France by accomplishing something that seemed to be impossible.

Mantin, Peter. 1992. *The French Revolution*. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann Educational.

Mantin's book highlights the causes of the revolution by explaining how unfair it was to be a member of the third estate. He also explains how members of the first estate were tried at the church when they broke the law.

Markoff, John. 1988. "Allies and Opponents: Nobility and Third Estate in the Spring of 1789." *American Sociological Review* 53 (4): 477-496.

The journal article looks at the polarization in French politics before the French revolution. The author considers the role of nobles and non-nobles and their differing yet similar visions of social change. He explores what factors brought these two groups together as well as what separated them.

Mousset, Sophie. 2007. *Women's Rights and the French Revolution*. New Brunswick: Transaction Publishers.

Mousset's book gives a clear explanation of all the contributions made by the women who played a major role in the revolution. However, she also demonstrated how there was not much of recognition of their accomplishments in society by noting that women's protests were silenced and women's clubs were banned.

Neely, Sylvia. 2008. *A Concise History of the French Revolution*. Lanham: Rowman & Littlefield. Sylvia's book chronologically explains about the events of the revolution including the causes of the revolution all the way to the decline of the revolution. In addition, she also included the financial or economic crisis that France was going through before the revolution.

Nelson White, Eugene. 1995. "The French Revolution and the Politics of Government Finance, 1770-1815." *The Journal of Economic History* 55 (2): 227-255.

Nelson White's journal article provides an explanation of why the central government was the cause of the revolution. He discussed the extent to which the fiscal crisis inherited from the monarchy played a role in the revolution, including how the peasants had to pay taxes to support the budget.

Offen, Karen. 2000. European Feminisms, 1700-1950. Stanford: Stanford University Press.  
This book shows how feminist thought and politics were neglected as well as how unfairly women were treated compared to men. Offen also discussed how protection was provided to everyone regardless of estates but how these protections were not extended to women.

Palmer, R.R. 1976. "Turgot: Paragon of the Continental Enlightenment." *The Journal of Law & Economics* 19 (3): 607-619.  
The journal article was written in response to the 200<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the American revolution. The author considers the role of Turgot's economic and social writings in the context of Enlightenment literature in Europe. The author considers Turgot to be one of the only relevant French writers whose work was not outdated by the time of the revolutions.

Parker, David. 1996. *Class and State in Ancien Regime France: The Road to Modernity?* London: Routledge.  
This book demonstrates how class conflicts (estates-general) were a part of the cause of the revolution. He also noted that first estate included the smallest number of people, and they were most powerful after the king.

Shinde, Tarabair. 1997. "Why Blame Women." In *Women Imagine Change*, by Eugenia DeLamotte, Natania Meeker and Jean O'Barr, 483-492. New York: Routledge.  
This article discusses gender inequality. The author mentions how both men and women could commit the same crime, but society looks down and blames only the women.

Spielvogel, Jackson. 2015. *Western Civilization, Alternate Volume: Since 1300*. Stamford, CT: Cengage Learning.  
This textbook gives a clear explanation about the French revolution by discussing the three estates.

UCL Museums & Collections. n.d. "The Three Estates Information Sheet." University College London. Accessed November 3, 2016. <https://www.ucl.ac.uk/museums/learning-resources/secondary-schools/downloadable-lessons/three-estates-student-sheets.pdf>. (The resource cannot be found) UCL ERROR  
The information sheet was created by UCL to supplement its French Revolution exhibition and learning experiences. The sheet breaks down the Ancien Regime social system for museum visitors.

Waller, Sally. 2002. *France in Revolution, 1776-1830*. Oxford: Heinemann Educational Publishers.  
This book describes the factors that led to the revolution, including the unfair voting weight in the estates general meeting. The book notes that the other two estates could easily outvote the third estate, and this contributed to the revolution.

Weisband, Edward, and Courtney Thomas. 2015. *Political Culture and the Making of Modern Nation States*. New York: Routledge.  
This book explores the political transformation from the past to the future. The author gave a clear political culture from the past by describing how unfair the third estate was because

its members were never able to fulfill their interests, since the first and the second estates could outvote the third estate.

Winks, Robin, and Thomas Kaiser. 2004. Europe: From the Old Regime to the Age of Revolution. New York: Oxford University Press.

Robin's book provides an explanation of how the enlightenment affected the revolution. The author cites Voltaire and illustrates how openly he criticized the church to show enlightenment thought heavily impacted the revolution

# Women's Rights in China

Heejin Kim  
Branksome Hall Asia

---

Modern China's history of women's rights is both a story of revolutionary upheaval and progress on the one hand, and retrenchment and regression on the other. While traditional Chinese society was deeply patriarchal, the revolutions of the 20<sup>th</sup> century included a lively women's movement. Under Mao and the People's Republic of China, women experienced much progress toward equality, even as Mao's disastrous policies devastated the country. Since the Mao era, however, economic reforms and a booming economy have led to a resurgence of more conservative, traditional ideas about women and gender. Though contemporary China is more prosperous and open to the outside world than it ever was under Mao, the government is clamping down on women's rights activism. Despite governmental efforts at repression, however, a new and invigorated feminist movement is articulating fresh demands for equality (The Guardian, 2015).

Traditional Chinese society was deeply male-dominated. From about 500 BCE onwards, Chinese culture was heavily influenced by the teachings of philosopher Confucius (551-479 BCE), which emphasized proper order through observance of hierarchical relationships in society (Thomsen, 2007). Confucian ethics call for children to render obedience to their fathers, and for women to render obedience to their husbands. Confucianism teaches that women who stay silent and remain at home are virtuous. Some measure of the position of women in Chinese society can be given by the notorious practice of foot binding, mainly among the elite, a painful practice that left the young girls who endured it unable to walk properly. This practice began early in the period of the Sung (Song) Dynasty (960-1279 CE), and lasted into the 20<sup>th</sup> century (Thomsen, 2007; Fry, n.d.).

Chinese society underwent rapid, precipitous changes in the 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. China suffered from humiliating defeats at the hands of the British and later the Japanese, as well as a series of unequal treaties that led to a kind of economic colonization by the European powers (Brunero, 2006). As a result, many men and women began to reevaluate traditional beliefs, assumptions, and values, including ideas about gender roles and women's rights. Chinese women became politically active in the events leading up to the overthrow of the Qing Dynasty (1644-1912 CE), China's last, in 1912; indeed, many participated in the Wuchang Uprising of 1911, which led to the end of Imperial China and the establishment of the Republic of China under Dr. Sun Yat-sen (Thomsen, 2007; Yuezhi, 2006).

Chinese women formed political organizations to lobby for their rights during this period, particularly for voting rights (Yuezhi, 2006). Among the many organizations formed by Chinese women during this period were the Chinese Women's Franchise Association, the Chinese Women's

Cooperative Association, and the Chines Suffragette Society (Thomsen, 2007). In 1912, a large assembly of women from 18 different provinces held a rally before China's new national legislature in Nanking (Nanjing). Calling themselves the Women's Suffragette Alliance, they demanded the right to vote for all women of China, and resorted to militant and near-violent tactics. Their tactics, however, caused a backlash in support of traditional family values, and as a result no women were selected to serve in the new 1913 Permanent Assembly in Canton (Thomsen, 2007).

The women's movement was silenced for a time, as the new Kuomintang government aimed to crack down on militant dissent and establish a new order for the country. There was a fresh wave of activism and another crackdown in 1921, and China's National Congress wrote a new constitution that did not grant women the right to vote (Thomsen, 2007). However, the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) made gender equality one of its founding principles, leading to significant support among women. In 1923, the CCP and the Kuomintang entered into an alliance, one that incorporated the women's movement (Thomsen, 2007). The alliance did not last long, and Kuomintang leader Chiang Kai-shek (1887-1975 CE) cracked down on women whom he believed to be Communist sympathizers (Thomsen, 2007).

During the Mao Era, from 1949 to 1976, the government of China made considerable efforts to promote equal rights for women (Jacobs, 2015). Unlike the traditional image of a Chinese woman who was family oriented and selfless, the women of the Mao Era had more freedom—within the confines of the totalitarian party-state, of course. Women were able to occupy positions that had formerly been open only to men (Meili, 2015).

With the establishment of the People's Republic of China (PRC) in 1949, the newly triumphant Chinese Communist Party instituted the All-China Democratic Women's Federation, which recruited representatives from the women of every province in the country (Thomsen, 2007). By 1950, the new constitution and a raft of additional legislation had established, at least in theory, the equality of the genders in the eyes of the law. Before the PRC, women had been subordinate to men in such important matters as the ownership of property, inheritance, the use of land, and access to educational opportunities. Now they were to be equal, although the attainment and interpretation of equality was not entirely free from traditional Chinese influences (Thomsen, 2007).

The Mao Era (1949–1976) was marked by totalitarian repression and calamitous policies which caused tens of millions of deaths (Thomsen, 2007). Somewhat paradoxically, it was also marked by increased gender equality (Thomsen, 2007). Mao insisted that women “upheld half the sky” and were crucial to the Revolution (Tse Tung, n.d.). In fact, Mao considered overcoming male-female inequalities to be intrinsic to the Revolution.

When Mao was young, he revolted against the feudal marriage traditions in China. In 1919, he wrote an article about the suicide of a young woman called Miss Chao in which he said that Chinese women are fettered by three bonds: by Chinese society; by their husbands, and by their families. The women of China, he insisted, had to have freedom to choose their own mates and to craft their own destinies (Revolutionary Socialist Culture of Peace, n.d.). In 1927 Mao elaborated on this further, condemning China's feudal-patriarchal society and its outmoded and repressive treatment of women (Tse Tung, n.d.). In 1945 Mao demanded that change in China ensure equality between men and women (Tse Tung, n.d.), and in 1955 he went even further by insisting that a strong socialist society that was productive in its fullest sense could only be built on the backs of both men and women with both being paid an equal wage (Tse Tung, n.d.).

In 1953, China created a Five-Year Plan for the Development of National Economy. The plan aimed to create a more industrialized and urbanized country. As years passed a rapid growth and employers were demanding for more workers and to help demand women were allowed to work alongside men. By the third year of the plan in 1956, around 1,978,000 women were employed in factories, resulting six times more female employees than had been employed in 1949. During this time, more women also entered in the field of education and women made up a higher percentage of teachers in primary and middle school (The-Chuan, 2011)

Mao died in 1976. Despite the horrors he had unleashed, he had opened the door for Chinese women to achieve greater social and political equality with men. In the post-Mao Era Chinese women have been able to achieve some of the same things their sisters in high-income Western nations have. The United Nations reported that Chinese women made up 39% of the workforce, 39% of students in secondary education and over 20% of the parliament (Revolutionary Socialist Culture of Peace, n.d.). China had more women in Parliament than any of the ten richest countries excepting Germany (which had 32%) had in theirs (Revolutionary Socialist Culture of Peace, n.d.).

The Marriage Law of 1950 was the first key milestone (New Marriage Law, 1950). Women gained the rights to marry and divorce, choosing their partners freely for the first time. In the eyes of the law, they were equal to men. The law gave the citizens of the country the freedom to follow their hearts, but this produced some depressing consequences. The number of marital dispute cases and divorces rose, as did rates of murder and suicide (New Marriage Law, 1950). Still, it was a monumental step forward for women in China.

After this, further developments came rapidly. Women were also granted rights to land and property in 1950 (Meili, 2015). Three years later, they gained the right to vote, and even to stand for election. Impressively, more than 90% of women voted in the subsequent election December that year. Several years after in 1958, 7 million women were employed. It was a huge increase compared with 1949, when China had 1/10 of that number of women employed (Meili, 2015; The Guardian, 2015). By 1990, women aged between 20-59 in China reached an employment rate of 84.3%. This result narrowed down the difference in the employment rate between men and women to only 11.4% (Attané, 2012). The higher rate of employment helped to empower women and put them in better positions to enter the government.

Education is another area in which women have made considerable advances under the PRC. In 1949, Chinese women had an illiteracy rate of almost 90 percent. In little more than 50 years, this turned into a *literacy* rate of 91 percent (Thomsen, 2007). Progress was most notable in the cities, where women became increasingly active in higher education. Crucially, it became not only acceptable but *desirable* for women to enter higher education and then carve out their own independent careers. The fields they entered were often precisely the kinds of prestigious areas that had previously been dominated by men, such as medicine, law, the sciences, engineering, telecommunications, and professional sports (Thomsen, 2007). While it was true for some time that the number of women compared with men declined at each successively higher tier of education, women's participation has continued to grow, narrowing the gap between women's and men's participation. Women's contribution to learning not only increases their ability to get hired in the future but also improves the status of women in society. Instead of carrying out domestic jobs in household, the birthrate of women decreased, and they could care for themselves (Attané, 2012). I thought these sentences connect since if a lot of women get employed, they would work and would improve their social status. And

if they have a high status, they will earn more respect and time to focus on themselves as growing independent women, instead of just carrying out domestic jobs in households.

In rural areas women's progress has been hampered by their families' need for their labor in the fields. Many rural families keep their daughters in farm work because they do not wish to lose what income their daughters are able to bring in. Thomsen (2007) notes that this same pattern was much in evidence in the United States as well until the late 19<sup>th</sup> century.

China hosted the UN's Fourth World Conference on Women in 1995, Beijing. The official name of the conference was "The Fourth World Conference on Women: Action for Equality, Development and Peace". During this event the 189 governments and more than 5,000 representatives attended to discuss about the ways to achieve gender equality in 12 critical areas of concern. Few of them from the list were, Women and poverty, Education and training of women, Women and health, Violence against women and more. More than 30,000 members of the press and the public came for the purpose of encouraging women's right and gender equality. This event gave turning point and gave a movement to women's rights, showing the changes towards women throughout the years in China (The Guardian, 2015). In the same year, the EU held a debate on whether countries should co-sponsor a resolution critical of China at the UN Commission on Human Rights (CHR). The results were 20 in favor to 21 against and the resolution did not pass. In 1996, the UN held the vote a second time and the majority of the votes were in favor. In 1997, a future draft resolution was put at the CHR. (Baker, 2002)

Despite many improvements to women's status from the Mao Era on, some inequalities continue to be perpetuated through the law. There has even been regression in recent years, with new legislation jeopardizing some of the gains Chinese women have made. A case in point is the changes made to Chinese marriage law in 2011. One of the 19 items states: "Whoever paid the down payment is whoever the house should belong to following a divorce" (Fry, n.d.). Since men traditionally buy family homes in China, the new law means that in the event of a divorce many women will be threatened with homelessness (Fry, n.d.). Chinese women responded with fury to this obvious attempt to disadvantage female divorcees (Fry, n.d.). The divorce rate in China is constantly increasing, meaning laws like this will affect an increasing number of Chinese women in future (Fry, n.d.). However, even legislation does not prevent women from being discriminated against by their families. Fincher's (2016) research showed that parents were more likely to make financial sacrifices to help their son buy a home over their daughter, even often declining to help their daughter at all despite having the means to do so.

Chinese women have been traditionally disadvantaged in the allocation of land as well, which has generally been held by male-dominated families (Fry, n.d.). The Chinese government has attempted to ameliorate this to some degree to ensure all married women have access to land. The government has also provided homes to women who have moved to villages from more rural areas. Recent changes in land tenure policy provide for lands to be held by individual households on a thirty-year basis, designed to encourage investment. This change does stand to benefit married women, who will reap the benefits of their families' longer presence on the land (Thomsen, 2007).

Chinese women also face problems associated with discrimination in the workplace, where full equality remains a distant aspiration at best. Employers still engage in quite open sexual discrimination in China, with some positions advertised for men only (Thomsen, 2007). Sexual discrimination in the workplace is against Chinese law, but in practice enforcement is usually non-existent, and employers routinely flout the law (Makinen, 2014). It is difficult for women to find jobs, particu-

larly if they are married because employers often choose not to give them a position (The-Chuan, 2011). When women do work, they often labor for more than 12 hours a day and earn less than men. Working in employers' favor is the increased development of China's economy, which has created a reduced need for labor in proportion to economic growth. Women are disproportionately affected, both because of ongoing traditional sexism and because they are more likely to leave a job to assume housekeeping and child-rearing duties (Fry, n.d.). The factors underlying these discriminations in the workplace can be found in the traditional gender roles in China. Attané (2012) claims that since tradition in China relies on women doing the household job and men bringing home income, women's earning becomes secondary source like an 'adjustment variable.' Therefore, getting a job as a woman is more competitive because they have to compete men in the workforce as well as in their households.

Since 1995 the Chinese government has made efforts to encourage women to acquire vocational education and to enter technical fields (Thomsen, 2007). These efforts have borne some fruit. By 2001, women accounted for nearly one-third of all teaching positions in China's universities, from associate professors on up. They were also 37.4% of those employed in enterprises, 44.1% of those employed in institutions, 42.7% of those in service trades, 57.5% of those in public health, physical culture, and social welfare, and 24.8% of those in state service (Thomsen, 2007). On the other hand, employers have pointed to government-mandated benefits for pregnant women, nursing mothers and infants as disincentives for hiring women (Thomsen, 2007).

Still, there are signs that progress is afoot. In 2014 a young woman named Cao Ju succeeded in winning a discrimination lawsuit brought against Juren Academy, a private tutor company based in Beijing (Steinfeld, 2014). The company placed an ad for a male-only position, and turned her down simply for being female. Cao Ju took Juren to court and won a settlement of 30,000 RMB (US\$4,925) (Steinfeld, 2014).

Feminism is not a new concept in China. Jin Yi published the first Chinese feminist manifesto in Shanghai in 1903 (Karl, 2012). However, in contemporary China feminist activists are increasing in numbers rapidly. Women are engaging in protests and speaking for themselves in a new, more emboldened fashion. Characteristically, the Chinese government has responded with authoritarian crackdowns, often harassing and jailing activists, treating them as criminals (Yu, 2014). Even as support for the women's movement grows internationally, as the influence of Western feminism spreads and non-Western feminisms burgeons, the government of China has resisted the growing pressure for reform. Some are saying that the government is afraid that of these activists. The younger generations are trying to attain their freedom, and the larger their efforts become, the more trouble they pose for the reigning Communist Party. Since the Party elites view social disturbances as a threat to their control, they have consistently cracked down on activism (Fry, n.d.; Yu, 2014).

In contemporary China many women receive higher education, all the way up to the Ph.D. level. Recently a Ph.D. graduate from Tsinghua University stated that "Almost 26 percent of urban women in China received a college-level education or higher in 2010 – an increase of 13 percentage points compared with a decade ago" (Yu, 2014). Nevertheless, Chinese men are still viewing this situation in a negative way. Chinese call women with Ph.D.'s the third gender (eChinaCities.com, 2014). An online poll has asked participants 'Would you be willing to marry a beautiful female with a PhD?' surprisingly, out of 6,000 people 1,700 has answered 'no'. These findings reveal the ongoing influence of traditional mindsets about women and gender roles, such as the idea that women should remain in the home and do domestic work instead of studying and becoming edu-

cated. Despite this entrenched opposition, however, Chinese women are fighting to earn their PhDs (eChinaCities.com, 2014).

Chinese feminist activism has become quite lively in recent years, drawing much-needed international support in the face of the Chinese government's efforts at repression (Zheng, 2016). In March of 2015, for example, Chinese authorities in the cities of Beijing, Guangzhou and Hangzhou detained nine feminist activists who were involved in activities leading up to International Women's Day, particularly a campaign against sexual harassment on public transportation (Branigan, 2015; Wong, 2015). Four of the nine were soon released, but the other five remained in detention because they were known for high-profile activism. The authorities kept the five young women in custody under charges of planning to incite quarrels and create disturbances. The five young women soon became international media darlings, known as China's "Feminist Five" (Branigan, 2015).

The story of the Feminist Five highlights much of the current state of activism and women's rights in China today. The kinds of activities in which these young women had previously engaged included a variety of stunts designed to capture the public gaze and draw attention to women's issues. A case in point is an "Occupy the Men's Toilets" campaign, in which detained activist Li Tingting (also known as Li Maizi) took part (Branigan, 2015). The protest was designed to showcase the inadequacy of publicly available women's restrooms. Li also joined in a protest against domestic violence, marching in the streets clad in a wedding gown with blood smears (Branigan, 2015).

After detaining the five women for over a month, the Chinese authorities released them on bail in mid-April of 2015 (Wong, 2015). The terms of the release included police monitoring for a year, and the women were instructed not to travel without notifying the authorities. They could also be detained again at any time (Wong, 2015). The Feminist Five are free to fight another day, but they face a long, uphill battle against a powerful and often arbitrary government.

The story of women's rights in modern China is one of tremendous upheavals against deeply-entrenched attitudes, customs, and institutions, as well as the slow retrenchment of many of those same forces (Fincher, 2016). In many respects the experience of Chinese women speak to the overall trajectory of the nation in this regard: tremendous upheavals and a certain amount of progress in the context of a totalitarian, repressive regime, followed by more gradual progress and ongoing obstacles in a climate of greater economic and social freedom. The current wave of feminist activism has drawn repression from the authorities, who seek to minimize social disruptions of any kind in order to ensure their continuing hold on power. Chinese women successfully challenged long-standing traditions in the 20<sup>th</sup> century, but true equality remains elusive. In the current climate it seems likely that further political and social upheavals will be necessary before Chinese women can be truly described, and can describe themselves, as full and equal citizens.

## References

BBC. (2015, March 9). Concern for women's rights activists detained in China. *BBC News*. Retrieved from <http://www.bbc.com/news/world-asia-china-31792608>

Branigan, T. (2015, March 12). Five Chinese feminists held over International Women's Day plans. *The Guardian*. Retrieved from <http://www.theguardian.com/world/2015/mar/12/five-chinese-feminists-held-international-womens-day>

Browne, A. (2015, July 21). Xi turns back the clock on women's rights in China. *The Wall Street Journal*. Retrieved from <http://www.wsj.com/articles/xi-turns-back-the-clock-on-womens-rights-in-china-1437454619>

Brunero, D. (2006) *Britain's Imperial Cornerstone in China*. London: Routledge.

Buchanan, Kelly. "Women in History: Voting Rights." Library of Congress. N.p., 3 Mar. 2015. Web. 20 Oct. 2015. <<http://blogs.loc.gov/law/2015/03/women-in-history-voting-rights/>>

eChinaCities.com. (2014, January 14). One third of Chinese men won't marry a woman with a PhD, why not? *eChinaCities.com*. Retrieved from <http://www.echinacities.com/china-media/One-Third-Of-Chinese-Men-Wont-Marry-a-Woman-With-a-PhD-Why-Not>

Fincher, L. H. (2013). Women's rights at risk. *Dissent*. Retrieved from <https://www.dissentmagazine.org/article/womens-rights-at-risk>

Fincher, L.H. (2016). *Leftover Women: The Resurgence of Gender Inequality in China*. London: Zed Books.

Fry, L. (n.d.). Chinese women and economic human rights. *Human rights & human welfare* (pp. 41-56). Retrieved from <http://www.du.edu/korbel/hrhw/researchdigest/china/WomenChina.pdf>

The Guardian. (2015, April 13). Chinese police release feminist activists. *The Guardian*. Retrieved from <http://www.theguardian.com/world/2015/apr/13/chinese-police-free-three-of-five-feminist-activists>

Jacobs, A. (2015, April 5). Taking feminist battle to China's streets, and landing in jail. *The New York Times*. Retrieved from <http://www.nytimes.com/2015/04/06/world/asia/chinese-womens-rights-activists-fall-afoul-of-officials.html>

Karl, R. (2012). Feminism in modern China. *Journal of Modern Chinese History*, 6(2), 235-255.

Kuo, L. (2014, January 29). In China, highly educated women are mocked as a sexless "third gender". *Quartz*. Retrieved from <http://qz.com/312464/in-china-highly-educated-women-are-mocked-as-a-sexless-third-gender/>

Makinen, J. (2014, February 28). China's women begin to confront blatant workplace bias. *Los Angeles Times*. Retrieved from <http://articles.latimes.com/2014/feb/28/world/la-fg-china-women-work-20140228>

Meili, X. (2015, May 13). China's feminist awakening. *The New York Times*. Retrieved from <http://www.nytimes.com/2015/05/14/opinion/xiao-meili-chinas-feminist-awakening.html>

"New Marriage Law (1950)." New Marriage Law (1950). N.p., 7 Aug. 2013. Web. 20 Oct. 2015. <<http://chineseposters.net/themes/marriage-law.php>>.

Ping, Wang. "Women In Modern China." Macalester.edu. N.p., 28 Apr. 2006. Web. 20 Oct. 2015. <[http://www.macalester.edu/~ping/files/others/women\\_in\\_modern\\_china.pdf](http://www.macalester.edu/~ping/files/others/women_in_modern_china.pdf)>.

Revolutionary Socialist Culture of Peace (n.d.). Mao on women. *SFR.com*. Retrieved from <http://sfr-21.org/mao-women.html>

Shigong, L. (2011, September 1). Is the New Marriage Law Interpretation Right? -- Beijing Review. Retrieved November 13, 2015, from [http://www.bjreview.com.cn/forum/txt/2011-08/29/content\\_386612.htm](http://www.bjreview.com.cn/forum/txt/2011-08/29/content_386612.htm)

Steinfeld, J. (2014, March 8). Women still face great wall of discrimination in China. *CNN*. Retrieved from <http://www.cnn.com/2014/03/08/world/asia/china-gender-discrimination/>

Thomsen, N. (2007). *Women's rights*. New York: Infobase Publishing.

Tse Tung, Mao (n.d.). *Quotations from Mao Tse Tung*. Marxists.org. Retrieved from <https://www.marxists.org/reference/archive/mao/works/red-book/ch31.htm>

Wang, M. (2015, April 7). China's chilling message to women. *CNN*. Retrieved from <http://edition.cnn.com/2015/04/06/opinions/wang-china-women-detained/>

Wong, E. (2015, April 13). China releases 5 women's rights activists detained for weeks. *The New York Times*. Retrieved from [http://www.nytimes.com/2015/04/14/world/asia/china-releases-3-of-5-detained-womens-rights-activists.html?\\_r=0](http://www.nytimes.com/2015/04/14/world/asia/china-releases-3-of-5-detained-womens-rights-activists.html?_r=0)

Yuezhi, X. (2006). The Theory and practice of Women's Rights in Late-Qing Shanghai, 1843-1911. In K. Chow, T. Hon, H. Ip, & D Price (Eds.), *Beyond the May Fourth Paradigm* (pp. 71-94). Lanham, MD: Lexington Books.

Zeng, J. (2015, April 17). China's feminist five: 'This is the worst crackdown on lawyers, activists and scholars in decades'. *The Guardian*. Retrieved from <http://www.theguardian.com/life-and-style/2015/apr/17/chinas-feminist-five-this-is-the-worst-crackdown-on-lawyers-activists-and-scholars-in-decades>

Zheng, J. (2016). *New Feminism in China: Young Middle-Class Chinese Women in Shanghai*. Singapore: Springer.

Zhou, A., & Fang, P. (2014, October 18). The yellow pearls of China: Women with a PhD. *Caixin Online*. Retrieved from <http://english.caixin.com/2014-10-18/100740078.html>

# Industrialization and Human Rights

Jungwon Lee  
Emma Willard High School

---

Beginning in the late eighteenth century, Western Europe and America were taken hold by rapid changes in manufacturing processes that improved the quality and efficiency of production compared to the standard of the era. Improved tools and methods of harnessing energy such as steam power led to the invention of factories and ultimately spread throughout the world to change the life of almost every person, regardless of class. Now, we refer to this time as the Industrial Revolution (Bezanson 343).

The Industrial Revolution was the beginning of two centuries of incredible transformation. Since this time, humankind has enjoyed increased mobility via the steam engine, the automobile, and the airplane; increased access to cheap goods due to automated industrial manufacturing and assembly lines; decreased hard labor due to industrialized farming and construction machinery (Holmes 692); increased education due to modern computer networks that allow the rapid spread of information; and many, many other benefits. Life expectancy, education, and quality of life have all improved as a result of industrialization... or have they (Pickstone 124)?

It is widely known that the Industrial Revolution brought with it a great deal of suffering—concern for human welfare took quite a long time to catch up with the capital-centric fostering of human ingenuity. In the developed world, the human rights violations consistent with the Industrial Revolution have long since faded into antiquity and people have grown to expect a certain level of comfort, stability, and technology in their lives. People expect to be treated with respect and dignity and have their basic needs met including nutrition, employment, and medical services. However, in newly industrialized nations, the contemporary standard for human rights is not being met, and in fact, people are consistently and egregiously being exploited on the most basic levels.

Because while the aforementioned period of time, roughly 1750-1850, is referred to as *the* Industrial Revolution, this does not preclude other industrial revolutions of sorts from occurring. In fact, industrial revolutions are ongoing throughout the world, even today. And much like during *the* Industrial Revolution of history textbooks, concern for human welfare in newly industrialized nations has yet to catch up to the 21<sup>st</sup> century.

In this essay, I will first discuss several examples of how industrialization in developing countries is negatively affecting human rights. Then, I will discuss some of the work that NGOs are doing in order to rectify these wrongdoings. And finally, I will offer some suggestions for how the average person can contribute toward improved welfare of those suffering from the negative aspects of industrialization.

## I. Industrial Revolutions

In order to understand how industrialization affects labor and how labor, in turn, affects human welfare, it is important to lay the foundation for that which constitutes an industrial revolution. It is important because as dwellers of the developed world, it is easy to forget the conditions that allow for citizens to forget their humanity where labor is concerned.

According to the renowned economic historian D.C. Coleman, an industrial revolution may take place in three primary stages. The first stage is “the application to a particular industry”. In much the way that the printing press revolutionized literacy for the world’s citizens, or the way that Henry Ford’s assembly line revolutionized automated production, a single invention, method, or technique may pave the way for a revolution wherein an entire system of doing things is overhauled. When “industrial revolution” comes to mind, this is generally the first accompanying thought—*inventions*.

Beyond the first stage, *inventions*, is the second stage, which revolves around the economy in a developing society. In Coleman’s words, “One stage more extensive than this use is the application of the term to particular branches of the economic activities of a society- industrial, commercial, agrarian and so forth” (Coleman 2). When production grows, economy too tends to grow correspondingly in whatever given sector. This contributes to the third stage.

The third stage of an industrial revolution is as it pertains to a national economy. “Here the emphasis is not simply on the effect felt by an industry or by industry as a whole, but upon the consequences to the economy of a variety of changes in the sense that it moves rapidly into some new shape, normally that of the modern industrialized society” (Coleman 2).

Although the technologies that initiated the Industrial Revolution of the eighteenth and nineteenth century have been widely available for the past hundred years and more, the second and third stages had yet to take place in vast regions of the world. However, now that the countries of the developing world are seizing these technologies and experiencing their profound affect on economies of small and large scale, we can say with certainty that these countries are in a state of industrial revolution. And much like in *the* Industrial Revolution, these revolutions come with a corresponding struggle to match a growing economy with a growing quality of life for all (Parker 89).

## II. Industrialization and human rights

In the first several decades of automated manufacturing, human rights violations were rampant. Ubiquitous are the black and white images of a barefoot, short-haired children operating factory equipment much too large and much too dangerous. “For the great majority of the laboring class the results of the policy (of *laissez faire*) were inadequate wages, long hours of work under sordid conditions, and the large-scale employment of women and children for tasks which destroy body and soul. Reports from investigating committees on coal mines found male and female children ten or even five years of age harnessed to heavy coal-sledges which they dragged crawling on their hands and knees . . .” (North 3).

Such injustices as these led to the forming of labor laws such as the Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938, which clearly defines minimums of compensation, maximums for working hours, limits on workers’ age, expectations of compensation for overtime, etc. Violations of workers’ rights in places such as America and most places in Europe, for example, are taken extremely seriously and have led

to countless lawsuits. In nations currently experiencing industrial revolution, however, there is substantially less advocacy for the rights of workers and in fact, many of the same injustices from more than a century past are still practiced today with alarming prevalence, lending support to the notion that human rights violations follow industrial revolution, even when we as a society know better.

First, consider the employment of children in jobs requiring hard labor and manufacturing. In South Asia, “the percentage of child workers in a country … ranges from seven percent in Bangladesh to 31 percent in Nepal. Nepal’s high incidence of child labor appears to be linked to the decade-long civil war that hit the country in the mid 1990s. The war resulted in economic dislocation, leading to the loss of jobs among many in the adult workforce. This in turn led to poverty, which resulted in many children having to take on low-paid jobs, often in what is referred to as ‘the worst forms of child labor’” (Sharma 32). In Latin America and the Caribbean, “there are still 5.7 million working girls and boys who are under the minimum age for employment or are engaged in work that must be abolished according to ILO Worst Forms of Child Labour Convention No. 182” (ILO).

In Bolivia, it is estimated that one in three children, 850,000 in total, are forced to work for the primary purpose of supporting their families in dangerous industries such as mining and manufacturing. The worst part about this arrangement is that it isn’t even illegal. Bolivia allows boys and girls to begin legally working at age ten, placing its system in direct violation of the ILO standard of 14 years of age for employment in developing countries. This creates a sad catch-22 wherein children who work are unable to receive a full education, but receiving an education is the fastest and most effective way to lift oneself from poverty, and thus the cycle of destitution is proliferated. Additionally, Bolivia’s economy has been booming, according to the World Bank, and the country’s GDP has more than doubled since 2006. This economic boom as a result of increased mining and manufacturing doubtless qualifies Bolivia’s condition as that of one undergoing industrial revolution. Meanwhile, the number of child laborers continues to grow.

By international standards, child labor is a terrible crime that must be stopped. However, in the developing world, there are circumstances that seem to override the moral arguments against child labor. Circumstances may include a small adult work force and lack of laborers, as in Nepal, or economic hardship that requires every member of the family to contribute income. These countries, where child labor is still common, are by all accounts ‘industrialized’. While the quality of life is certainly low and the labor is difficult, the industry in these countries has changed to require production and manufacturing as a primary source of income due to their export economies.

Child labor is not the only example of poor human rights in industrializing countries. Consider the Gulf States, such as Qatar and Saudi Arabia, where immigrant workers are treated as slaves. In Qatar, where the 2022 FIFA World Cup will be hosted, there have been regular reports of workers being demanded to labor under extreme conditions, according to Human Rights Watch, an NGO dedicated to investigating and reporting human rights violations around the globe. According to Amnesty International, such extreme conditions include unsafe heat and exposure, unsafe equipment and inadequate training, working hours exceeding reasonable limits, squalid living conditions, lack of agreed upon compensation, and even the seizing of passports and visas, which prohibit the laborers from leaving.

This conflict is a direct result of industrialization in two ways. First, the construction of such facilities and the hosting of such events could only be accomplished using contemporary industrialized equipment and means. This is obvious. But the second result is that the hosting of an event such as the World Cup in such an inhospitable environment is arguably a means of proving one’s indus-

trialized status. Having large modern complexes and amenities is no doubt the result of successful industrialization, just as a large wardrobe full of nice clothes is proof of one's affluence. However, industrialization may not be called successful in the face of such incriminating evidence of human rights violations.

Then, there is the issue of sweatshops, which resemble the industrial factories of centuries past with their low wages, outrageous hours, squalid conditions, and manual labor. In 2014, *The Atlantic* published a story entitled "The Real Christmas Village Is in China" in which they expose the horrors of a city called Yiwu, 150 miles outside of Shanghai, where the majority—approximately 60 per cent – of the world's Christmas decorations are manufactured. According to *The Atlantic*, making the world's Christmas decor is a messy, labor-intensive affair that relies more on human beings than automation. "From a health and safety perspective the exposure to harmful chemicals and solvents is disturbing... (with) manufacturing techniques with machines that could easily be criticized from a Western vantage point." This begs the question of why standards of labor ought to be divided into what is acceptable for western society versus eastern society. Should not that which is unacceptable to the west be unacceptable globally?

While the quest for technology and industry marches on, workers in industrializing nations are being left in the dust, mirroring the effect of the Industrial Revolution on Western Europe and America. However, in light of modern expectations, it is the task of the public, the governments, and the international community to demand that human rights are not sacrificed in the pursuit of industrialization.

### III. The International Labour Organization

After World War I wreaked havoc on the world, international citizens far and wide longed for peace and justice (Davis 598). When the League of Nations was formed in 1920, a covenant was drafted—a charter denoting international standards for issues such as handling conflict, labor, and many other issues. Article 23 of the League of Nations covenant states that "Members of the League will endeavor to secure and maintain fair and humane conditions of labour for men, women, and children, both in their own countries and in all countries to which their commercial and industrial relations extend, and for that purpose will establish and maintain the necessary international organizations."

The International Labour Organization was originally formed as an agency of the League of Nations and was intended to, essentially, advocate article 23 as listed above. When the League of Nations disbanded and became defunct during the Second World War, it was several years before the United Nations was formed, and the International Labour Organization became an agency of the United Nations. The goal of the ILO was essentially twofold: to utilize legal mechanisms to promote fair treatment for workers and to monitor international procedures to ensure that fair systems were being practiced. The ILO's has a long history of campaigns and initiatives to improve welfare for laborers internationally based on the premise that "universal, lasting peace can be established only if it is based upon decent treatment of working people" (ILO).

The ILO works hard to mobilize NGOs on the local level to bring together governments, employers, and workers in the 187 member states of the United Nations in order to build the global standard for labor and human rights. The ILO works to finance campaigns, push legislation, and

supervise standards of labor around the world. It partners with organizations at the local level to improve the standards for laborers negatively affected by industrialization at the hand of employers or governments (ILO). The ILO is currently involved in several initiatives at the local level in India, Honduras, and several other places, but it is also working at the global level in order to secure a livable wage for employees in the industrial sector in developing countries.

The Industrial Revolution of the 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> century paved the way for what is now deemed an acceptable level of human welfare. This fact is recognized throughout the world, as evidenced by the formation of the ILO, and yet it is outright ignored in many nations who are only now undergoing their own industrial revolutions. The ILO sets the standard for livable conditions for laborers, but it is up to the governments to adhere to the international guidelines. When governments fail to protect their laborers in favor of protecting those who turn a profit, it is the role of the NGO to put pressure on the governments to make the necessary changes.

#### IV. Non-government organizations (NGOs) and the fight for human rights

NGOs are a critical player in the fight for global human rights. A single country's government does not have the right or the authority to impose their expectations on other countries, and thus their hands are tied. This was one reason for the foundation of the United Nations, where countries work together to impose a global standard on the world at large. However, the United Nations have limited resources and power to affect global change and most of that power is limited to policy (Hovell 2). Hence, NGOs are the major players in researching in combatting human rights violations in industrializing nations. In fact, there are currently NGOs "developing tool kits to measure corporate compliance with human rights standards" (Merry 583). This, along with many other NGO initiatives, is paramount to improving quality of life for laborers internationally. Below are a few examples of NGOs and the work they are doing to improve life for exploited citizens throughout the world.

Amnesty International is a collection of over 7 million employees, campaigners, donors, and researchers who are dedicated to researching and combatting human rights' violations and bringing attention to problems around the world. In April of 2016, "Union leaders and factory workers Myo Min Min and Naing Htay Lwin, and labor activists Naing Zaw Kyi Win and Thu Zaw Kyi Win were released from Insein prison in Yangon, Myanmar's largest city, on 17 April. They were released as part of a Presidential pardon which saw the release of 83 prisoners, including prisoners of conscience Amnesty International has campaigned for" (Amnesty International). Activists for labor laws are frequently imprisoned in the industrializing world. Amnesty International works to free these laborers, bring attention to their causes, and raise the global standard for treatment of workers internationally.

The Child Labor Coalition is an American NGO founded in 1989. The Child Labor Coalition works to "testify before state and federal legislatures and agencies on child labor, present comments in response to regulatory initiatives, host conferences, forums and briefings, create and distribute educational and public awareness materials, initiate research, and conduct campaigns and media events" (Child Labor Coalition). Internationally, The Child Labor Coalition conducts research to present to the international community in order to push legislation that mitigates the use of children in industrialized labor.

The Fair Labor Association was formed as a result of a task force founded by former US president Bill Clinton as a coalition of universities, businesses, and civil society-organizations who combine efforts “to promote and protect workers’ rights and to improve working conditions globally through adherence to international standards” (FLA). The FLA and its members strive to seek out labor injustices throughout the world, especially as they pertain to sweat shops. One way that FLA fights for laborers is by inspecting factories where there are reports of unfair treatment of employees. For example, in 2009, reports from a Mexican DVD and CD factory indicated that employees were not wearing proper vision and hearing protection, and that the company was regularly deducting more than 30 percent of employees paychecks for “savings plans”. FLA stepped in to modify the factory’s accounting software to prevent excessive deductions and implemented a once a year training course where all managers and employees learn about proper safety procedures. With the number of US or other developed nation-owned factories in industrializing countries, it is critical to hold these manufacturers to the global standard of employee welfare. FLA recognizes this necessity and acts to uphold the corresponding principles.

NGOs do incredibly valuable work every day on behalf of those who lack the means to advocate for themselves. While those above only represent a few examples, many, many more exist and there are steps that each of us can take in order to support their efforts.

## V. Practical ways to support NGO efforts

As citizens of the industrialized world, we have a moral responsibility to help our neighbors in the industrializing world and there are many ways that we can individually or collectively affect positive change.

First, and most obviously, we can use our money to support the work that NGOs do. NGOs are financed by the private sector, which consists of individual citizens with the heart and conscience to help. If you have spare money, you can contribute to NGOs in general or request that your donation be used to finance a particular campaign. Your donations may be eligible for tax write-offs and you know that they will be put to good use in order to finance legal campaigns, pay volunteer expenses, and produce necessary materials.

Next, you can use your voice to volunteer in person via NGO outlets or to sign and distribute petitions. Petitions are a valuable tool in putting pressure on governments to take action and you should never underestimate the power of your voice when combined with so many others.

Then, you can research ways to be a responsible consumer. Much of the industrializing world’s labor problems are a direct result of production or manufacturing, the majority of which is actually exported to some of the most affluent nations in the world. Before you purchase something, make sure you know where the product was made and see if that country or that brand has a history of human rights violations. Remember, you vote with your dollar!

And finally, you can address this issue by electing leaders and government officials whose platforms support safe and responsible labor and production and who will work to support the organizations that are fighting this evil.

In conclusion, most everyone can agree that the industrialization of the world has brought forth innumerable benefits and advancements, most of which have greatly bettered the lives of peo-

ple. However, we cannot allow history to repeat itself. Atrocities like those that accompanied Industrial Revolution a century and more ago are still being committed today. As responsible citizens and consumers, we much fight for the human rights of laborers around the world who are less fortunate than we.

## References

Amnesty International. *Myanmar Labor Rights Activists Released*. Web. [www.amnesty.org](http://www.amnesty.org) . 5 July 2016.

Bezanson, Anna. "The Early Use of the Term Industrial Revolution." *The Quarterly Journal of Economics*36.2 (1922): 343-49. Web.

Child Labor Coalition. *Our Missions and Objectives*. Web. [www.stopchildlabor.org](http://www.stopchildlabor.org) . 26 June 2016.

Coleman, D. C. "Industrial Growth and Industrial Revolutions." *Economica* ns 23.89 (1956): 1-22. Web.

Davis, W. M. "A League of Nations." *Science* 48.1250 (1918): 598-99. Web.

Fair Labor Organization. *Ensuring fair compensation and worker safety in Mexico*. 11 September 2010. Web. <http://www.fairlabor.org/impact/case-studies/study/ensuring-fair-compensation-and-worker-safety-mexico>. 15 August 2016.

Holmes, Roy Hinman. "Influences of the Industrial and Social Revolution Upon the Agricultural Industry of America." *American Journal of Sociology* 24.6 (1919): 692-703. Web.

Hovell, Devika. "Due Process in the United Nations." *The American Journal of International Law* 110.1 (2016): 1-48. Web.

Human Rights Watch. *Qatar*. Web. [www.hrw.org](http://www.hrw.org) . 25 May 2016.

International Labor Organization. "Child Labor in Latin America and the Caribbean". Web. [www.ilo.org](http://www.ilo.org). 22 July 2016.

League of Nations, *Covenant of the League of Nations*, 28 April 1919. Web. <http://www.refworld.org/docid/3dd8b9854.html>. 8 August 2016.

Merry, Sally Engle. "Measuring the World: Indicators, Human Rights, and Global Governance." *Current Anthropology* 52.S3 (2011): S83-95. Web.

North, Douglass. *Structure and Change in Economic History*. New York: Norton, 1981. The Norton Anthology of English Literature. Vol. 2 (London: Norton and Co., 1979).

Otis, John. "In Bolivia, A Child's Place Is In The Market And The Mines". *NPR*. 2014. Web.

Parker, Cornelia S. "The Human Element in the Machine Process." *The Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Science* 90 (1920): 88-93. Web.

Pickstone, John V. "Sketching Together the Modern Histories of Science, Technology, and Medicine." *Isis*102.1 (2011): 123-33. Web.

The Fair Labor Standards Act of 1938, as amended 29 U.S.C. 201, et seq.

The World Bank. *Bolivia*. Web. <http://data.worldbank.org/country/bolivia>. 8 August 2016.

Timmons, Heather. "The Real Christmas Village Is in China". *The Atlantic*. 25 December 2014. Web. 31 July 2016.

Sharma, Kishor. "Labor Standards and WTO Rules: Survey of the Issues with Reference to Child Labor in South Asia." *Journal of Economic Issues* 43.1 (2009): 29-41. Web.

# Taking a Stand: Angela Merkel and the Syrian Immigrant Crisis

Jinkyung Kim  
Korea International School Jeju

---

In the age of the Internet, news is spread so widely and so rapidly that major events often pass without being recognized for their potential historical significance. It is not until months or years later, after all events unfold, that the value in a single act may be recognized for what its worth and be given just attention. Every day, people are becoming desensitized to the atrocities of the world and by shifting their attention elsewhere or turning off the televisions but today, it is practically impossible to ignore what is happening in Syria. And while it may be easy for individuals living in 2017 to disregard on a daily basis, history will remember the Syrian refugee crisis as one of the most egregious threats to human rights this century. We must turn our attention to history as it is presently unfolding and recognize those who are actively taking a stand to alter its course for the better.

## I. Introduction

In early 2011, world news outlets were inundated with stories of what would later be called the ‘Arab Spring’ – a series of anti-government protests that swept through the Middle East as citizens attempted to violently reclaim the freedoms that had been restricted by despotic governments<sup>84</sup>. Footage of large street demonstrations, protests, and civil uprising filled television screens throughout the world while chaos reigned in Tunisia, Yemen, Libya, Egypt, Bahrain, and other cities throughout the Middle East<sup>85</sup>. Somewhere amidst the confusion, viewers heard a whisper of unrest in Syria<sup>86</sup>.

As balance was slowly restored to the Middle East, these whispers from Syria became louder and more frequent<sup>87</sup>. Unlike in the neighboring countries, things did not seem to be settling down

---

84 “The Arab Spring: Five Years On” *Amnesty International*. 2016. Web. Accessed 10 January 2017. <https://www.amnesty.org/en/latest/campaigns/2016/01/arab-spring-five-years-on/>

85 “Arab Spring – Pro-democracy Protests,” Encyclopedia Britannica, Last updated 14 January 2015, <https://global.britannica.com/event/Arab-Spring>

86 Saad, Kareem. “A Faceless Teenage Refugee Who Helped Ignite Syria’s War.” 13 February 2013. *Nytimes.com*. Web. Accessed 14 January 2017.

87 Sinjab, Linda. “Middle East Unrest: Silence Broken In Syria - BBC News”. 2017. *BBC News*. 19 March 2011. Web. 7 February 2017. <http://www.bbc.com/news/world-middle-east-12794882>.

in Syria as President Bashar al-Assad responded to these protests with increasing degrees of cruelty and rebel groups began to form. Most people throughout the world continued to live their lives while the television chattered away in the background, reminding everyone, “unrest... violence... casualties... war...”

Syrian refugees began to trickle over the borders into the neighboring countries, particularly Greece, Turkey, Lebanon, and Jordan<sup>88</sup>. Together, citizens of the world sighed in relief that it was not their conflict, not their responsibility, and went about their business. But the trickle turned into a stream, the stream into a deluge and before long, the floodgates had opened. By 2015, more than 3 million Syrian refugees had poured out of the country in desperate need of medical supplies, food, clean water, shelter, and any measure of compassion and aid<sup>89</sup>. This would later be referred to as “the most daunting humanitarian crisis of our time.”<sup>90</sup>

At first, the public was sympathetic. Refugee camps were established<sup>91</sup>, registration systems formed<sup>92</sup>, donations given and accepted<sup>93</sup>; but behind these shows of generosity, anticipation of impermanence filled government halls around Europe. Faced with this increasingly prominent reality, European leaders began to equivocate. Some agreed to small measures of monetary aid, others agreed to take a few refugees—but meanwhile, the refugee camps were overrun, crime soared, and jobs were too few to go around<sup>94</sup>.

While world leaders threw up their hands, denied responsibility, imposed restrictions, or ignored the cries for help<sup>95</sup>, one world leader did not. German Chancellor Angela Merkel took a stand for these most unfortunate souls when she declared, “the fundamental right to asylum for the politically persecuted knows no upper limit; that also goes for refugees who come to us from the hell of a civil war.”<sup>96</sup> And just like that, Germany opened its doors to all Syrian refugees who seek asylum. This came at great personal risk to Merkel’s career as well as Germany’s economic and social wellbeing. Merkel has been the subject of massive criticism from her constituents, the public,

---

88 “Syria Refugee Crisis: Facts You Need To Know”. *World Vision*. Accessed February 7 2017. <https://www.worldvision.org/refugees-news-stories/syria-refugee-crisis-war-facts>.

89 “Syria Regional Refugee Response,” *United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees*, last modified 16 August 2016, <http://data.unhcr.org/syrianrefugees/regional.php>

90 Ferris and Kemal, “The Context, Causes, and Consequences of Syrian Displacement.” In *The Consequences of Chaos: Syria’s Humanitarian Crisis and the Failure to Protect*, 1-32. (Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution Press, 2016). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/10.7864/j.ctt1c2cqws.6>.

91 Baijekal, N. “Inside Syrian Refugee Camps Where Childhood Does Not Exist.” *Time Magazine*. 8 August 2015.

92 “Registration” United Nations High Commission of Refugees. UNHCR.org. Web. 7 February 2017. <http://www.unhcr.org/registration.html>

93 Evans, M. “10 Ways You Can Help the People of Aleppo.” *Harper’s Bazaar*. 15 December 2015. Web. 7 February 2017.

94 Ibid. Baijekal.

95 Malsin, J. “Why Some Arabs States Refuse to Accept Syrian Refugees” *Time Magazine*. 9 September 2015.

96 Alexe, D. “Angela Merkel: no limit to refugee numbers.” *World Affairs Organization*. 11 September 2015. Web. 10 January 2017. <http://www.worldaffairsjournal.org/content/german-chancellor-merkel-no-legal-limit-refugee-numbers>

her cabinet, and indeed, the rest of Europe<sup>97</sup>. But in spite of this adversity, Merkel stands firm on her ground, unwavering in her resolve.

While the history on this crisis has yet to be completely written, tomorrow's children will read about Chancellor Angela Merkel and remember her historic contribution as one of bravery, compassion, and most certainly, one of taking a stand for the freedom and welfare of all.

## II. The Arab Spring

Mohamed Bouazizi was twenty six years old when he set himself on fire, killing himself on the steps of a municipal building<sup>98</sup>. For sixteen years, he had worked as a street vendor in Ben Sidi Bouzid, Tunisia—the sole provider for his entire family since the age of ten. Throughout his career, Bouazizi was routinely abused and harassed by local law enforcement, which confiscated or damaged his goods and attempted to extort him<sup>99</sup>, sometimes successfully. One fateful day, Bouazizi was punished once more for ostensibly selling his wares without the proper permit, but this time he lacked the funds to bribe the police. In retribution, the police fined him 400 dinars (approximately USD280), destroyed the produce in his wheelbarrow, and stole his measuring scales<sup>100</sup>. He was forced to the ground for refusing to hand the scales over, as well as beaten in the streets. In his anger and resentment, Bouazizi went to the local municipality building, where he attempted to regain his scales but was refused a meeting with a local official. Bouazizi was now deeply in debt, unable to sell his damaged wares that were purchased on credit, and purportedly without options. He acquired a can of gasoline and returned to the government building. In the middle of the road, he yelled, “how do you expect me to make a living?”, doused himself in gasoline, and lit himself aflame<sup>101</sup>. This action of reckoning against the corrupt elite inspired others in and around Tunisia to take up arms against their oppressors and so began a revolution called “The Arab spring.”<sup>102</sup>

Soon after, people from Tunisia to Yemen were united in a desire for greater freedom. However in Egypt, new conflicts emerged as the police and the army in support of President Mubarak staged a coup against the Muslim Brotherhood on the basis of whether to adhere to secularism or a more fundamental implementation of Islam<sup>103</sup>. In Syria and Iraq, this has led to the rise of Islamic State, the most aggressive movement calling for an Islamic regime to be put into place and the reinstatement of Sharia law. ISIS members have planned and carried out brutal terrorist attacks in countries they accuse of trying to “westernize” Muslims in the face of their Islamic traditions<sup>104</sup>.

97 “Merkel’s Grip on Refugee Crisis May Be Slipping.” *The Speigel*. 6 October 2015. Web. 10 January 2017. <http://www.spiegel.de/international/germany/criticism-mounts-of-handling-of-refugee-crisis-by-merkel-a-1056315.html>

98 Abouzeid, R. “Bouazizi: The Man Who Set Himself and Tunisia on Fire.” *Time Magazine*. 21 January 2011.

99 Hassad, A. “A Fruit Vendor Whose Death Led to a Revolution.” *The New York Times*. 17 December 2014.

100 Ibid. Hassad.

101 Ibid. Abouzeid.

102 Ryan, Yasmine. “The Tragic Life of a Street Vendor.” Al Jazeera English. Aljazeera, 21 Jan. 2011. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

103 Simpson, John. “Who Are the Winners and Losers from the Arab Spring?” *BBC News*. BBC, 12 Nov. 2014. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

104 Oprea, M. G. “Tunisians, Who Started The Arab Spring, Are At It Again.” *The Federalist*. The Federalist, 29 Jan. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

### III. Rebellion in Syria

When Arab Spring protests broke out in the capital city of Damascus<sup>105</sup>, Syrian President Bashar al-Assad responded quickly and violently to squash the uprising. He began to detain journalists, students, and human rights activists, which created a great deal of national dissent<sup>106</sup>. In short order, a civil war was launched between those who supported the growingly oppressive Assad regime and those who sided with the Arab Spring activists and demanded democratic reform. As people found more flaws in Assad's authoritarian rule, not only the rebels within Syria but also America and European countries have demanded an end to his regime for the sake of political freedom or democratic principles. Adding to the struggle, fighting around Aleppo City has intensified since early 2016<sup>107</sup>. After seeing so many loved ones die, hundreds of thousands of Syrians have fled their country in a desperate need of humanitarian assistance, which all leads to the Syrian refugee crisis.<sup>108</sup>

Over four years have passed since the beginning of the crisis. According to the U.N., about 11 million Syrians have been displaced from their homes, including 4.8 million who have been forced to seek safety in neighboring countries. Those countries in the Middle East, including Lebanon, Jordan and Turkey have all been welcoming to Syrian refugees but have trapped Syrians in their own internal conflict, like the dangerous security situation in Iraq. Also, their refugee camps do not necessarily provide Syrians with opportunities for citizenship or the job market. Thus, many Syrians choose to flee across the Mediterranean to Europe.<sup>109</sup>

Of course, the risks of such a journey are extremely high. In order to reach Europe, the refugees have to stop by several different countries, including Turkey and Greece. The trip takes from one to three months and the refugees surely need help from smuggler networks along the way. As most refugees do not carry any registration, they may fall victim to one of those networks or even human trafficking, especially if they are young. Even after they successfully arrive in Europe, they may be detained by border officers. Then, they are likely to be looked down as second-class citizens in host communities.<sup>110</sup>

EU leaders have found this circumstance pitiful but threatening to their own countries. Syria is in the midst of a war but Afghanistan, Iraq, Nigeria and Eritrea also suffer from internal conflicts and repression. None of them are stable as they once were, which contributes to a steady increase in refugee flows from all directions. With concerns over national security, the EU governments repeatedly sought to shift responsibility onto countries outside the EU, including through a problematic migration deal in November with Turkey, the main transit country into the EU for asylum seekers

---

105 BBC News. "Amateur Footage of anti-government protests in Damascus." Filmed [March 2011]. BBC Video, 00:00:36. <http://www.bbc.com/news/world-middle-east-12749674>.

106 Humud, C., Blanchard, C., and Nikitin, M. "Armed Conflict in Syria: Overview and US Response." *Congressional Research Service*, 6 January 2017. Web. 30 January 2017.

107 "Syria Conflict: Airstrikes Leave Aleppo Without Water." *BBC World News*. 24 September 2016. Web. 10 January 2017. <http://www.bbc.com/news/world-middle-east-37460849>

108 Beirut, and Cairo. "Tough, but Bowing." *The Economist*. The Economist Newspaper, 18 Oct. 2014. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

109 "Quick Facts: What You Need to Know about the Syria Crisis." *Mercy Corps*. Mercy Corps, 19 Dec. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

110 Montgomery Fundraising, Kelly. "Refugee Crisis: What's Happening on the Ground in Greece." *Mercy Corps*. Mercy Corps, 11 Dec. 2015. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

and migrants, which already hosts more than 2 million Syrians.<sup>111</sup> The previous EU-Turkey deal noted that for every Syrian migrant sent back to Turkey, one Syrian already in Turkey must be resettled in the EU. However, there were still many doubts about the implementation of the agreement, including the logistics of how the migrants would be sent back.<sup>112</sup>

#### IV. Germany's response to the crisis

In contrast to the EU, Germany suggested a wide range of assistance for the Syrian people. In August 2015, Angela Merkel pledged an open-door policy to receive Syrian refugees<sup>113</sup>. The chancellor remarked: "If Europe fails on the question of refugees, then it won't be the Europe we wished for."<sup>114</sup> She also revealed a strong belief in her people, saying "[if] we now have to start apologizing for showing a friendly face in response to emergency situations, then that's not my country." When she was asked how Europe could make space for thousands of refugees and migrants, she responded with her most famous but simple quote: "We will cope."<sup>115</sup> Since then, Germany has not only received foreign refugees, but also worked with non-governmental organizations (NGOs) and the United Nations to mitigate the suffering of the Syrian people<sup>116</sup>.

Germany has provided three million euros for measures—in the city of Aleppo alone—to be used in part to rebuild the public water supply system. In the area surrounding Aleppo, humanitarian aid projects are supported in amounts equal to more than 16.6 million euros. Also, Germany is supporting mobile hospitals and blood banks in Aleppo province through the Malteser (1.48 million euros provided in 2016). At the Supporting Syria and the Region conference held in London in February 2016, Chancellor Angela Merkel pledged aid totaling 1.2 billion euros for 2016<sup>117</sup>. This aid has helped in particular boost the food rations provided by the World Food Programme to 100 percent, and has made it possible to maintain this level all year<sup>118</sup>. Ten months later, Federal Foreign Minister Frank-Walter Steinmeier pledged an additional sum of 50 million euros in humanitarian aid. The funding is to be used, for instance, to care for the civilians who have fled their homes in and around Aleppo. Germany is also providing emergency funding of 5 million euros for the UN Humanitarian Pooled Fund in Gaziantep. This fund finances cross-border measures from Turkey to northern Syria.<sup>119</sup>

111 "European Union: Refugee Response Falls Short." *Human Rights Watch*. Human Rights Watch, 05 Feb. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

112 "Migrant Crisis: EU-Turkey Deal Comes into Effect." *BBC News*. BBC, 20 Mar. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

113 "Merkel's Refugee Policy Divides Europe". *Spiegel Online*. 21 September 2015. Web. 10 January 2017. <http://www.spiegel.de/international/germany/refugee-policy-of-chancellor-merkel-divides-europe-a-1053603.html>

114 "Merkel Warns That Refugee Crisis Tests Europe's Core Ideals." *Deutsche Welle News*. 31 August 2015. Web. 10 January 2017. <http://www.dw.com/en/merkel-warns-that-refugee-crisis-tests-europes-core-ideals/a-18684091>

115 Nienaber, M. "Merkel says Germany can cope with refugees without raising taxes." *Reuters News*. 5 September 2015. Web 14 January 2017. <http://www.reuters.com/article/us-europe-migrants-germany-merkel-idUSKCN0R50L020150905>

116 "Navigation and Service." *A Wide Range of Assistance for the Syrian People*. Federal Government | Bundesregierung, 15 Dec. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

117 "Germany" Supporting Syria & the Region 2016. Web. 14 January 2017. <https://www.supportingsyria2016.com/about/germany/>

118 Ibid.

119 "Navigation and Service." *A Wide Range of Assistance for the Syrian People*. Federal Government | Bundesregierung, 15 Dec. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

The arrival of more than one million migrants has served to trigger the biggest rise in the right-wing support since the 1930s, threatening Merkel's bid for a fourth term in office. The country's far-right leaders have blasted the chancellor's "open-door" immigration policy for a series of violent attacks and sexual offences involving migrants, which has hardened the German public's attitude.<sup>120</sup> On New Year's Eve 2015 hundreds of sexual assaults, including at least 24 rapes, and numerous thefts were reported in Germany, mainly in Cologne city centre. On July 18 a 17-year-old Afghan refugee wielding an axe and a knife attacks passengers on a train in southern Germany, severely wounding four, before being shot dead by police. Four days later an 18-year-old German-Iranian gunman apparently acting alone killed nine people in Munich. On July 24 a 21-year-old Syrian refugee was arrested after killing a pregnant woman and wounding two people with a machete in the southwestern German city of Reutlingen, near Stuttgart. That same day a Syrian man wounded 15 people when he blew himself up outside a music festival in Ansbach in southern Germany. Finally, when the attack in Berlin's Christmas market came five months after a Tunisian extremist ploughed a truck into a crowd on the Nice seafront, it has infuriated the public and opposition leaders so much that they have called the victims "Merkel's Dead".<sup>121</sup>

Furthermore, Merkel's insistence that Europe can absorb potentially millions of new residents is vexing the whole continent. While Germans question her judgment and her grip on power, some other European countries bridle at Germany's leadership, raising fears the crisis could cripple the European Union. Germany seeks to impose "moral imperialism," says a senior official from Hungary<sup>122</sup>, one of the EU countries critical of Ms. Merkel's course. "The Germans think they're the Americans of Europe." EU countries such as France, Spain and the Netherlands have gone along with Germany's proposals. But they've done so with little enthusiasm. Other European governments are fighting to halt her strategy of spreading the refugees around Europe through national quotas.<sup>123</sup>

## V. Merkel's historical legacy

It has been suggested more than once that Germany's particular interest in helping Syrian refugees is perhaps derived from a sense of debt or obligation from the historical shame of WWII<sup>124</sup> and the German Nazi's persecution of the Jews and other marginalized groups throughout Europe. It is a big ironic, then, that it is now German leadership under Angela Merkel who is stepping up to the plate while the rest of Europe balks. Perhaps Merkel is trying her best to, in her own way, compensate for German imposed historical injustices. Or perhaps, she has a keen sense of who stands on the right side of history.

Angela Merkel is a hero for taking a stand for the refugees to a far greater degree than anyone else has. At great risk to her political popularity, the cultural climate of Germany, and even to a small degree the safety of Germany's citizens, Merkel has answered the call for help and led the charge

120 Walker, Marcus, and Troianovski. "Behind Angela Merkel's Open Door for Migrants." *The Wall Street Journal*. Dow Jones & Company, 09 Dec. 2015. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

121 Webb, Sam, and Allan Hall. "German Far-right Blames Angela Merkel's Open-door Migrant Policy for Berlin Truck Attack." *The Sun*. The Sun, 21 Dec. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

122 Bender, R. "Orban Accuses Germany of 'Moral Imperialism' on Migrants". *The Wall Street Journal*. Dow Jones & Company, 23 September 2015. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

123 Ibid. Walker et. al.

124 Horn, H. "The Staggering Scale of Germany's Refugee Project." *The Atlantic*. 12 September 2015.

against bigotry, fear, and oppression. One hundred years from now, when our great, great grandchildren hear about what happened in Syria and wonder “why didn’t anyone do something about it”, they will learn about Angela Merkel and how she bravely took a stand for those who needed help most.

## References

### Primary Sources:

BBC News. “Amateur Footage of anti-government protests in Damascus.” Filmed [March 2011].

BBC Video, 00:00:36. <http://www.bbc.com/news/world-middle-east-12749674>.

This video shows a mass of protestors in the streets of Damascus as submitted to and reported by BBC news in March 2017. This video serves as vetted proof of the anti-government protests as they unfolded. I appreciate this video as a primary source because it illustrates how anyone with a smart phone or a video camera can capture history.

“European Union: Refugee Response Falls Short.” Human Rights Watch. Human Rights Watch, 05 Feb. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

This article delivers an analysis of the hardships Syrian refugees face in their migrations and thereby criticises beggar-thy-neighbor responses of EU governments, how they are foolish enough to link refugees from terrorist actions done by extremists.

“Merkel’s Refugee Policy Divides Europe”. Speigel Online. 21 September 2015. Web. 10 January 2017. <http://www.spiegel.de/international/germany/refugee-policy-of-chancellor-merkel-divides-europe-a-1053603.html>

This article is from German news source The Speigel, who mockingly portrays Angela Merkel as Mother Merkel, complete with a nun habit in the style of Mother Theresa. This article presents several quotes made by Chancellor Merkel and offers commentary on the public opinion of each of the statements throughout August of 2015. This article particularly illustrates how different Merkel’s remarks have been from Chancellors of Germany’s past, and how different they are from the current sentiment of the EU’s leaders. I included this resource as a primary source precisely because its tone is representative of the dissent in Germany discussed in my essay.

Montgomery Fundraising, Kelly. “Refugee Crisis: What’s Happening on the Ground in Greece.” Mercy Corps. Mercy Corps, 11 Dec. 2015. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

The article is full of brief, basic information about the reasons behind Syrian attempts to leave their country, the routes they take to reach Europe, possible dangers, adaptations to new communities, European responses to the crisis, and so on. I included this as a primary source because the data therein was compiled by eyewitnesses.

“Navigation and Service.” A Wide Range of Assistance for the Syrian People. Federal Government | Bundesregierung, 15 Dec. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

The webpage reveals the actions took by the German government to assist Syrian refugees in their survival within or outside Germany, especially around Aleppo city where the bomb-

ings kill mass civilians. It specifically notes the promises or addresses made by German politicians and the use of government finance.

“Registration” United Nations High Commission of Refugees. UNHCR.org. Web. 7 February 2017. <http://www.unhcr.org/registration.html>

This is the registration landing page for the United Nations High Commission of Refugees. It offers a description of the registration process as it pertains to Syrian refugees. It also explains the important value in the registration system and how it is able to help refugees with better opportunities if they have registered.

Saad, Kareem. “A Faceless Teenage Refugee Who Helped Ignite Syria’s War.” 13 February 2013. Nytimes.com. Web. Accessed 14 January 2017.

This article offered valuable insight on some of the earliest players in the Syria conflict—young masked vandals who dared to question Assad’s regime in the early days of the conflict. I used this resource to demonstrate the whispers of unrest that gripped the region before all out war struck. I included this as a primary source because it contains interviews with the young protestors and thus qualifies as an eyewitness account.

“The Arab Spring: Five Years On” *Amnesty International*. 2016. Web. Accessed 10 January 2017. <https://www.amnesty.org/en/latest/campaigns/2016/01/arab-spring-five-years-on/> Walker, Marcus, and Anton Troianovski.

This overview of the Arab Spring and associated conflicts is an enormously helpful resource for those wishing to know more about the human rights side of affairs. It includes a number of easy to read info-graphics complete with a timeline and statistics. Also included in this article are photographs from the atrocities—the type that will appear in history books of the future. Because it contains verified statistics, I am including this article as a primary source.

## Secondary Sources:

Baijekal, N. “Inside Syrian Refugee Camps Where Childhood Does Not Exist.” Time Magazine. 8 August 2015.

This article serves two functions in my research. First, it legitimizes my claim that Syrian refugee camps do exist. Second, it shows that Syrian refugee camps are deeply unpleasant places fraught with poverty, crime, and a lack of basic resources. Just this in itself is reason to sympathize with Chancellor Merkel’s vision of helping all Syrian refugees to the best of her ability.

“Behind Angela Merkel’s Open Door for Migrants.” The Wall Street Journal. Dow Jones & Company, 09 Dec. 2015. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

The article explains the criticism Merkel had to endure after she proposed her plans for accepting more refugees. The Wall Street Journal is generally a conservative leaning news source and I find the author’s outlook on the Syrian refugee crisis to mirror the popular sentiment of the European right, which is heavy on the criticism.

Beirut, and Cairo. “Tough, but Bowing.” The Economist. The Economist Newspaper, 18 Oct. 2014. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

This article provides the readers with its own insight in the relationship between Syrian government and the U.S. and the weaknesses of the regime of President al-Assad in the changing international context, including its response to internal conflicts.

Humud, C., Blanchard, C., and Nikitin, M. "Armed Conflict in Syria: Overview and US Response." *Congressional Research Service*, 6 January 2017. Web. 30 January 2017.

This report is published by researchers from the Congressional Research service and discusses a history of the Syrian armed conflict as well as US involvement both past and present. Besides giving a detailed synopsis of the events, it sorts recent developments by political and military, and humanitarian categories. I used this resource to lend legitimacy to the claims made about the history of the Syrian conflicts.

Malsin, J. "Why Some Arab States Refuse to Accept Syrian Refugees" Time Magazine. 9 September 2015.

This article draws attention to Syria's surrounding Arab neighbors and their seeming lack of support for refugees throughout this crisis. Besides offering proof for the statement that many world leaders deny responsibility and refuse to take action in this matter, it also points to possible reasons that world leaders may be denying Syrian refugees, such as the delicate balance between foreigners and nationals as well as growing xenophobia in the Middle East.

"Merkel Warns That Refugee Crisis Tests Europe's Core Ideals." Deutche Welle News. 31 August 2015. Web. 10 January 2017. <http://www.dw.com/en/merkel-warns-that-refugee-crisis-tests-europes-core-ideals/a-18684091>

This article contains a number of quotes from Chancellor Merkel as well as helpful charts that illustrate Germany's contribution to the Syrian refugee crisis compared to those contributions of other European countries. This article is unbiased in the way it presents Merkel, and yet serves to illustrate her resilience and her commitment to the Syrian refugees.

"Migrant Crisis: EU-Turkey Deal Comes into Effect." BBC News. BBC, 20 Mar. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

The news describes the EU-Turkey deal concluded in early 2016, summarising key points from the agreement and explaining the reasons behind responses from those who agree and those who oppose. It also reveals concerns for the implementation of the agreement.

Oprea, M. G. "Tunisians, Who Started The Arab Spring, Are At It Again." The Federalist. The Federalist, 29 Jan. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

The article points out the intention of the Arab Spring in the first place, which lies in removing corrupt elites from their positions. It includes the writer's own anxiety at how the fight has deviated from its original purpose and there is an ongoing clash between rebels and governments instead. It encourages Europe to offer help and plant true democratic ideals.

"Quick Facts: What You Need to Know about the Syria Crisis." Mercy Corps. Mercy Corps, 19 Dec. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

This is a continued piece of writing that explains the motivations and sufferings of Syrian refugees, and the efforts of different corporations to help them successfully begin or finish their journeys.

Ryan, Yasmine. "The Tragic Life of a Street Vendor." Al Jazeera English. Aljazeera, 21 Jan. 2011. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

The article tracks down the beginning of the Arab Spring and includes details about the personal life of Al Jazeera, the man who sparked the whole movement. It includes direct words from his family members and friends.

Simpson, John. "Who Are the Winners and Losers from the Arab Spring?" BBC News. BBC, 12 Nov. 2014. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

The news article lists the consequences of the Arab spring in different countries in the Middle East, highlighting the chaotic fights between the people and the government, including contrasting thoughts towards secularism, which have eventually led to the creation of IS.

Sinjab, Linda. "Middle East Unrest: Silence Broken In Syria - BBC News". 2017. *BBC News*. 19 March 2011. Web. 7 February 2017. <http://www.bbc.com/news/world-middle-east-12794882>.

This article was released by the BBC immediately following the "day of rage" wherein protestors in several cities throughout Syria came together and demanded freedom from poverty and repression. This article offers a play by play of the "day of rage" from the chanting to the police activity. Current news sources are critical for understanding the climate of a conflict, and I used this resource to demonstrate the broken silence in Syria.

Webb, Sam, and Allan Hall. "German Far-right Blames Angela Merkel's Open-door Migrant Policy for Berlin Truck Attack." The Sun. The Sun, 21 Dec. 2016. Web. 01 Feb. 2017.

The article also makes a connection between the terrorist actions of refugees within Germany and growing dissent amongst the public towards Merkel and her political judgment. It provides the readers with the context the incidents took place in, and how the political opponents of Merkel use it as a chance to diminish her prestige.

# Factors That Determine The State Of Death

Lynn Dayeon Kang  
Korea International School

---

1. Common misconceptions that painkillers are less harmful compared to illegal drugs causes people to proceed with less or no caution in dealing with painkillers, and stimulates the use of painkillers, which results in the increase in cases regarding painkiller abuse<sup>125</sup> (Murnion 2010).
  - a. Nearly 50 million Americans suffer from chronic pain <sup>126</sup>(Lugo and Kern 2010, 24).
  - b. More than 15 million people are abusers of prescription drugs in the United States.<sup>127</sup>
  - c. Prescription drugs lead to more overdose deaths (45%) than all illegal drugs combined (39%).<sup>128</sup>
  - d. Misuse of painkillers constitutes three-quarters of the overall epidemic of prescription drug abuse.<sup>129</sup>
    - i. Therefore, from the statistics shown above, this study has established that painkillers have indeed been abused and have caused death in many instances.
2. A painkiller is any drug that is used to relieve pain or attains analgesia by interfering with the nervous system <sup>130</sup>(Harper 2001).
  - a. Painkillers are classified into various categories such as non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, opioids, paracetamol, local anesthetics, nerve blocks and epidurals<sup>131</sup> (Mehlisch 2002).

---

125 Murnion B. "Combination analgesics in adults". *Australian Prescriber* (33): 113–5. Retrieved 12 August 2010.

126 Lugo RA, Satterfield KL, Kern SE. "Pharmacokinetics of methadone". *Journal of Pain & Palliative Care Pharmacotherapy*. 19 (4): 13–2(2005)4.

127 Wilson, M and Nora D. Volkow. "Abuse of prescription drugs and the risk of addiction". *Drug & Alcohol Dependence*, 83 no 1 (2006): 4–7.

128 Ibid.

129 Cowan, D. "Pandemonium over painkillers persists". *British Journal of Community Nursing*, 12 no. 4 (2007): 166–169.

130 Harper,D. "Online Etymology Dictionary: Analgesia" (2001). Retrieved December 3, 2012.

131 Mehlisch DR. "The efficacy of combination analgesic therapy in relieving dental pain". *The Journal of the American Dental Association*. 133 (7) (2002): 861–71.

- b. Classification is based on chemical structure of these painkillers.<sup>132</sup> Moreover, they can also be classified based on use, that is, the group of people who need to use them, the method of administration and the mechanism of action.
- c. On the other hand, illegal drugs are non-prescription, and examples include heroin and cocaine.

3. The History of painkillers <sup>133</sup>(George 2016).

- a. In the 16<sup>th</sup> Century, opium, one of the most commonly abused drug, was created. During the 19<sup>th</sup> Century, morphine was extracted to fight heavy drug dependency on opium.
- b. Banning of drugs such as opium and others that have been declared illegal such as heroine has occurred in the United States due to the growing problem of addiction.<sup>134</sup> Others such as marijuana are in the process of being legalized in several states because of their rampant use both for recreation and for medicinal purposes <sup>135</sup>(Murnion 2015).

4. Painkiller abuse is initially not intentional and majority of people end up abusing them because they need to get rid of a chronic, persistent pain<sup>136</sup> (Rossi 2013).

- a. This is made easy because pain killers are easily accessible over-the-counter and are cheap.<sup>137</sup>
- b. Moreover, most people are not aware of the potential damage painkillers can cause to certain body organs due to the common misconception that their chemical constitution is not similar to that of antibiotics.<sup>138</sup>
- c. The effects of abusing painkillers may take time before being observed physically, and it may be long before the patient starts feeling unwell as a result of the abuse.<sup>139</sup>
  - i. Painkiller abuse results to short term, medium term and long term effects (George 2016).
- d. However, some people abuse painkillers purely for recreational purpose. An example is marijuana which has been rampantly abused in America <sup>140</sup>(Borgelt and Franson 2013).

5. In conclusion, statistics and various reports have demonstrated the existence of the problem of rampant abuse of pain killers.

---

132 Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Prescription Painkiller Overdoses: A Growing Epidemic, Especially Among Women*. Washington, DC: CDC, 2013.

133 George, Dvorsky. Brief History of painkillers: *Why they Work*. Retrieved March 29, 2016.

134 Finlay, I. "The unavailability of opioid medicine and other legal painkillers." *Addiction*, 107 no. 5 (2012): 861–862.

135 Murnion, B (December 2015). "Medicinal cannabis". *Australian Prescriber*. 38 (6): 212–5.

136 Rossi, S, ed. *Australian Medicines Handbook* (2013 ed.) Adelaide: The Australian Medicines Handbook Unit Trust.

137 Waters, H. "Abuse-resistant painkillers get mixed FDA response." *Nature Medicine*, 17 no. 8 (2011): 905-906.

138 Manchikanti, L. and Alan D. Kaye. "Current State of Opioid Therapy and Abuse." *Current Pain and Headache Reports*, 20 no. 34 (2016): 93-102.

139 Hard, B. "Management of opioid painkiller dependence in primary care: ongoing recovery with buprenorphine/naloxone". *BMJ Case Reports* 2 (2014): 11-29.

140 Borgelt, LM; Franson, KL; Nussbaum, AM; Wang, GS. "The pharmacologic and clinical effects of medical cannabis". *Pharmacotherapy*. 33 (2) (2013): 195–209.

- a. The most common reasons for the abuse have also been pointed out and explained in the essay.
- b. Stringent measures should be taken to ensure reduced abuse and consequent deaths of people.
  - i. Measures constraining ease of and accessibility to pain killers as well as rehabilitation for addicts should be looked into.
- c. Therefore, this study has adequately proved that the hypothesis that painkillers are the most abused drugs in America mainly due to misconceptions regarding their impact on human health.

Common misconceptions that painkillers are less harmful compared to illegal drugs causes people to proceed with less or no caution in dealing with painkillers, and stimulates the use of painkillers, which results in the increase in cases regarding painkiller abuse (Murnion 2010). The statistics on abuse of prescription drugs are harrowing. Scholars argue that the ease of access to prescription drugs together with lack of adequate control measures to prevent teens and young adults from taking painkillers for non-medical reasons is the primary cause of the increasing abuse (Rossi 2013). Coupled with the lack of awareness in this area, abuse of prescription drugs is a problem that needs to be handled with urgency.

Abuse of prescription painkillers is advance by the increase of people suffering from chronic pain. According to National Center for Health Statistics, over 76.2 million Americans were suffering from chronic pain as of 2006. As of 2010, Lugo and Kern (2010) estimate the figure to be about fifty million. This large number encourages the supply of prescription painkillers which then makes these drugs easily available to those who abuse them. Prescription painkillers also exhibit a direct association with dependency and addiction. These factors increase the event of prescription painkillers abuse.

More than 15 million people are abusers of prescription drugs in the United States. According to research conducted by the NSDUH (2010), a majority of drug abusers are adolescents and young adults. According to the report, in 2010, approximately 6 percent of the youths aged between 18-25 years reportedly abused prescription drugs. Additionally, those falling in the 12-17 age bracket contributed to 3 percent of overall youths using painkillers for non-medical purposes. Interestingly, the report revealed that most of these young adults accessed prescription drugs from either close friends or relatives. The implication of such events is an indication of the failure by the government, parents and other regulatory institutions mandated with the duty of controlling the use of painkillers. Wilson and Volkow (2006) describe prescription drug abuse to mean taking medicine without a prescription or using prescribed medicine contrary to the given prescription. Among the most commonly abused prescription drugs are those used in the treatment of anxiety and as painkillers (Wilson and Volkow, 2006). The abuse of prescription drugs is largely due to the effects they have on the human body, the result of this type of drug abuse is, however, life-threatening.

The effects of abusing prescription drugs can be dire on the individual and in some cases even fatal. Research has shown that overdose of prescription drugs is responsible for more deaths in the United States, about 45% as compared to deaths caused by all illegal drugs combined, which accounts for 39% of deaths due to overdose (Wilson and Volkow, 2006). Abuse of prescription medicine becomes fatal due to numerous factors. First, there is the risk of taking a lethal mixture of prescription drugs. Prescription drugs when mixed with other prescription drugs or with illegal drugs are dangerous to the human body. The chemical reaction of these drugs intoxicate delicate internal

organs and that often causes death. Prescription drugs are also prone to self-administration of doses larger than that prescribed. In most cases, this overworks and even damages the liver thus leading to negative effects on the body and in advanced cases, death.

Misuse of painkillers constitutes three-quarters of the overall epidemic of prescription drug abuse (Cowan, 2007). A study conducted by the University of Michigan showed that after marijuana, prescription painkillers are the most abused drugs in the country (Wilson and Volkow, 2006). According to the study, their increased abuse related to the effects they have on the body of the abuser, the most commonly abused being Opioids. These drugs work by interfering with the nervous system thus preventing the transmission of the nerve signals that translates to pain.

These drugs, however, are also known for resulting in a pleasant feeling similar to a 'high.' Due to the addictive nature of prescription painkillers, most people thus continue using these medicines to prevent withdrawal symptoms. The dangers associated with abusing prescription medication such as Opioids is that they reduce the respiratory functions of the body and in the case of an overdose, this reduction can occur to a point where breathing stops resulting in death (Wilson and Volkow, 2006). In this case, the drug finds its way into the brain system, which controls every activity in the body, and slows down the functioning of the brain thus inhibiting involuntary activities like breathing while reducing the feeling of pain. Additionally, the effects of painkiller abuse could have close association with creation of feelings related to pleasure, contentment and relaxation. From the statistics shown above, this study contends the prevalent abuse of prescription drugs, with death being the result in many instances.

A painkiller is any drug that is used to relieve pain or attain analgesia by interfering with the nervous system. Painkillers decipher various signals from the nerve system and also stimulates the brain. Here, they prevent the pain signals from reaching the brain for decoding thus relieving pain in injured parts of the body. However, the degree of pain relieve varies with the amount of drugs ingested coupled with the methodology applied during the administration of the drug. Drug abusers prefer injecting themselves with opioids because the method is fast and more intense than swallowed pills which might take longer to reach the brain (Murnion, 2010). Accordingly, injection poses more danger to the user than swallowing since many users lack the needed training to administer drugs. Also, there high risk of diseases transmission in cases where addicts use the same injecting tools on multiple users. Opioids, derived from the opium poppy, are commonly considered the strongest (Bradford, 2016).

First classified into three categories, Painkillers are further classified into smaller sectors. The three main types are non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, opioids and paracetamol. Opioids branch out into subcategories such as oxycodone, hydrocodone, hydromorphone, meperidine, and propoxyphene. Categorized by its accessibility, uses, effects and the type of pain it relieves, each of these painkillers is known to possess different properties and characteristics (health24, 2011). An estimated number of 30 million people worldwide are estimated to take non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs(NSAIDS). NSAIDS branch out into types such as ibuprofen, aspirin, and naproxen. Local drugstores and pharmacies house most of these painkillers. Paracetamol contains many similar properties to NSAIDS. But while NSAIDS reduce inflammation caused by arthritis as well, paracetamol is used to relieve mild fevers and pain (Gargiulo, et al, 2014).

Their use, the people who use them, the administration method and their process is part of the classification method along with the chemical structure of these painkillers. The availability of painkillers varies from prescribed drugs to illegal drugs. According to the 2007 National Survey on

Drug Use and Health, 19.9 million Americans had used illegal drugs in the month prior to the survey. 208 million people are estimated to consume illegal drugs internationally. The top ten drugs prone to addiction included marijuana, ecstasy, benzodiazepines, cocaine, bath salts, heroin, and crack cocaine (Behavioral health, 2016).

Opium cultivated as early as 3400 B.C. found in Mesopotamia is considered one of the first records of opium. Later records show the introduction of opium to India by Alexander the Great, and widespread use of the drug by Arabs, Greeks, and Romans (Brownstein, 1993)(Kritikos, 1967). In 1527, Paracelsus discovered laudanum, a tincture that relieves pain that is still available in the United States (Drago, 2013). Friedrich Wilhelm Adam Sertürner, a German Chemist, discovered morphine by extracting its pure form from opium (Brownstein, 1993). Named after Morpheus, the Greek God of Dreams, morphine was widely prescribed as a painkiller during the Civil War (Casey, 1978). The invention of the hypodermic needle in 1858 resulted in a rise in the number of uses of the drug (Ferrari, Michela and Marco, 2012). Due to the rising number of problems caused by morphine addiction, chemists strived to discover an alternative. The solution emerged in the late 1870s when Charles Romley Alder Wright, an English chemist, discovered heroin by boiling morphine. After the discovery, Bayer, a German pharmaceutical company, commercialized heroin and promoted the use of the drug as a cough suppressant for children. Bayer exported heroin to 23 countries until reports of addiction and dependence increased in 1914 (Metzger 1998). Sales of the drug ceased when the Heroin Act came into effect in 1924 that banned heroin altogether. In 1916, to lessen the dependence of morphine, scientists at the University at Frankfurt synthesized oxycodone (Understanding Addictions, 2010).

Towards the 21<sup>st</sup> century, the number of protocols and policies regarding drugs expanded. While most policies are enforced on a national level, other conventions have reached international levels of engagement, such as the Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs signed in 1961, which only allows drugs to be used for prescription and medical purposes. Unlike earlier treaties, The Single Convention also controls cannabis as well as opium, coca, morphine, heroin and cocaine. The Single Convention currently has 185 state parties. The Commission on Narcotic Drugs established in 1946, previously known as the Advisory Committee on the Traffic in Opium and Other dangerous drugs established by the League of Nations in 1920, is recognized as the drug policy maker in the UN(UNODC). The Commission is established within the United Nations Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC) and maintains the power to influence and form policies regarding narcotic drugs. While the commission draft policies, the International Narcotic Control Board is behind the administration and application of the policies. Up to this day, the United States alone houses over 20 laws concerning opioids from the 1800s (The National Alliance of Advocates for Buprenorphine Treatment 2016). The possession of opium was finally banned due to the Smoking Opium Exclusion Act in 1909. Excluding opium for medical purposes. The Harrison Act of 1914 imposed taxes on importers, exporters, producers and distributors of opium and cocaine for the first time(Harrison Act 1914). The Heroin Act of 1924 entirely prohibited the importation, production, possession, and use of heroin even for medical treatment. The Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act of 1938 made Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval mandatory to identify vendible drugs. The FDA allowed the sales of medicine derived from opioids and morphine. The Drug Abuse Control Amendment of 1965 and the Controlled Substance Act in 1970, the earliest laws that directly addressed drug abuse, commonly imposed regulations regarding depressants, stimulants, and hallucinogens.

As cases of drug abuse gradually increased in the United States, the Anti-Drug Abuse Act of 1988 formed the Office of National Drug Control Policy (ONDCP) in order to authorize drug prevention and abuse treatment. Buprenorphine was approved for use in 2002, and is considered to be less likely to be abused and safer alternative than methadone. Physicians could prescribe the drug for up to 100 patients at a time. Since then, states policies in the United States have been supportive of the increased access to methadone and buprenorphine therapy. Most state medical programs included methadone and buprenorphine by 2013 (Stein,et al., 2015). In 2015, studies established that states permitting the use of medical marijuana see a decrease in opioid addiction and opioid overdose deaths (Powell, Pacula and Jacobson, 2015). In 2016, as a response to the United Nations General Assembly Session (UNGASS) drug conference, Mexican President Enrique Peña Nieto stated that the country must “move beyond prohibition to effective prevention” and that the nation was considering partial decriminalization of marijuana and legalizing the drug for medical use (Nieto 2016). A 2011 Global Commission on Drug Policy (GCDP) report said that instead of harsh enforcements, the commission “advocates decriminalizing drug use by those who do no harm to others.” As of 2017, 9 states legalized the adult use of marijuana and 27 states legalized the use of medical marijuana in the United States.

Painkiller abuse is initially not intentional, and the majority of people end up abusing them because they need to get rid of a chronic, persistent pain (Rossi 2013). The physical or psychological overdependence on painkillers gradually builds a tolerance towards a particular drug which usually ends up in severe addiction. Prolonged consumption of painkillers may make individuals feel that the drug is a necessity for them and their bodies may not function normally without the medication (Rossi 2013). Others suffer from psychological trauma emanating from chronic persistent pains thus forcing them to continue taking painkillers because of fear that the pain might return without the drugs even after successful resolution of their physical conditions. The continued habit of taking painkillers results in the development of body disorders while the individual is not under the influence of the drug which in return becomes an addiction. Further, the body of frequent drug users gradually become resistant to certain quantities of the painkiller forcing them to continuously increase the dosage in an attempt to counter the urge created by prolonged medication (Murnion 2015). At a certain point, the addiction grows to overwhelming levels that require huge amounts of drugs to sustain, thus creating a medical condition of drug overdependence.

Painkillers' abuse in the United States has a close association with their availability and accessibility over the counter coupled with low prices. Over the counter (OTC) painkillers are medications accessible to any consumer without necessarily having a prescription. According to Waters (2011), the rate of painkillers' abuse is steadily increasing at alarming rates with reports revealing the drugs as the leading cause of severe overdoses by 2010. However, US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) with the help of drug makers have found new methodologies of curbing the menace of painkillers' abuse. The primary practice involves changing the formulation of painkillers to make it harder for addicts to abuse them. For instance, drug makers are turning oxycodone into a more unstable abuse-deterrant Oxecta pill which becomes sticky when crushed thus making it hard to extract oxycodone that makes people high (Water 2011). On the other hand, a Californian biotechnology company is working on producing an opioid design that is biochemically complex. The drug has a polymer covering to avert chances of binding with cell receptors before reaching the small intestines where digestive enzymes activate the drug. The polymer also functions to prevent overdose where one ingests many pills (Water 2011). Therefore, a combination of proper monitoring and advanced drug designs are sure ways of eradicating abuse of painkillers.

Many painkillers have chemical compositions containing potentially harmful substances that may affect internal organs. Opiates have the capability to suppress the normal functioning of the lung thus exposing the abuser to a higher risk of contracting pneumonia (Manchikanti 2016). When smoked, oxycodone causes significant fluid buildup in the consumers' lungs responsible for shortness of breathing. Further, painkillers cause constipation that becomes severe in long-term by causing immense damage to the anus and the sphincter muscle. Additionally, a variety of painkillers contains acetaminophen that is responsible for causing significant liver damage when consumed in high quantities (Manchikanti and Alan 2016). Acetaminophen also causes kidney failure in cases where an individual consumes painkillers for a prolonged period thus making the abuser need frequent dialysis or even kidney transplant in severe cases.

Persistence abuse of painkillers results in adverse effects that gradually develop and one may take time before realizing that their body is at risk. People often start having a feeling of being unwell at the initial stages of the physical symptoms affiliated to opiates abuse (Hard 2014). According to George (2016), the short-term effects of abusing drugs include reduced ability to react, lack of muscle coordination, relaxation of the iris muscles, drowsiness and slowed thinking. In other instances, one may feel nauseated, dysphoria, itchy skin followed by slowed speech. The long-term effect of abusing painkillers has a close association with severe brain damage due to reduced respiratory activity which may result in long-term psychological and neurological effects. Besides, opiates abusers experience sexual dysfunction, severe gastrointestinal conditions, and uneven menses in women (George 2016). Dependence on prescriptions including over-the-counter opioids not only cause harm on the users, but also results in the reduction in quality of life for families and communities surrounding the users. (Disley, et al., 2013)

However, some people abuse painkillers purely for recreational purpose. Borgelt, Franson, Nussbaum and Wang (2013) posit that Marijuana is the most commonly abused painkiller as a recreational drug. In 2013, a survey by the National Survey on Drug Use and Health (NSDUH) revealed that over 81 percent of other drug users used Marijuana at some point in their life (Borgelt, Franson and Wang 2013). Young people in America tend to believe that using small quantities of recreational drugs may not have adverse effects on their bodies and social life. Besides, one may argue that using recreational drugs at significant intervals of time reduces the chances of becoming an addict and experiencing such side effects as withdrawal syndrome. While some of these assumptions appear to be true, the fact remains that using painkillers for recreational purposes is harmful to the user. According to Borgelt, Franson and Wang (2013), use of marijuana, for instance, gradually intoxicates the body to the extent of developing over dependency on the drug and ultimately resulting in addiction on the part of the user. According to the study, marijuana use has severe consequences among them including impaired vision and judgment, slow thinking, reduced intelligence quotient, loss of memory and anxiety just to name a few. Some of these side effects are instant and occur even under the influence of minimal quantities of the drug, while others are long-term, occurring due to prolonged use.

Additionally, research shows that marijuana users are at higher risks of abusing other drugs than non-users. In 2013, a survey by Quest Diagnostic Health Trends (QDHT) revealed that about 45 percent of patients using marijuana for recreation in the sampled population also used other non-prescribed drugs. On the other hand, only 36 percent of non-marijuana users admitted to using non-prescribed drugs for purposes of relieving pain (QDHT, 2013). The study, however, concluded that individuals who take marijuana under prescription were not likely to abuse other forms of drugs.

Therefore, painkillers used recreationally is a major concern in the United States because of the high probability of abuse by the users and the many side effects accompanying the act. Thus, Marijuana is among the top listed painkillers used for recreational purposes despite the risk associated with it.

Widespread fallacies regarding the effects of painkillers and related drugs prompt people to handle painkillers without sufficient consideration, increasing the use of painkillers and thereby leading to an increase in cases concerning painkiller abuse (Murnion 2010). One of the major contributing factor to excessive drug abuse is prolonged use of the painkillers to kill chronic pain experienced by individuals with different conditions. In this case, the body gets used to the drugs in a way that it cannot function properly without the use of the painkiller. Alternatively, the user feels unsafe deprived of using the drugs because of the consistent habit upholding the drug use coupled with the feeling that the pain might recur if one is not under medication (Wilson and Volkow, 2006). On the other hand, some people are ignorant of the side effects that painkillers may have on them thus ending up misusing or using strong drugs like morphine in conditions of mild pains that need weaker drugs to control. As a result, the medications weaken their bodies by making them resistant to some painkillers hence making it difficult to treat slight pains. Additionally, due to the pleasant effects of painkillers, individuals find it difficult to stop using them because of the effect resulting from interrupted sequences of use which may cause the withdrawal syndrome hence increasing chances of misuse alongside addiction.

Statistics show that over 76 percent of the American population was suffering from chronic pain in 2006, thus, in one or another had an opportunity to take painkillers as a remedy for their pain (Lugo and Kern 2010). In this case, the chronic pains instill fear and anxiety in people regarding the prolonged periods of suffering thus forcing them to take increasingly more doses to eliminate the attitudes towards their conditions. The implication of these statistics is that the demand to access more painkillers continue to rise at a rate that the government through the control agencies may have difficulties to regulate in the future. The number of cases regarding painkiller abuse growing at an alarming rate requires immediate attention and surveillance. Research shows prescription drugs lead to more overdose deaths than all illegal drugs combined and the misuse of painkillers amounting for three-quarters of the overall extensive cases of prescription drug abuse (Cowan 2007). The First records of painkillers date back to the 16<sup>th</sup> century; the year opium was created. Endless research for new drugs followed, resulting in the discovery of morphine. Banning and legalizing of specific drugs are growing into place in several countries including the United States, which allows the use of marijuana for recreational purposes along with medicinal purposes (Murnion 2015). The accessibility and reliability of painkillers contribute to the growing use of painkillers to get rid of chronic pain, even when medication is not required (Rossi 2013).

It is important to note that despite the stringent measures in place to control the use of painkillers, the policies concerning their abuse needs review since they may have influence only up to a certain degree. Drug abuse highly depends on the availability and ability to access the medication. Although the government has put some effort in making sure that painkillers are accessible only to those in need through the policy that demands a prescription, it is not of ample impact since much of the abuse is on prescribed opiates (Waters, 2011). Thus, development of new policies to effect sensitization of the public about the side effects of painkiller abuse through school curriculum, media and educational forums are vital in creating awareness and making an informed judgment. Such information will positively impact the future generations by advocating for the use of painkillers for the right purposes. Further, the government ought to abolish the over-the-counter purchases of all

painkillers together with restricting accessibility to adults with sound judgment thus enhancing the sense of responsibility and accountability. In this way, it will make it hard for the addicts to easily access the medication and very expensive for them to afford, forcing many to try and opt out of abuse.

On the other hand, more rehabilitation centers should be in existence to help those suffering from severe addiction restore their lives to normality. The abuse of painkillers is seen in a variety of forms including recreational purposes. The majority of people are unaware of the risks of painkillers that include the risk of potentially harming their organs since the effects of the drug require time to appear visually. The abuse of painkillers causes severe damage to the internal organs, an effect that emanates from the components used in making the drugs. Internal body organs like the kidneys, liver and the lungs are sensitive to opiates since the soft tissues making up these organs are weak thus wear out easily (Manchikanti, 2016). Besides, abuse of painkillers weakens the immune system of the body, which in most cases pave the way for contracting other diseases such as pneumonia accelerated by the damaged respiratory system. In return, one experiences organ failure and subsequent death particularly in cases of prolonged abuse due to brain failure, difficulty in breathing and reduced body activities among others.

Research and statistics clearly demonstrate the rising problem in cases regarding painkiller abuse. Specifically, the number of deaths caused by misuse of painkiller drugs are higher than those instigated by abuse of illegal drugs. For instance, a 2006 study revealed that about 45% of the total deaths was a result of abused prescription drugs while 39% of deaths resulted from an overdose of other drugs. Clearly, such statistics show the need for urgent actions to curb the menace affiliated with abuse of painkillers (Wilson and Volkow, 2006). Thus, the need to impose strict regulations to decrease the number of incidents in relation to painkiller abuse is an imperative one. New and revised regulations should focus on limiting the accessibility of painkillers and a source of treatment for patients. Therefore, also emerging from this explorative study is the deduction that painkillers are the most abused drugs in America mainly due to misconceptions regarding their impact on human health.

## References

Cowan, D. "Pandemonium over painkillers persists." *British Journal of Community Nursing*, 12 no. 4 (2007): 166-169

Lugo R. A., Satterfield K. L., and Kern S. E. "Pharmacokinetics of methadone". *Journal of Pain & Palliative Care Pharmacotherapy*. 19 (4): 13–2(2005)4.

Murnion B. "Combination analgesics in adults". *Australian Prescriber* (33): 113–5. Retrieved 12 August 2010.

National Survey on Drug Use and Health, NSDUH. (2010). <https://nsduhwebesn.rti.org/respweb/homepage.cfm>

Wilson, M and Volkow, D. N. "Abuse of prescription drugs and the risk of addiction". *Drug & Alcohol Dependence*, 83 no 1 (2006): 4–7.

Giuseppe Gargiulo-Davide Capodanno-Giovanni Longo-Piera Capranzano-Corrado Tamburino - Expert Review of Cardiovascular Therapy – 2014

Gargiulo G, Capodanno D, Longo G, Capranzo P, Tamburino C. Updates on NSAIDS in patients with and without coronary artery disease: Pitfalls, interactions, and cardiovascular outcomes. *Expert Review of Cardiovascular Therapy*, 12 (10) (2014) 1185-1203

Brownstein, MJ. A brief history of opiates, opioid peptides, and opioid receptors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* June, 1993; 90(12): 5391-5393.

riedDrago, F. The European Pharmacology: Twenty years of success. Presented at ESPT 2013 Second Congress: Pharmacogenomics: From Cell to Clinic. Lisbon, Portugal: 2013; 1-44

Renata Ferrari, R., Michela C., & Marco V. Risk Factors in Opioid Treatment of Chronic Non-Cancer Pain: A Multidisciplinary Assessment. *Pain Management-Current Issues and Opinions*. January 2012

Casey, E. History of Drug Use and Drug Users in the United States. Schaffer Library of Drug Policy.

The National Alliance of Advocates for Buprenorphine Treatment. Naabt.org. Update on October 29, 2013.

Allen, LV. Guidelines for Compounding Practices. In: *The Art, Science, and Technology of Pharmaceutical Compounding*. 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Washington, D.C.: American Pharmacists Association; 2012: 1-18

Courtwright, DT. The hidden epidemic: Opiate addiction and cocaine use in the south, 1860-1920. *The Journal of Southern History*, February, 1983; 49(1): 57-72

Harrison Act – Excerpt From The Harrison Narcotic Drug Act of 1914. Law Library – American Law and Legal Information Web site.

United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime. (n.d.). Retrieved March 02, 2017, from [http://www.unodc.org/unodc/en/data-and-analysis/bulletin/bulletin\\_1966-01-01\\_1\\_page002.html](http://www.unodc.org/unodc/en/data-and-analysis/bulletin/bulletin_1966-01-01_1_page002.html)

Fassihi, Farnaz, “U.N. Conference on Drugs Ends Without Shift in Policy”, *Wall Street Journal*, April 22, 2016. Retrieved 2016-04-25

“New Report: World Leaders Call For Ending Criminalization of Drug Use and Possession and Responsible Legal Regulation of Psychoactive Substances”, *globalcommissionondrugs.org*, September 8, 2014.

Medical Marijuana. (n.d.). Retrieved February 24 2017, from <http://www.drugpolicy.org/medical-marijuana>

Metzger, T. (1998). *The birth of heroin and the demonization of the dope fiend*. Port Townsend, WA: Loompanics Unlimited.

War on Drugs ‘Painstaking, Often Thankless, Seemingly Unending’ Struggle, General Assembly Hears in Thematic Debate Laying Ground for New Global Approach | Meetings Coverage and Press Releases. (n.d.). Retrieved March 02, 2017, from <https://www.un.org/press/en/2015/ga11642.doc.htm>

The National Alliance of Advocates for Buprenorphine Treatment. (n.d.). Retrieved March 05, 2017, from <https://www.naabt.org/laws.cfm>

QDHT. (2013). *Prescription Drug Misuse in America: A Report on Marijuana*. Quest Diagnostics Health Trends (QDHT). Retrieved from [https://www.questdiagnostics.com/dms/Documents/health-trends/2013\\_health\\_trends\\_prescription\\_drug\\_misuse.pdf](https://www.questdiagnostics.com/dms/Documents/health-trends/2013_health_trends_prescription_drug_misuse.pdf)

Rossi, S, ed. Australian Medicines Handbook (2013 ed.) Adelaide: The Australian Medicines Handbook Unit Trust. Waters, H. "Abuse-resistant painkillers get mixed FDA response." *Nature Medicine*, 17 no. 8 (2011): 905-906.

Manchikanti, L. and Alan D. Kaye. "Current State of Opioid Therapy and Abuse." *Current Pain and Headache Reports*, 20 no. 34 (2016): 93-102.

Hard, B. "Management of opioid painkiller dependence in primary care: ongoing recovery with buprenorphine/naloxone". *BMJ Case Reports* 2 (2014): 11-29.

Borgelt, LM; Franson, KL; Nussbaum, AM; Wang, GS. "The pharmacologic and clinical effects of medical cannabis". *Pharmacotherapy*. 33 (2) (2013): 195–209.

Powell, D., Pacula, R. L., & Jacobson, M. (2015). Do Medical Marijuana Laws Reduce Addictions and Deaths Related to Pain Killers? doi:10.3386/w21345

Disley, Emma, Mulcahy, A. W., Pardal, M., Rubin, J., & Ruggeri, K. (2013). *Development of a framework to estimate the cost of opioid dependence*. (Rep.). Retrieved [https://www.rand.org/pubs/research\\_reports/RR406.html](https://www.rand.org/pubs/research_reports/RR406.html).

Stein, Bradley D., Rosalie Liccardo Pacula, Adam J. Gordon, Andrew W. Dick, Rachel M. Burns, Douglas L. Leslie, Mark J. Sorbero, Sebastian Bauhoff, Carrie M. Farmer, Hollie Hendrikson and Todd Mandell. (2015). *Policies to Support a Better Treatment for Heroin and Prescription Opioid Abuse: Unlike Methadone, Buprenorphine Can Be Taken at Home, but Greater Access is Key*. (Rep.). Retrieved from [https://www.rand.org/pubs/research\\_briefs/RB9871.html](https://www.rand.org/pubs/research_briefs/RB9871.html).

Bradford, A. (2016, February 26). *Facts About Opioids - Hydrocodone, Oxycodone, Codeine & Others*. Retrieved from <http://www.livescience.com/53856-opioid-facts.html>

The different groups of painkillers. (2011, November 29). Retrieved from <http://www.health24.com/Medical/Pain-Management/Different-painkilling-drugs/The-different-groups-of-painkillers-20120721>

What Are The Top 10 Most Addictive Illegal Drugs? (2016, June 10). Retrieved from <https://www.summitbehavioralhealth.com/blog/top-10-addictive-illegal-drugs/>

I. (n.d.). United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime. Retrieved from <https://www.unodc.org/unodc/en/treaties/single-convention.html>

Prescription Pain Killer Abuse Still Rising. Understanding Addictions Web site. <http://www.understandingaddictions.com/2010/06/prescription-painkiller-abuse-still.html>. Published on June 20, 2010.

Kritikos, PG & Papadaki SP. The history of the poppy and of opium and their expansion in antiquity in the eastern Mediterranean area. United Nations Office on Drugs and crime (UNODC) Bulletin on Narcotics. 1967; (3). (Previously: Opium Throughout History. PBS Thirteen Web site.)

## FACTORS THAT DETERMINE THE STATE OF DEATH

United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime. (n.d.). Retrieved from [http://www.unodc.org/unodc/en/data-and-analysis/bulletin/bulletin\\_1966-01-01\\_1\\_page002.html](http://www.unodc.org/unodc/en/data-and-analysis/bulletin/bulletin_1966-01-01_1_page002.html)

28 Legal Medical Marijuana States and DC. (n.d.). Retrieved from <http://medicalmarijuana.pro-con.org/view.resource.php?resourceID=000881&print=true>

# Alan Turing's Royal Pardon: Taking a Stand Against Re-writing History

Nahyun Koo  
Choate Rosemary Hall

---

## Alan Turing: Taking a stand against re-writing history

*“NOW KNOW YE that We, in consideration of circumstances humbly represented unto Us, are Graciously pleased to extend Our Grace and Mercy unto the said Alan Mathison Turing and to grant him Our Free Pardon posthumously in respect of the said convictions; AND to pardon and remit unto him the sentence imposed upon him as aforesaid; AND for so doing this shall be a sufficient Warrant. GIVEN at Our Court at Saint James's the 24<sup>th</sup> day of December 2013; In the sixty-second Year of Our Reign. By Her Majesty's Command.”<sup>141</sup>*

In 2013, at the request of the government of the United Kingdom<sup>142</sup>, Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth signed<sup>143</sup> a posthumous official pardon to Alan Turing for convicting him of homosexuality more than sixty years prior<sup>144</sup>. This official pardon generously extends the Queen's “grace” and “mercy” but notably lacks an apology, which was perhaps to be understood implicitly.

This demonstration of extending pardon does demonstrate that we have come far as a society in terms of protecting the rights of homosexuals. After all, it was long ago that the United Kingdom decriminalized the act that Turing was punished for in the Sexual Offenses Act of 1967, which states, “Notwithstanding any statutory or common law provision, but subject to the provisions of the next following section, a homosexual act in private shall not be an offence provided that the parties consent thereto and have attained the age of twenty-one years.”<sup>145</sup> Why then, has Mr. Turing's homosexuality and conviction become of sudden interest to the British government?

---

141 Appendix A

142 “Royal Pardon For WW2 Code-Breaker Dr Alan Turing - Press Releases - GOV.UK”. 2013. *Gov.Uk*. Accessed September 26 2016. <https://www.gov.uk/government/news/royal-pardon-for-ww2-code-breaker-dr-alan-turing>.

143 “Royal Pardon of Alan Turing” 2013. *Gov.Uk*. Accessed September 26 2016. [https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment\\_data/file/268717/pardon.jpg](https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/268717/pardon.jpg).

144 “Alan Turing's Trial, 1952”. 2016. *Turing.Org.Uk*. Accessed September 26 2016. <http://www.turing.org.uk/sources/sentence.html>.

145 Sexual Offenses Act 1967, Chapter 60. 2016. *Legislation.Gov.Uk*. Accessed September 26 2016. [http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/1967/60/pdfs/ukpga\\_19670060\\_en.pdf](http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/1967/60/pdfs/ukpga_19670060_en.pdf).

The motivation behind this action has been discussed by a number of British officials. Justice Chris Grayling explains, “Dr. Alan Turing was an exceptional man with a brilliant mind. His brilliance was put into practice at Bletchley Park during the Second World War where he was pivotal to breaking the ‘Enigma’ code, helping to end the war and save thousands of lives. His later life was overshadowed by his conviction for homosexual activity, a sentence we would now consider unjust and discriminatory<sup>146</sup> and which has now been repealed. Dr. Turing deserves to be remembered and recognized for his fantastic contribution to the war effort and his legacy to science. A pardon from the Queen is a fitting tribute to an exceptional man.”<sup>147</sup> According to this statement, one may assume that the purpose of the Queen’s pardon is to pay tribute to an intelligent man who was unjustly harmed and mistreated.

It is undeniable that Alan Turing bestowed countless contributions upon British society and the world at large with his work during WWII, which has led him to become a widely praised and publicized figure.<sup>148</sup> It is also clear to us now, as a society, that Turing’s admitted sexuality contributed no conceivable detriment to the quality of his work<sup>149</sup>.

But while this pardon effectively demonstrates Britain’s willingness to ‘forgive and forget’ given this accepted conclusion, I believe that the conviction should stand to serve as a reminder of the historical maltreatment of homosexuals—conversion therapy<sup>150</sup>, concentration camps<sup>151</sup>, and “pray the gay away”<sup>152</sup>, to name a few methods of punishment—no matter their contributions to society. I believe that we must take a stand to preserve history as it happened rather than later declaring certain actions to be a mistake when clearly they were not originally intended as such.

Turing was born on June 23, 1912 in Maida Vale, London, England.<sup>153</sup> Showing high intelligence since young age, Turing received high-quality education in Sherborne School,<sup>154</sup> where he was one of six students working toward a Higher School Certificate in Mathematics<sup>155</sup>. Although undoubtedly intelligent, Turing was far from the shining star in his class—that honor was bequeathed to his classmate, Christopher Morcom, with whom Turing formed a significant bond with while working on scientific ideas<sup>156</sup> and who was later speculated as Turing’s first love. Morcom regularly outscored Turing on examinations, perhaps due to Turing’s untidy approach to the sciences, as de-

146 “Equality Act 2010, Chapter 2 Article 13”. 2017. *Legislation.Gov.Uk*. Accessed January 13 2017. <http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/2010/15/section/13>.

147 “WWII Codebreaker Alan Turing Gets Royal Pardon For Gay Conviction”. 2016. *Reuters*. Accessed September 26 2016. <http://www.reuters.com/article/us-britain-alanturing-idUSBRE9BN00220131224>.

148 Olinick, M. “Artists Respond to Alan Turing.” *Math Horizons* 19, no. 4 (2012): 5-9.

149 Davis, M. “Ahead of His Time.” *American Scientist* 94, no. 4 (2006): 366-68. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/27858810>.

150 Cruz, D. “Controlling Desires: Sexual Orientation Conversion and the Limits of Knowledge and Law.” 1999. *Www.Bcf.Usc.Edu*. Accessed January 13 2017. <http://www-bcf.usc.edu/~usclrev/pdf/072502.pdf>.

151 “Persecution Of Homosexuals — United States Holocaust Memorial Museum”. 2017. *Ushmm.Org*. Accessed January 13 2017. <https://www.ushmm.org/learn/students/learning-materials-and-resources/homosexuals-victims-of-the-nazi-era/persecution-of-homosexuals>.

152 “Exodus International - Policy Statements”. 2017. *WebArchive.Org*. Accessed January 13 2017. <https://web.archive.org/web/20070928010931/http://exodus.to/content/view/34/117/>.

153 O’conner, J.J., & Robertson, E.F. (2003) “Alan Mathison Turing.” *School of Mathematics and Statistics University of St. Andrews, Scotland*: <http://www-groups.dcs.st-and.ac.uk/~history/Biographies/Turing.html>

154 *Ibid.*

155 Eperson, Canon D. B. “Educating a Mathematical Genius: Alan Turing at Sherborne School.” *Mathematics in School* 23, no. 3 (1994): 44-45. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/30216476>.

156 Isaacson, Walter. “The Price of Genius” *TIME* Vol.184 (2014): 66, 7.

scribed by his teachers later on<sup>157</sup>, but was ultimately regarded as a great influence on Turing's life. A former teacher at the Sherborne School described that, "their friendship had been a source of mutual benefit, and Morcom's influence on the young genius was all to his good<sup>158</sup>." Tragically, however, Morcom died of bovine tuberculosis, which he'd contracted from drinking tainted milk, in February 1930<sup>159</sup>. The shock of his friend's death was so devastating that it caused Turing to suffer from temporary illness.<sup>160</sup> In a letter to Morcom's mother, following his death, Turing remarked, "You could not possibly have had a greater loss."<sup>161<sup>162</sup></sup>

Still, Turing was able to enter King's College and Princeton University for mathematics. For his dissertation<sup>163</sup> on the Central Limit Theory of probability, he was elected a Fellow's King in 1935<sup>164</sup>.

After Turing completed his formal studies, war broke out in Europe and his outstanding skill in mathematics greatly contributed to the Allied efforts during the time of the Second World War. German soldiers used the 'enigma machines', complex machines for encrypting secret messages<sup>165</sup>, whose codes were modified every day at a certain hour, meaning that there were myriad possibilities of these enigma codes.<sup>166</sup> The earlier developed method by unknown Polish scientists soon became obsolete as the Germans recognized their weakness and increased the complexity of the machine.<sup>167</sup> In order to decode these encrypted messages between German soldiers, Britain recruited scientists.<sup>168</sup> Turing's intelligence was impressive enough to attract the officers to enlist him as one of the members of the secret teams in the Victorian manor house in the town of Bletchley.<sup>169</sup>

Along with other scholars at Bletchley, Turing was able to invent a 'bombe' that would crack the enigma code. In Turing's personal journal, the bombe was described as such: "... a method of solution will depend upon taking hypotheses about parts of the keys and drawing what conclusions one can, hoping to get either a confirmation or a contradiction..." The method depends upon having made a correct guess about the corresponding short piece of plaintext<sup>170<sup>171</sup></sup>." This bombe contributed tremendously in leading the allied force to win the war and while Turing and his team were celebrat-

157 Op. cit., Eperson.

158 Ibid

159 Christopher Morcom obituary. *The Shirburnian*, vol. 35, no. 382, March 1930 pgs. 236-237

160 Op. cit., O'Conner, J.J., & Robertson, E.F.

161 Bryant, C. 2012. "Turing Centenary | Gay Love Story And The Invention Of The Computer | Polarimagazine. Com". *Polari Magazine*. Accessed January 13 2017. <http://www.polarimagazine.com/features/gay-love-story-led-invention-computer/>.

162 Appendix B

163 Turing, A. "Systems of Logic Based on Ordinals". *Princeton University Press* (May 1938). Retrieved from <http://www.dcc.fc.up.pt/~acm/turing-phd.pdf>

164 Newman, M. H. A. "Alan Mathison Turing. 1912-1954." *Biographical Memoirs of Fellows of the Royal Society* 1 (1955): 253-63. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/769256>.

165 1937 Enigma Manual. *Gebrauchsanleitung für die Chiffriermaschine Enigma*, January 12, 1938. Tr. Christian Kaiser.

166 Copeland, B. Jack. "Essential Turing : Class Writings on Minds and Computers" *Clarendon Press* (December 2004): 220-224

167 Ibid., 217-218

168 Ibid.

169 Ibid.

170 Appendix C

171 Turing, A. *Report on the Enigma*, 1940.

ed privately for their hard work, the valuable results of their research were not released to the UK National Archives until 2012<sup>172</sup>.

In 1952, Turing began a relationship with a young man named Arnold Murray, and within weeks of their meeting, Turing's home was burgled. Murray claimed to be acquainted with the culprit and so armed with this knowledge, Turing reported the crime to the police. During the investigation, Turing's dubious relationship with Murray became an object of speculation. Turing eventually acknowledged that he had a sexual relationship<sup>173</sup> with Murray and both gentlemen were charged with "gross indecency" under Section 11 of the Criminal Law Amendment Act of 1885<sup>174</sup><sup>175</sup>. His contributions to science and to the war effort did little to redeem this charge, while the perpetrator involved in the burglary received a twelve month deferred sentence<sup>176</sup>.

During his sentencing, Turing was afforded a choice of treatments for his homosexuality. According to Walter Isaacson, the two options offered to Turing were imprisonment or hormone injection which, at that time, consisted of stilboestrol, which acted as a synthetic oestrogen designed to reduce libido. Many refer to these injections as "chemical castration". In his personal journal, Turing recorded that he was aware of the potential ramifications of his choice: "no doubt I shall emerge from it all a different man, but quite who I've not found out."<sup>177</sup> Common side-effects from such chemical castration can include breast swelling and tenderness, long term sexual difficulties, fluid build up, headaches, fatigue, loss of muscle strength coupled with weight gain, blood clots, sickness, and pain<sup>178</sup>. Turing endured for a year of hormone injection throughout which he suffered the full array of side effects including the development of breasts<sup>179</sup>. Throughout his treatment, he continued with his research until his death in 1954, which was caused by either suicidal or accidental ingestion of a cyanide poisoned apple.

In 2013, Turing received a posthumous pardon by the British Government and the Queen, which was a "U-turn", according to Sam Jones of Financial Times. Justice Minister Chris Grayling explained that "His later life was overshadowed his conviction for homosexual activity, a sentence we would now consider unjust and discriminatory and which has now been repealed." He further explained that the government's reason of his pardon was because "his fantastic contribution to the war effort and his legacy to science" must be remembered and valued.<sup>180</sup> Paul Nurse, President of the Royal Society also mentioned that, "The persecution of this great British scientist over his sexuality was tragic and I'm delighted that we can now focus solely on celebrating his legacy," which suggests that Turing's sexuality and oppression should then not be a celebrated aspect of his legacy.

172 Admiralty: Naval Intelligence Division and Operational Intelligence Centre: Intelligence Reports and Papers The UK National Archives. <http://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk/details/r/C1931> Accessed 23 Nov. 2016.

173 "Alan Turing's trial, 1952". <http://www.turing.org.uk/sources/sentence.html>. Accessed 23 November.

174 Appendix D

175 "Criminal Law Amendment Act, 1885, Section 11". 2016. *Irishstatutebook.Ie*. Accessed November 23 2016. <http://www.irishstatutebook.ie/eli/1885/act/69/section/11/enacted/en/html>.

176 Op. cit., "Alan Turing's trial, 1952."

177 "Yours in Distress, Alan" 1952, in Alan Turing: The Enigma by Andrew Hodges, Princeton University Press, 2012.

178 "Diethylstilbestrol (Stilboestrol®) - Cancer Information - Macmillan Cancer Support ». 2016. *Macmillan.Org.Uk*. Accessed November 23 2016. <http://www.macmillan.org.uk/cancerinformation/cancertreatment/treatmenttypes/hormonaltherapies/individualhormonaltherapies/diethylstilbestrol.aspx>.

179 Hodges, A. Alan Turing: The Enigma. (New Jersey: Princeton University Press, 2012)

180 Davies, Caroline. "Enigma codebreaker Alan Turing receives royal pardon." *The Guardian* (December 2013): <https://www.theguardian.com/science/2013/dec/24/enigma-codebreaker-alan-turing-royal-pardon>

In a letter from Turing to his friend Norman Routledge, Turing concludes his message with a poem in the form of a logical proof. It reads:

*Turing believes machines think  
Turing lies with men  
Therefore machines do not think<sup>181</sup>*

Turing himself was resigned to his scientific advances being negated by his sexual preferences, a prospect that he found, indeed, distressing. The British government's pardon seems to acknowledge that it too hopes Turing's scientific work outshines his personal struggle. However, doing so seems to nullify Turing's clear suffering. Were he alive, it is indicated by his letters that Turing would like the conviction to be overturned, but as this distress was an integral part of his later life of pain, I argue that his conviction must stand to remind everyone that history was frequently unfair. If people cannot acknowledge mistakes throughout history, then how may they learn from them?

Turing, in his later days, suffered from the injections of female hormones, which, according to Isaacson, Turing thought of as 'growing beasts'. Not only did the government's maltreatment make him ill, but also it was unendurable which may have driven him to his tragic death. Issuing an apology on behalf of the government must be based on the acknowledgement about the flaw of the original judgment. Nevertheless, the original judgment was made with full knowledge of his contributions to the war effort and his personal value as a mathematician. It was arbitrated that homosexuality outweighed the aforementioned factors, and therefore was stridently penalized. The government pardon is neither beneficial to Alan Turing himself nor his reputation to later generations, but rather serves to mask the authoritarian mistreatment of a great scientist. By effectively quashing the fact that Turing suffered at the hands of his own country's government, the government is attempting to "undo" the past via the issuance of a "royal pardon".

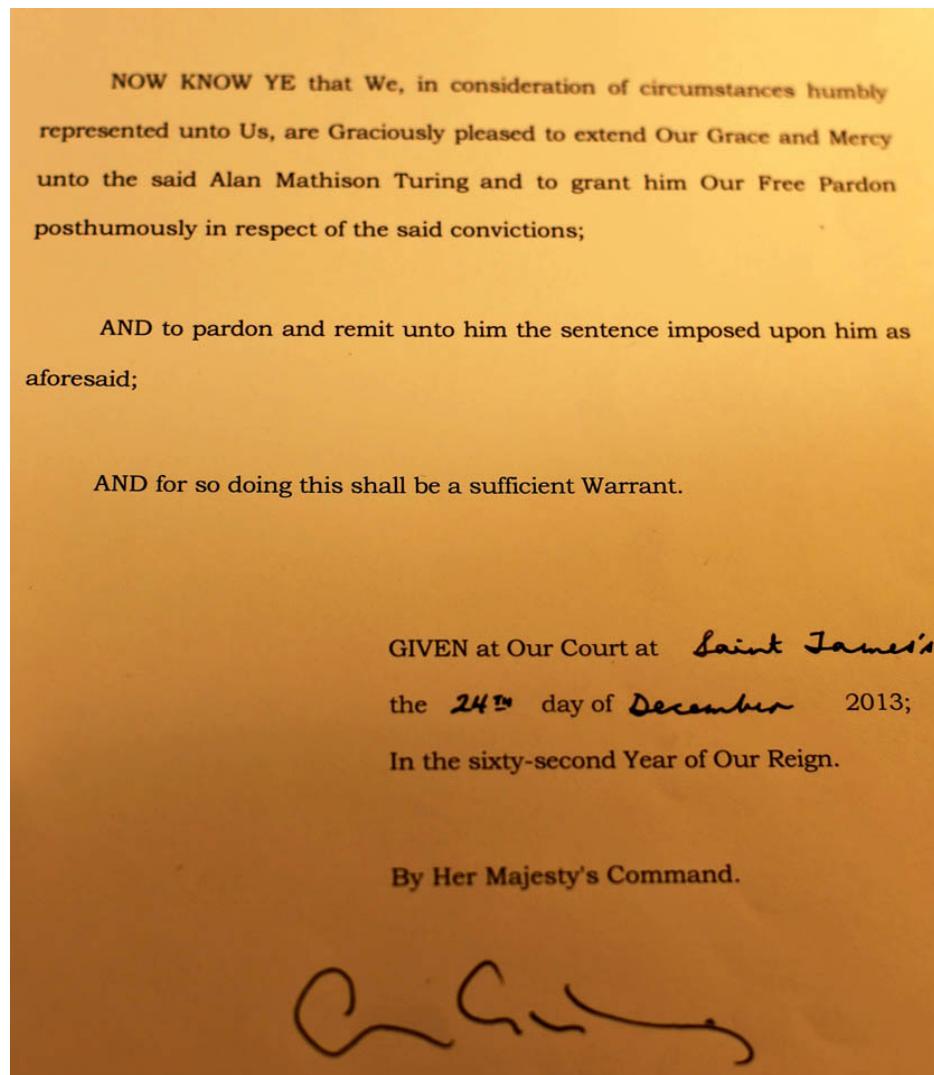
Because Alan Turing is a valued scholar, considering his universal contributions to science and technology, it is an obligation to respect not only his academic achievements but also his homosexuality and treatment by the government. He must be represented to the later generations as not only a great scientist and mathematician but also as a homosexual individual. His sexual orientation and those accompanying circumstances, which were perpetrated solely by a government that benefited innumerably from his contributions, are critical to the narrative about our great mathematician. His suffering represents a vital time in history wherein human values of sexual minorities were disregarded. The issuing of the government pardon will relegate his struggle, which is unfair and disrespectful.

The posthumous pardon granted by the government is only a way to rewrite history, especially in a way to maintain support from today's public. It might seem sensible to today's public – for it shows the government's acceptance to current LGBTQ+ communities of the country and therefore shows respect to the former suppressed member of them. However, while people might consider this apology a "step forward" for equality, the conviction is a stain on Britain's history for it is an attempt to eradicate their oppression to the great contributor of the country. Therefore, the British Government's conviction should remain as such: guilty of indecency. After all, the conviction demonstrates Britain's indecent history.

---

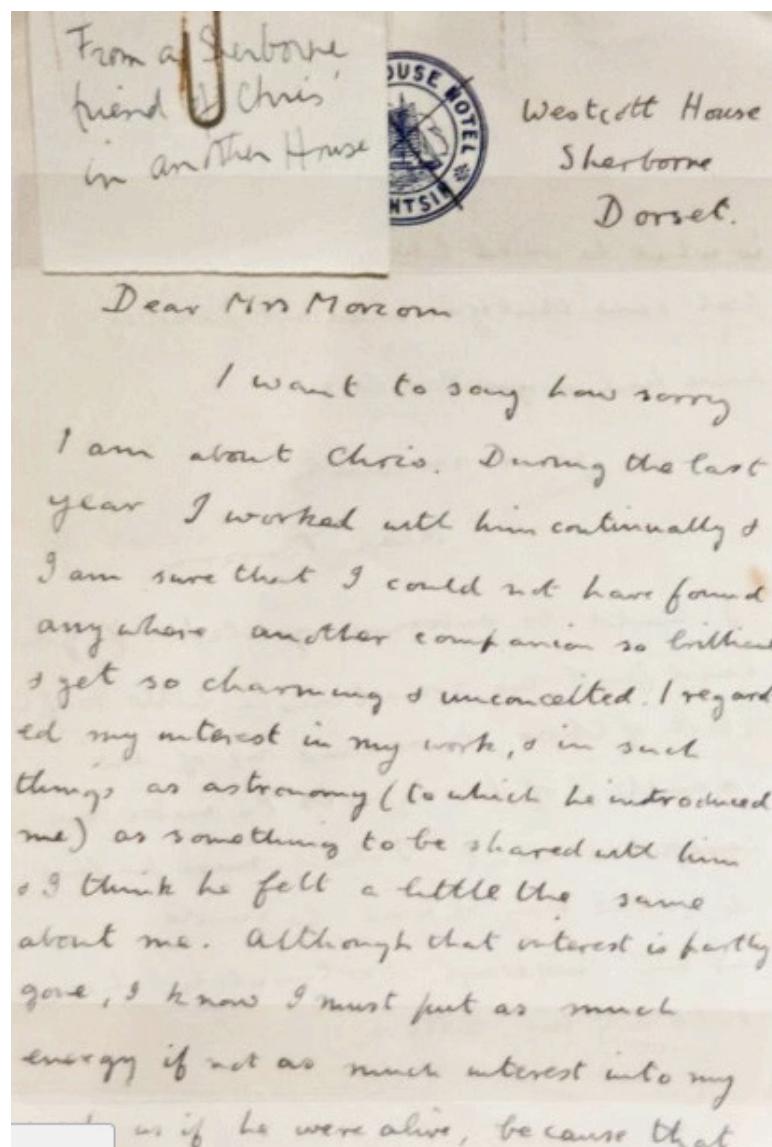
181 Op. cit. "Yours in Distress, Alan"

## Appendix A – Official Royal Pardon of Alan Turing



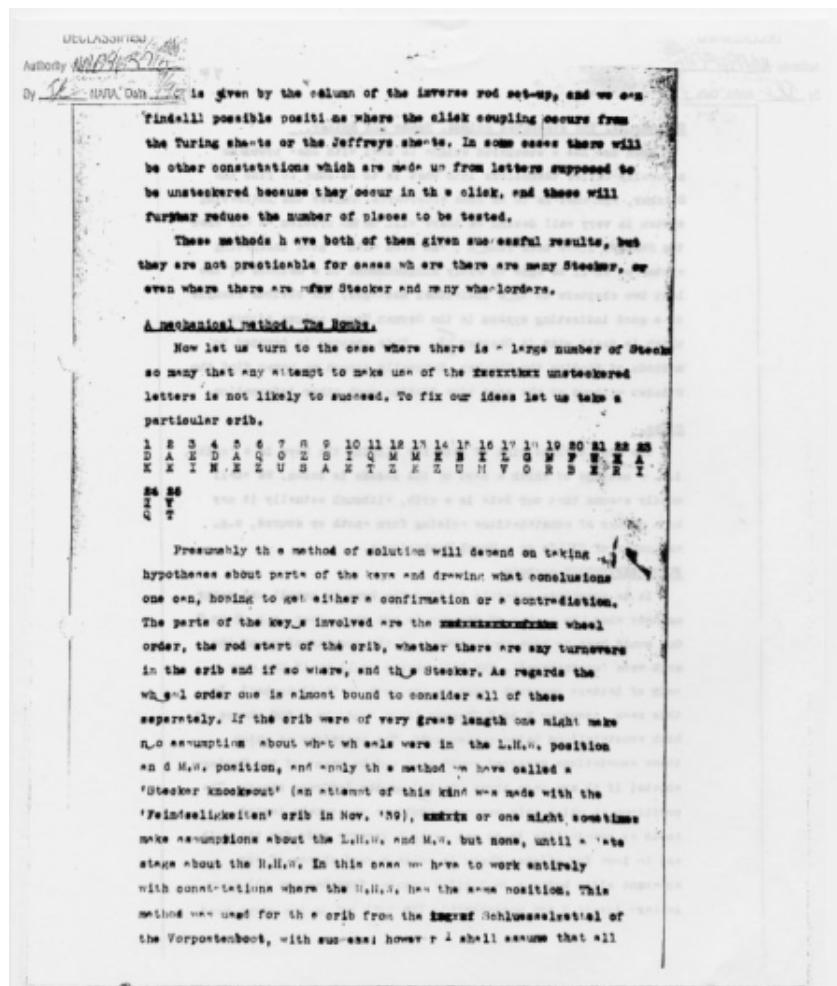
This photograph shows the official royal pardon issued by Queen Elizabeth on 24 December 2013. It is signed “By Her Majesty’s Command” with Queen Elizabeth’s signature. I used this resource in its original wording to demonstrate the separation between a ‘pardon’ and an ‘apology’, for this is clearly the former and not the latter. I also included this document in the appendix to give readers a true impression of the formality and shortness with which such declarations are issued.

Appendix B – Letter from Turing to Morcom's mother



This photograph shows a scan of a letter that Alan wrote to Christopher Morcom's mother expressing his condolences and sorrow following the death of her son, Turing's friend and purported first love.

## Appendix C – Notes from Turing's Journal



This reference was taken from pages of Turing's personal journal, which he was keeping at the time of his work on the Enigma machine. Although technical in nature, these journal entries give powerful insight as to the thought processes and temperament under which Turing functioned. He represents himself as a pensive, patient, and methodical man. For this paper, I used Turing's own words to describe the mechanism behind the 'bombe' used in the WWII decryptions. It is helpful to use the scientists' own words when representing a historical event or process and thus this document was a valuable primary source.

## Appendix D – Turing Trial and Conviction

402

COUNSEL		PARTICULARS OF OFFENCE	PLEA	VERDICT	SENTENCE OR ORDER
Mr. S. Llewellyn Pros. Mr. R. David. Dfg.	Christopher Howard Newton.	On the 29th day of January, 1952 at Sale broke and entered the shop of Tom Roberts and stole 3 boxes of cigars, 1 box of cheroots, 12 boxes of Whiffs, 6 cigarette lighters, 30 packets of flints, 3 pipes, 2 cigarette cases, 24,816 cigarettes, 17 boxes of chocolate, 34 bars of chocolate together of the value of £205.17.1d and £1.5.0. in money the property of the said Tom Roberts in the said shop.	Guilty	-	Sentence postponed for Twelve Months.
Mr. R. David. Pros. Mr. Lind Smith Dfg. Turing. Mr. E. Hooson. Dfg. Murray.	Alan Mathison Turing.	1. On the 17th day of December, 1951, at Wilmslow, being a male person, committed an act of gross indecency with Arnold Murray, a male person. 2. On the 17th day of December, 1951, at Wilmslow being a male person was party to the commission of an act of gross indecency with Arnold Murray, a male person. 3. On the 12th day of January, 1952 at Wilmslow, being a male person committed an act of gross indecency with Arnold Murray, a male person. 4. On the 12th day of January, 1952, at Wilmslow, being a male person, was party to the commission of an act of gross indecency with Arnold Murray, a male person. 5. On the 2nd day of February, 1952 at Wilmslow, being a male person committed an act of gross indecency with Arnold Murray, a male person. 6. On the 2nd day of February, 1952, at Wilmslow, being a male person, was party to the commission of an act of gross indecency with Arnold Murray, a male person. 7. On the 17th day of December, 1951 at Wilmslow being a male person, committed an act of gross indecency with Alan Mathison Turing, a male person. 8. On the 17th day of December, 1951, at Wilmslow, being a male person, was party to the commission of an act of gross indecency with Alan Mathison Turing, a male person. 9. On the 12th day of January, 1952 at Wilmslow, being a male person, committed an act of gross indecency with Alan Mathison Turing, a male person. 10. On the 12th day of January, 1952 at Wilmslow, being a male person, was party to the commission of an act of gross indecency with Alan Mathison Turing, a male person. 11. On the 2nd day of February, 1952, at Wilmslow, being a male person, committed an act of gross indecency with Alan Mathison Turing, a male person. 12. On the 2nd day of February, 1952, at Wilmslow, being a male person, was party to the commission of an act of gross indecency with Alan Mathison Turing, a male person.	Guilty	-	Turing:- Placed on Probation for a period of Twelve Months. To submit for treatment by a duly qualified medical practitioner at Manchester Royal Infirmary. Murray:- Bound over to be of good behaviour for Twelve Months.
					When passing sentence, the Court took into consideration at the request of the prisoner, one outstanding offence, which he admitted, as per the list attached to the Indictment.

This photograph contains details of the arrest of Alan Turing and his boyfriend Arnold Murray. Their names, along with the names of their legal representatives can be seen in the left column while a description of the charges brought against them can be seen in the middle. Finally, in the right column, there is a description of the punishments brought against both of the two men. These records are available for public viewing on the official Turing website but are also a matter of public record in the Cheshire Archives in Britain.

## References

### Primary Sources:

1937 Enigma Manual. *Gebrauchsanleitung für die Chiffriermaschine Enigma*, January 12, 1938. Tr. Christian Kaiser. Accessed 13 January 2017. <http://ilord.com/enigma-manual1937-english.html>.

This document is an English translation of the operating guide for the 1937 Enigma Machine. I used this resource to gain an understanding of the complexity of the mechanism that Turing devoted so much time to unlocking. In the paper, I reference this manual to give a layman's description of how the decryption mechanism works so that the reader can have an overview of Turing's general work. Although this paper is primarily focused on Turing's personal life and the Royal Pardon, the crux of that argument lies in the disparity between Turing's scientific contributions and personal struggle with homosexuality and an oppressive law. In order to understand this disparity adequately, I believe it is important for the reader to have a solid basis of Turing's scientific contributions.

Admiralty: Naval Intelligence Division and Operational Intelligence Centre: Intelligence Reports and Papers The UK National Archives. Accessed 23 Nov. 2016. <http://discovery.nationalarchives.gov.uk/details/r/C1931>

This document is the official intelligence report from Bletchley Park. Its contents include the details from the work Turing and his team undertook during WWII to break the German codes using the Turing machine. The work contained therein was so valuable that it was not made available for the public to read until 2012. Given this wide gap between the scientific work and its publication, it's easily surmised that the results of Turing's scientific work were critically useful for decades. This fact demonstrates the extent of Turing's scientific contributions, which long outlived him. Therefore, this fact also demonstrates that despite being charged and punished for his sexuality, the British government continued to take advantage of his scientific advances while Turing became dangerously ill and died as a probable result of its sentencing.

“Alan Turing’s Trial, 1952”. 2016. *Turing.Org.Uk*. Accessed September 26 2016.

<http://www.turing.org.uk/sources/sentence.html>

This photograph contains details of the arrest of Alan Turing and his boyfriend Arnold Murray. Their names, along with the names of their legal representatives can be seen in the left column while a description of the charges brought against them can be seen in the middle. Finally, in the right column, there is a description of the punishments brought against both of the two men. These records are available for public viewing on the official Turing website but are also a matter of public record in the Cheshire Archives in Britain.

Christopher Morcom obituary. The Shirburnian, vol. 35, no. 382, March 1930 pgs. 236-237

This document shows the original wording of Christopher Morcom's obituary as it was published The Shirburnian, a publication of the Sherborne. This document provides the necessary historical proof of Morcom's untimely demise, but also demonstrates the impact that he had on his school and on his neighbors. It is clear from this document that the affection shared for Morcom was deep and far reaching. The obituary concludes with this sentiment:

"He was buried at dawn with the darkness all behind him – though there was no darkness in this life save the pain of his illness." I believe that this deeply personal sentiment offers a powerful look at what Morcom meant to his community and by extension, Turing himself.

"Criminal Law Amendment Act, 1885, Section 11". 2016. *Irishstatutebook.Ie*. Accessed

November 23 2016. <http://www.irishstatutebook.ie/eli/1885/act/69/section/11/enacted/en/html>.

This document is a law, which reads: *Any male person who, in public or private, commits, or is a party to the commission of, or procures or attempts to procure the commission by any male person of, any act of gross indecency with another male person, shall be guilty of a misdemeanor; and being convicted thereof shall be liable at the discretion of the court to be imprisoned for any term not exceeding two years, with or without hard labour.* This was the charge brought against Alan Turing, of which he was convicted and sentenced to either hormone therapy or imprisonment. Turing chose the former. This primary source provides proof of the legal actions brought against Turing.

Eperson, Canon D. B. "Educating a Mathematical Genius: Alan Turing at Sherborne

School." *Mathematics in School* 23, no. 3 (1994): 44-45. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/30216476>.

This article was written by Canon, D. B. Eperson, who was a staff member at the Sherborne School from 1927-1939. In this capacity, Eperson had a unique opportunity to educate and observe both Turing and Morcom in their formative years. I used this resource to get a sense of Turing's personality as well as the nature of his relationship with Morcom through the eyes of someone who personally knew both of them. In reading this account, I became acutely aware of what must have attracted the two to one another. I also developed a keen sense of Turing's mathematical and scientific inclinations through his eccentric but impassioned behavior.

"Equality Act 2010, Chapter 2 Article 13". 2017. *Legislation.Gov.Uk*. Accessed January 13 2017.

<http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/2010/15/section/13>.

This piece of legislation shows that those who discriminate against homosexuals are punishable by law, which thus protects homosexuals from prejudiced or unfair behavior. I included this law in my research to indicate how the law has changed over time and how we are now in a position to recognize that as our compassion and understanding has grown as a society, laws of the past are outdated and have been justly revised. This provides a powerful context for understanding that Turing's time was different from our own, which explains his punishment though it does not justify his punishment.

"Royal Pardon For WW2 Code-Breaker Dr. Alan Turing". 2013. *Gov.Uk*. Accessed September 26 2016. <https://www.gov.uk/government/news/royal-pardon-for-ww2-code-breaker-dr-alan-turing>.

This article is the first official statement of Dr. Turing's pardon and was released on the official UK government website on the day that Queen Elizabeth released the declaration of pardon. Accompanied by the pardon are several statements on the historical significance of such an event including those from Justice Secretary Chris Grayling and Prime Minister David Cameron. Interestingly, at the bottom of the press release reads this statement: "A pardon is only normally granted when the person is innocent of the offence and where a request has been made by someone with a vested interest such as a family member. Uniquely on this occasion a pardon has been issued without either requirement being met, reflecting

the exceptional nature of Alan Turing's achievements." I believe that this statement reflects the sentiment that Turing's crimes are being overlooked because of his achievements rather than as an admission of guilt on the part of his accusers.

"Royal Pardon of Alan Turing" 2013. *Gov.Uk*. Accessed September 26 2016.

[https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment\\_data/file/268717/pardon.jpg](https://www.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/268717/pardon.jpg)

This photograph shows the official royal pardon issued by Queen Elizabeth on 24 December 2013. It is signed "By Her Majesty's Command" with Queen Elizabeth's signature. I used this resource in its original wording to demonstrate the separation between a 'pardon' and an 'apology', for this is clearly the former and not the latter. I also included this document in the appendix to give readers a true impression of the formality and shortness with which such declarations are issued.

Sexual Offenses Act 1967, Chapter 60. 2016. *Legislation.Gov.Uk*. Accessed September 26 2016.

[http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/1967/60/pdfs/ukpga\\_19670060\\_en.pdf](http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/1967/60/pdfs/ukpga_19670060_en.pdf).

This document is a photocopy of the official legislation that repealed the anti-homosexuality criminalization laws under which Turing was convicted and subsequently punished. This document is available through the national UK Legislation web archive. The law of interest in this paper reads that homosexual acts shall not be punishable by law so long as the participants are both 21 years of age. This shows that Turing was pardoned nearly 40 years after his criminal act was decriminalized and it still took the British government all that time to recognize their mistake, which raises the question of why, after all these years, should Turing be pardoned at all?

Turing, A. *Report on the Enigma*, 1940.

This reference was taken from pages of Turing's personal journal, which he was keeping at the time of his work on the Enigma machine. Although technical in nature, these journal entries give powerful insight as to the thought processes and temperament under which Turing functioned. He represents himself as a pensive, patient, and methodical man. For this paper, I used Turing's own words to describe the mechanism behind the 'bombe' used in the WWII decryptions. It is helpful to use the scientists' own words when representing a historical event or process and thus this document was a valuable primary source.

Turing, A. "Systems of Logic Based on Ordinals". *Princeton University Press* (May 1938).

Retrieved from <http://www.dcc.fc.up.pt/~acm/turing-phd.pdf>

This document is a reproduction of Alan Turing's award winning dissertation, which he published at Princeton University prior to his appointment at Bletchley. In this essay, I cited this document in order to offer historical evidence for the claim I was making in regards to this dissertation and its existence. While the dissertation itself is not of critical importance to the overarching theme of my analysis, it nonetheless serves to substantiate my point.

Turing, A. "Yours in Distress, Alan" 1952, in Alan Turing: The Enigma by Andrew Hodges, Princeton University Press, 2012.

This letter from Turing to his friend Norman Routledge provides an interesting insight to Turing's personality and his attitude during his trial. The letter begins with some banter about jobs and traveling before mentioning Turing's criminal charges as well as his mild disbelief that he was finding himself in that situation. He concludes the letter with the quote I mentioned in the paper as well as this brief poem, written in the form of a logical proof:

*Turing believes machines think/Turing lies with men/Therefore machines do not think.* This sentiment expresses Turing's feeling that his scientific contributions to computing and the war effort were practically completely discredited by his sexual preference. Although time has shown that this is not the case, it is valuable to note Turing's feelings on the matter. This would be regarded as a "primary source within a secondary source", but I have included it in my primary source list because I do not believe the letter requires any greater context than the words it contains.

## Secondary Sources

Copeland, B. Jack. "Essential Turing : Class Writings on Minds and Computers" *Clarendon Press* (December 2004): 220-224

Jack Copeland is a well-known and widely respected Professor of philosophy at the University of Canterbury in Christchurch, New Zealand. The primary focus of Copeland's studies is philosophy of computing and philosophy of the mind. Copeland is presently the Director of the Turing Archive for the History of Computing and he is known as a foremost expert on Alan Turing himself as well as Turing machines. This excerpt from this book describes the Turing machine mechanism in detail, so for the paper, I included a simple description of this mechanism so that the reader can more easily understand how this mechanism operates.

Cruz, D. "Controlling Desires: Sexual Orientation Conversion and the Limits of Knowledge and Law." 1999. *Www-Bcf.Usc.Edu*. Accessed January 13 2017. <http://www-bcf.usc.edu/~uscl-rev/pdf/072502.pdf>.

This manual was published by Professor Cruz of the University of Southern California. It discusses the various theories under which homosexuality is conceived as well as the ethics, effectiveness, and feasibility of curing homosexuality. Among these cures is conversion therapy, which may include electroshock therapy. In this paper, I used this information as an example of the historical mistreatment of homosexuals to build on the assertion of historical precedent.

Davies, Caroline. "Enigma codebreaker Alan Turing receives royal pardon." *The Guardian* (December 2013): <https://www.theguardian.com/science/2013/dec/24/enigma-codebreaker-alan-turing-royal-pardon>

This article is another that reports on the royal pardon and it too was published on 24 December, the day that the pardon was announced and published. It provides some new quotes and perspectives surrounding the event, which I used in the research to demonstrate the variety of feelings about Turing and his criminal past.

Davis, M. "Ahead of His Time." *American Scientist* 94, no. 4 (2006): 366-68.  
<http://www.jstor.org/stable/27858810>.

This article from American Scientist offers a brief glimpse into Turing's life as a scientist, culminating in how his "unabashed attitude about his sexuality led to catastrophe." In my paper, I used Davis' words to show that it is a widely held belief that Turing's homosexuality offered no conceivable detriment to his scientific abilities. This opinion lends credence to the overarching supposition that Turing's homosexuality ought to be forgotten so that his scientific accomplishments may be better celebrated, as Davis adds his voice to the many, many other scientists who share this mind.

“Diethylstilbestrol (Stilboestrol®) - Cancer Information - Macmillan Cancer Support «. 2016. *Macmillan.Org.Uk*. Accessed November 23 2016.

This encyclopedia entry contains information about diethylstilbestrol, which is the hormonal injection that Turing was receiving. In this entry, a list of side-effects can be seen, which includes many of Turing's purported illnesses. This drug has been proven so dangerous that it is not prescribed anymore and those who took the medicine or whose mothers took the medicine during pregnancy have suffered from a wide berth of maladies. I included this information in my research because it illustrates the cruelty in Turing's punishment, where he was made to feel very sick as a consequence of his sexuality.

“Exodus International - Policy Statements”. 2017. *WebArchive.Org*. Accessed January 13 2017. <https://web.archive.org/web/20070928010931/http://exodus.to/content/view/34/117/>.

Exodus International is a now defunct homosexual rehabilitation group run by a far-right Christian organization. This archived post contains its policy statement, which begins as such: *EXODUS upholds heterosexuality as God's creative intent for humanity, and subsequently views homosexual expression as outside of God's will. EXODUS cites homosexual tendencies as one of many disorders that beset fallen humanity. Choosing to resolve these tendencies through homosexual behavior, taking on a homosexual identity, and involvement in the homosexual lifestyle is considered destructive, as it distorts God's intent for the individual and is thus sinful.* In my research, I used this organization as the citation on my claim that “Pray the Gay Away” organizations have been involved in the historical mistreatment of homosexuals.

Hodges, A. Alan Turing: The Enigma. (New Jersey: Princeton University Press, 2012)

This resource provided additional biographical support for my research. As indicated by the title, Hodges's book provides greater information about Alan Turing the man and his interesting and illustrious life. In this book, Hodges talks about the side-effects that Turing suffered from as a result of his treatment. This lent support to my claim that Turing's treatment would now be considered cruel and unusual, given how ill and distressed he became as a result.

Isaacson, Walter. “The Price of Genius” *TIME* Vol.184 (2014): 66, 7.

This article originally appeared in *TIME Magazine* around the time that the 2014 film “The Imitation Game”, which is based on Turing's life and career, was released. The article recounts Turing's achievements and discusses his personal outlooks on life. There are many, many articles such as this that attempt to describe Alan Turing the man or give a fresh glimpse into a tale often told. However, this article stands out because in its descriptions, it attempts to replicate Turing's thought processes and logical methods. It described Whis actions as being extremely deliberate, as he was. Even in his homosexuality, Turing was extremely deliberate, never too emotional and never ashamed of himself. This article is helpful in painting Turing as a methodical, meticulous man.

Newman, M. H. A. “Alan Mathison Turing. 1912-1954.” *Biographical Memoirs of Fellows of the Royal Society* 1 (1955): 253-63. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/769256>.

The pages I read for consideration on my paper contained a brief biography of Alan Turing. Unlike the biographical resources that focus primarily on his personal life, this chapter was particularly helpful for understanding his academic pursuits and scientific prowess. I used this resource to give myself an understanding of the depth and breadth of his mathematical

work, particularly his work on the Enigma Machine and the cited details in the paper show the awards that he earned for his work on various projects.

O'conner, J.J., & Robertson, E.F. (2003) "Alan Mathison Turing." *School of Mathematics and Statistics University of St. Andrews, Scotland*: <http://www-groups.dcs.st-and.ac.uk/~history/Biographies/Turing.html>

This biographical record, presented by the School of Mathematics and Statistics University of St. Andrews, gives the essential basic information of Turing's childhood, education, and career. Such items are collected on this page from a wide array of biographical and public records but this page offered a simple resource to learn the basic names and locations of the critical settings in Turing's life.

Olinick, M. "Artists Respond to Alan Turing." *Math Horizons* 19, no. 4 (2012): 5-9.

Although I chose not to utilize contents of this particular article to its fullest extent, it has value insofar as it demonstrates Turing's lasting impression and legacy in ways that are not related only to his scientific career, but also his personal struggle. Turing's tale of oppression and tragedy has been told in various artistic mediums including songs, poems, and stage performances. Turing's struggle has inspired countless gay scientists, artists, and activists alike. The Royal Pardon, which asks history to forgive and forget Turing's "sexual indiscretions" in favor of this new, clean slate, attempts to deny homosexuals the license to be inspired by this struggle and asserts that doing so would not leave Turing's legacy untainted.

"Persecution Of Homosexuals — United States Holocaust Memorial Museum". 2017. *Ushmm. Org*. Accessed January 13 2017. <https://www.ushmm.org/learn/students/learning-materials-and-resources/homosexuals-victims-of-the-nazi-era/persecution-of-homosexuals>.

The United States Holocaust Memorial Museum is an online archive of encyclopedic materials pertaining to the Holocaust of WWII. Although the word 'holocaust' generally evokes the image of persecuted Jewish people, many other groups were involved in the unjust arrests and subsequent imprisonment and concentration camps. Such groups included gypsies, Slavs, communists, the disabled, and homosexuals. In my essay, I use this evidence to show that persecution of homosexuals was widespread and almost universally criminal at the time of Turing's trial.

"WWII Codebreaker Alan Turing Gets Royal Pardon For Gay Conviction". 2016. *Reuters*. Accessed September 26 2016. <http://www.reuters.com/article/us-britain-alanturing-idUSBRE9BN00220131224>.

This Reuters article was among the first to report Alan Turing's Royal Pardon and is useful for the quotes that it contains from British lawmakers as well as from several scientists who petitioned to have Turing pardoned, reasoning that his contributions to the scientific community were so great that they deserve to be recognized alone without being tainted or otherwise overshadowed by his sexuality. I used these quotes to support the fact that Turing's sexuality ought not to be overlooked simply because he was a great scientist. To do so suggests not only a level of disrespect for the gay community but also that Turing's sexuality should not be a part of his legacy, although historically, it is and was. The Silenced Renaissance Man:

# Objective, Obliteration and Oblivion of Giordano Bruno's Ideas

Caroline (Hyung Seo) Lee  
Hill School

---

Challenging the Catholic Church was no small feat during the Late Middle Ages, and anyone who dared to do so could face dire consequences. Yet the doubt individuals held towards theological beliefs during the Late Middle Ages and the Renaissance grew to an atypical height by the 1570s – which also happens to be the time when Giordano Bruno (1548 - 1600) reached the prominent period of his career. Giordano Bruno audaciously lit the flame that burnt down the walls of ecclesiastical coercion and led people to gain freedom of expression. Boldly supporting controversial positions in spite of being aware of the repercussions, Giordano Bruno brought academic advancements out from far beneath the suffocating pile of religious oppression. Giordano Bruno's contributions to the advancement of philosophy, cosmology, mathematics and sciences was nothing less than remarkable, but it was the means by which Bruno took a stand for his radical beliefs that make him one of the Renaissance's most notable figures. Without a doubt, Bruno's life represented the conflicts between theology and science throughout Europe during the time of the Reformation and the Scientific Revolution.

Some of the most important aspects of Giordano Bruno's accomplishments are his works which pioneered various areas of science. For instance, Bruno left behind a significant amount of work that dealt with cognitive science, especially the contribution of mnemonics to human capability in terms of memorization.<sup>182</sup> His *De Umbris Idearumi*, or *Shadow of Ideas*, outlines his theory of memory, cognition, and mnemonics.<sup>183</sup> The study of memory was previously an obscure area that even the blossoming scholarly curiosities, discoveries and studies made during the peaks of the Renaissance mostly did not touch upon. Bruno improved upon the "Ars Memoriae," a mnemonic method that is otherwise named and known as the "art of memory."<sup>184</sup> The lectures he provided to the public on memorization even astonished King Henry III, to the point at which he felt a need to summon Bruno to the court.<sup>185</sup> This further demonstrates Bruno's ability to take a stand for his beliefs.

---

182 Blum, Paul Richard, and Peter Henneveld. *Giordano Bruno: An Introduction*. Amsterdam: Rudopi, 2012. Print.

183 Bruno, Giordano. "De Umbris Idearum." *Writings of Giordano Bruno (1548-1600)*. Ed. Joseph H. Peterson.. N.p., n.d. Web

184 Witkoski, Michael. "Giordano Bruno." *Great Lives From History: The Renaissance & Early Modern Era, 1454-1600* (2008): 1. Biography Reference Center. Web. 28 Dec. 2016

185 Birx, James H. "Giordano Bruno." Harvard University. 11 Nov. 1997. The Harbinger. Giordano Bruno. Web. 06 Feb 2017.

Giordano Bruno also took part in a breakthrough of a field completely unrelated to memorization: cosmology. His *De l'Infinito, Universo e Mondi* (Of the Infinite Universe and Worlds) is seen as a major contribution to the growth of the field of cosmology.<sup>186</sup> Through this particular book and controversial research that breached laws both theological and legal, he was able to come to a previously unheard of conclusion that “the universe is infinite, and an infinite number of worlds exist: each with a potential of having intelligent life.”<sup>187</sup> Along with being accepted as a theory, it became one of the central cosmological theories that caused a spur of major progress within the field of cosmology in the 1580s, when the Ptolemaic conception was favored, rather than the Copernican. By entirely discarding the Aristotelian idea of the “geostatic, geocentric, anthropocentric, and finite-because-spherical model of cosmos,” Bruno faced inevitable hostility from outsiders.<sup>188</sup> Indeed, one of the most important ways Bruno took a stand was through supporting Copernicus and his heliocentric universe.

However, Bruno was not a blind follower of Copernicus. Historians came to conclude that he was “not much of a Copernican,” as he took a stand by developing his own ideas and cosmological theories that were also theological in character.<sup>189</sup> In spite of the fact that cosmology and cognitive neuroscience were the areas of science in which Giordano Bruno left the most impact, he also branched out to mathematics, substantially focusing on geometric concepts and the unique research of the *ars deformationum* (art of deformation).<sup>190</sup> Additionally, he led a study that merged atomic physics and philosophy, coming to a scientific conclusion that the universe consists of “minima,” which are described by Bruno as particles of atoms.<sup>191</sup>

Bruno then ventured into an unrelated aspect of philosophy: ethics. He strongly believed and advocated humanist ideas, in comparison to religious or ascetical ethics. However, humanism approached atheism, and Bruno found himself facing accusations of heresy. His cosmology was described as having a “radically anti-Christian character.”<sup>192</sup> Bruno’s “heterodox tendencies” in his cosmological theories are what drew the Church’s consternation, but Bruno continued to take a stand through his work.<sup>193</sup> Bruno “attracted attention by the originality of his views and by his outspoken criticism of accepted theological doctrines.”<sup>194</sup> All around, Bruno seemed to be continuously receiving streams of dagger-like criticism. He was also highly critical of establishment figures; “Bruno thought most of his fellow friars were “asses,” one of the most enduring themes in his work and

---

186 Bruno, Giordano. *Giordano Bruno Nolano De l'infinito Et Mondi*.:All'illusterrissimo Signor Di Maunissero. Stampa in Venetia: J. Charlewood, 1584.

187 Ibid.

188 Ibid.

189 Powell, Corey S. “Did ‘Cosmos’ Pick the Wrong Hero?” *Discover Magazine* 10 Mar. 2014: n. pag. Web.

190 Aquilecchia, Giovanni. “Giordano Bruno.” *Encyclopædia Britannica*. Encyclopædia Britannica, Inc., 22 Dec. 2016. Web. Jan. 2017.

191 Gaglioti, Frank. “Giordano Bruno, Philosopher and Scientist, Burnt at the Stake 400 Years Ago.” *World Socialist Web Site*. International Committee of the Fourth International (ICFI), 16 Feb. 2000. Web. Jan 2017.

192 Blackwell, Richard J., and Robert de Lucca, eds. *Giordano Bruno: Cause, Principle and Unity: And Essays on Magic*: Cambridge University Press, 1998. Web.

193 Galileo Project. “Giordano Bruno (1548-1600).” *The Galileo Project | Christianity | Giordano Bruno*. Rice University, n.d. Web. Jan. 2017.

194 Turner, William. “Giordano Bruno.” *NewAdvent Catholic Encyclopedia*: Giordano Bruno. Robert Appleton Company, n.d. Web. Nov.-Dec. 2016.

life.”<sup>195</sup> Yet Bruno refused to cave in. Despite his unsuccessful attempt to receive exoneration, he managed to be appointed to a lectureship in Oxford.<sup>196</sup>

Without any hesitation, Bruno decided to make a series of bold and irreversible decisions that sharpened the defining edges of his opinions. Bruno “refused to recant his philosophical beliefs” in spite of being imprisoned for eight years, and therefore “his life stands as a testimony to the drive for knowledge and truth that marked the astonishing period of history known as the Renaissance.”<sup>197</sup> Calvinism, in particular, was a notion that he supported strongly. Yet after coming to the conclusion that the Reformed Church was as equally intolerant as the Catholic Church, he published a broadsheet in opposition to a Calvinist professor and reversed his advocacy of Calvinism. Both socially dominant ideas and religious authorities failed to deter Bruno from setting forth counterarguments and chasing his goals. Giorbran, the author of “Exploring A Many Worlds Universe”, stated that “The fortitude of Giordano...wizened and forged the resolve of men like Galileo who would weaken the power of the inquisition, eventually leading to a new light of human understanding shined by scientific discovery.”<sup>198</sup>

Yet the fact that his theories negated both the Catholic and the more contemporary Protestant faiths posed a risk of him being put to permanent silence.<sup>199</sup> Authorities associated with either of these faiths most certainly possessed the capability to do so. However, they needed valid, pivotal evidence that Bruno’s viewpoints were completely absurd – at least to the views of common people during the time. This, sadly, was what Giordano Bruno provided to the disapproving eyes of the public: especially by choosing to attack Aristotle publicly in *Centum et viginti articuli de natura et mundo adversus Peripateticos* and in the Arguments of the Fourth Dialogue – in which he states that “we [must] consider how mistaken was Aristotle in holding the belief that between bodies, however distant, there is a force of heaviness or lightness attracting ... whence arise flight and persecutions.” This stance of opposition towards Aristotle served as the evidence for the common people as of why he should be considered a “fabricator”. For example, it is written in the records of the Carmelite convent that he was known to have “chimerical imagining of novelties,”<sup>200</sup> and the Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy states that Bruno thought of “God [as] merely an unusually skillful magician, that the Holy Ghost is the soul of the world, [and] that the Devil will be saved.”<sup>201</sup> These church-based accounts are highly inaccurate and biased reflections of Bruno’s choices.

However, while striving to defend the ideas that he believed in, Bruno had voluntarily exposed himself and indulged himself in works that were clearly considered sinful at the time, choosing to face the apparent risks that were deemed extreme to most. For example, he managed to illegally acquire two forbidden commentaries by Erasmus and decided to openly discuss the Arian heresy, which discarded the idea of Christ’s divinity.<sup>202</sup> Also, Bruno’s anti-Aristotelian beliefs led to his

---

195 Miller, Laura. “The Heretic.” SALON. Salon Media Group, Inc., 24 Aug. 2008. Web. 11 Jan. 2017.

196 Gatti, Hilary. Essays on Giordano Bruno. Princeton, NJ : Princeton U, 2011. Print.

197 Gaglioti, Frank. “Giordano Bruno, Philosopher and Scientist, Burnt at the Stake 400 Years Ago.” World Socialist Web Site. International Committee of the Fourth International (ICFI), 16 Feb. 2000. Web. Jan 2017.

198 Giorbran, Gevin. “Giordano Bruno.” The Timeless Infinite Universe. N.p., 2005. Web. Jan. 2017.

199 See note 3 above.

200 See note 8 above.

201 Rabin, Sheila, “Nicolaus Copernicus”, The Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy. Stanford University, 30 Nov. 2004. Web. Jan. 2017.

202 See note 3 above.

arrest by the Inquisition, which was partially due to his own decision of having come to know Aristotle's philosophy in the Averroistic version, a philosophy that was quite controversial at the time.<sup>203</sup>

Ultimately, there was a final, fatal decision that was rooted in extraordinary intentions, but turned out to be ultimately foolish as it consequently led to his own execution: abandoning Giovanni Mocenigo. Mocenigo was an affluent man from whom Bruno had received patronage in 1591. He had wanted Bruno to educate him on the topics that Bruno had previously lectured about, as they succeeded to intrigue him tremendously; he assured that all would be in return for a rather aristocratic position in Venice under his patronage. Despite Bruno's effort to conform to Mocenigo's expectations, however, Bruno's teachings on the art of memory were completely unexpected and uncomfortably unconventional for Mocenigo. The height of his frustration rose to its peak when Bruno decided that he would be better off in Frankfurt with new publications, thus abandoning Mocenigo. Aware of Bruno's preparation for "betrayal," Mocenigo decided that Bruno must be turned over to the Venetian Inquisition in May of 1592 for having heretical theories.<sup>204</sup>

Although Bruno did not waver in his opinions and continued to take pride in his theories in the face of the grimmest possible circumstances, he did not have the ability to find his way out of this incident. The Inquisition, which had been thoroughly informed of Bruno's list of heretical convictions, incarcerated Bruno in the jail of Sant'Uffizio for the following seven years of Roman trial. Eventually, the church delivered his death sentence on February 8th of 1600. After all, Bruno responded in a rather defiant way – suggesting to the Inquisition that "perhaps [their] fear in passing judgment on [him] is greater than [his] in receiving [the death sentence]."<sup>205</sup> Bruno was subsequently tortured with brutality by the Venetian Inquisition but refused to recant.

Fortunately, the effect of Bruno's philosophy did not diminish after his capture by the Venetian Inquisition. From the initial conviction by the Inquisition in 1592 to the very end of his life eight years later, he denied having any specific interest in theological matters and continued to strongly assert the philosophical character of his speculation during his seven years of trial. Then, like moths swarming around a bright light, inspired liberal thinkers began to absorb and support the clearly depicted ideals of philosophical and religious tolerance in Bruno's philosophy by actively analyzing and utilizing his theories to assist the advancements in their own works of philosophy. Friedrich Heinrich Jacobi, an influential German philosopher who shared the field with Bruno, severely disapproved of the pantheistic predisposition associated with Bruno.<sup>206</sup>

Bruno became a living example of fighting unjust repression for the freedom of thought and being able to hold autonomous viewpoints both religiously and academically. Bruno's writing and publishing of *Il Candelaio* (Candlebearer) further intensified the statements of his viewpoint, as it was a vernacular comedy consisting of an evocative portrayal of the contemporary Neapolitan society that was widely regarded as a protest against the societal and moral corruption of the time.<sup>207</sup> In fact, Giordano Bruno and his ideologies contributed to spurring the European liberal movements of the nineteenth century – like the Italian Risorgimento – which was a movement for a political, national unity that served as a symbol of free thought. Although he was "not a political man," he

203 See note 1 above.

204 Aquilecchia, Giovanni. "Giordano Bruno." Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica, Inc., 22 Dec. 2016. Web. Jan. 2017

205 Ibid.

206 Gatti, Hilary. Essays on Giordano Bruno. Princeton, NJ : Princeton U, 2011. Print.

207 Ibid.

nevertheless continued to take a stand against blind ascription to Church doctrine and a stand for his unusual but enduring worldview.<sup>208</sup> According to Hilary Gatti's Essays on Giordano Bruno published by the Princeton University Press, it is an undeniable fact that "Bruno[']s ideas] can be found permeating the ardently undisciplined thought of the theosophical societies of the period."<sup>209</sup>

However, Bruno's taking a stand led to deleterious consequences. For one, Bruno seemed to have lacked respect and was not at all hesitant to be brutally outspoken about subjects that he held opinions on. He tended towards "avant-garde" and fringe beliefs, which led to others being less forgiving of ideas that were overtly outlandish at the time.<sup>210</sup> It has even been attested in documents such as Frances Yates's Giordano Bruno and the Hermetic Tradition that Bruno "genuinely lacked a sense of practical judgment and common sense and did not hesitate in attacking anyone who opposed him or his thoughts, alienating fellow professors and intellectuals in Paris due to his arrogance and self-proclaimed superiority."<sup>211</sup> Furthermore, it is highly possible that he had aggravated people even more than he already had, as he composed poems that "belittled dogmatic clergymen and superstitious beliefs during his times with sarcasm and satire."<sup>212</sup>

Secondly, there are several reasonably controversial aspects as to Bruno's works that might have led to Bruno being ostracized by the public. For instance, he had been criticized for parts of his works that are still controversial to this day, most of which are materials emphasizing the effect of occult and magic, including clairvoyance, fraud, and witchcraft. Bruno's theories of magic emphasized bonds of energy, which could be reinforced through talismans.<sup>213</sup> His *Cantus Circaeus* covers most of his beliefs, whether they were plagiarized or not.<sup>214</sup> Thirdly, when he was asked to "abandon his obstinacy," he refused, taking a stand even when faced with execution.<sup>215</sup>

Giordano Bruno's role during the Renaissance deserves proper awareness. He is a "free-thinker," who for standing up for what he not only believed but also knew through reason, not faith, eventually had a crater on the moon named after him.<sup>216</sup> Bruno drove the society's focus away from its rigid bond to the Roman Catholic faith, opening the doors to the exploration of humanism. He can be considered a "martyr to free thought."<sup>217</sup> Bruno's contributions to science and the history of ideas would have been impossible were it not for his willingness to take a stand and to be "obstinate."<sup>218</sup>

Also, it is important to understand that even though Bruno had stepped across barriers of social norms on multiple occasions, it does not negate the fact that he stepped up to confront the overpowering dominance of the Aristotelian worldview and the Peripatetic prejudices of the then-con-

208 Rowland, Ingrid D. *Giordano Bruno: Philosopher/heretic*. Chicago: U of Chicago, 2009. Print.

209 Gatti, Hilary. *Essays on Giordano Bruno*. Princeton, NJ : Princeton U, 2011. Print.

210 MacLachlan, Lawrence. "The Trials of Giordano Bruno: 1592 & 1600." *Giordano Bruno Trials (1592 & 1600): Selected Links*. N.p, n.d. Web. Jan. 2017

211 Yates, FrancesA. *Giordano Bruno and the Hermetic Tradition*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1964. Print.

212 Birx, James H. "Giordano Bruno." Harvard University. November 11, 1997. The Harbinger. Giordano Bruno. Web. Jan. 2017

213 Warnock, Christopher. "Astrology & Magic of Giordano Bruno." *Astrology and Magic of Giordano Bruno*. N.p., 2002. Web. 05 Jan. 2017

214 Bruno, Giordano, 1591. *Cantus Circaeus*. Aicurzio (Milano): Gruppo Editoriale Castel Negrino, 2005. Print.

215 Linder, Douglas O. "The Trials of Giordano Bruno." *Giordano Bruno Trial*. N.p., 2015. Web. Jan. 2017

216 Acocella, Joan. "The Forbidden World." *The New Yorker*. The New Yorker, 16Aug. 2016. Web. 07 Jan. 2017

217 Pogge, Richard W., and Paul H. Shuch, Ph. D. "SETI Editorial: The Folly of Giordano Bruno." *SETI Editorial: The Folly of Giordano Bruno*. SETI League, n.d. Web. Jan. 2017

218 Cavendish, Richard. "Giordano Bruno Executed." *History Today*. N.p., 2000. Web. Jan. 2017

temporary physicists and astronomers, led the advancement of various areas of academic studies that he endlessly pursued despite the unaccepting circumstances, and most importantly, drove the society's focus away from its rigid bond to the Roman Catholic faith, opening doors to the exploration of humanism that propelled the growth of the humanity's base of knowledge into that of today's.<sup>219</sup><sup>38</sup>

In *The Expulsion of the Triumphant Beast*, Bruno shows how he believed that knowledge should never be distorted or used for selfish or greedy gains; promoting knowledge for knowledge's sake—boldly taking a stand against the Catholic Church.<sup>220</sup> A key figure of the Renaissance, Bruno was also resolute and passionate, writing, "I do not think that the snows of Mt. Caucasus or Riphæus would suffice to cool my passion."<sup>221</sup> Despite his predicament, Bruno remained true to what he knew, stating to his Catholic Church judge Jesuit Cardinal Robert Bellarmine that 'I neither ought to recant nor will I'<sup>222</sup> – "for anyone who dares to voice dangerous ideas and risk imprisonment or exile, Giordano Bruno remains a hero."<sup>223</sup> It wasn't that Bruno consciously sought a world in which religion became irrelevant, replaced by science. In fact, Bruno's cosmology and worldview remained spiritual in nature; Bruno was no scientist.<sup>224</sup> It was that Bruno stood up for what he believed in, even though those beliefs ended up getting him executed.

## References

### Primary Sources

Birx, James H. "Giordano Bruno." Harvard University. 11 Nov. 1997. The Harbinger. Giordano Bruno. Web. Jan. 2017. <<http://www.theharbinger.org/xvi/971111/birx.html>>. James Birx is an American anthropologist and was a visiting scholar at Harvard University twice, one of which was during 1997-1998. One of the lectures was on Giordano Bruno, extending from his achievements onto the analysis of numerous themes in Bruno's works and ideas: eternity and infinity, relativity and evolution, pantheistic orientation, and much more. The organized analysis of Bruno's various ideas helped clarify the greater purpose behind Bruno's thoughts.

Blackwell, Richard J., and Robert de Lucca, eds. *Giordano Bruno: Cause, Principle and Unity: And Essays on Magic*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1998. Web. This translation of Bruno's work was a very interesting and helpful read. The interpretations of magical events were specifically enlightening, coming from a primary source, as particularly damning evidence of Bruno's heresy. In this primary source, Pogge and de Lucca argues

219 See note 4 above.

220 Bruno, Giordano. *Spaccio Della Bestia Trionfante, Or, The Expulsion of the Triumphant Beast*. Trans. John Toland and William Moorhead. Paris:n.p., 1707. Print.

221 Bruno, Giordano. *On the Heroic Frenzies: A Translation of De Gli Eroici Furori*. Trans. Ingrid D. Rowland and Eugenio Canone. Toronto: U of Toronto, 2013. Print.

222 Greene, Nick. "Giordano Bruno: Scientist and Philosopher." *About. com Education*. N.p., 25 Aug. 2016. Web. Dec. 2016

223 Merritt, Stephanie. "Bruno the Brave." *Aeon Essays Magazine* n.d.: n. pag. Web. Jan. 2017

224 Rosenau, Josh. "Why Did Cosmos Focus on Giordano Bruno?" | NCSE. "Why Did Cosmos Focus on Giordano Bruno?" NCSE, n.d. Web. Jan. 2017

against some basic philosophic assumptions, and I found this perspective to be critical in my writing.

Bruno, Giordano. *Cantus Circaeus*. Aicurzio (Milano): Gruppo Editoriale Castel Negrino, 2005. Print. *Cantus Circaeus*, also known as *Incantation of Circe*, is Giordano Bruno's elaboration (written in 1500) on *ars memoriae* with the factor of magic, serving as a chronological sequel to *De Umbris Idearum*. I used this primary source as this was a thorough evidence as to how Bruno's beliefs and theories were rooted in interconnected disciplines, particularly cognitive science, fictional concepts such as magic, and cosmology.

Bruno, Giordano. "De Umbris Idearum." *Writings of Giordano Bruno (1548-1600)*. Ed. Joseph H. Peterson. N.p., n.d. Web. <<http://www.esotericarchives.com/brunoumbris.htm>>. This webpage is an online archive of Giordano Bruno's writing, collected by Joseph H. Peterson. This collection of primary sources, all but one in Latin, were tremendously valuable sources as they are the key works of Bruno's in the 1582-1583 period. *Ars Memoriae* and *De Umbris Idearum* are the major sources but other works, such as *Cantus Circaeus*, *De Magia*, *Theses De Magia*, *Explicatio Triginti Sigillorum*, *Ars Reminiscendi: Triginta Sigilli*, *Magia Mathematica*, and *De Vinculis in Genere* have impressive ideas on mathematics, magic, philosophy, and neurological theories.

Bruno, Giordano. *Giordano Bruno Nolano De L'infinito Universo Et Mundi*.: All'illusterrissimo Signor Di Maunissiero. Stampato in Venetia: J. Charlewood, 1584. [Http://www.positivetheism.org/hist/brunoiuw0.htm#IUW0III](http://www.positivetheism.org/hist/brunoiuw0.htm#IUW0III). Web. This work by Giordano Bruno tells of the infinite worlds within worlds and the probability of other worlds. This primary source efficiently explains that this is possible through a unified conception of God as a force of nature that is all that exists in so many dynamics as to be considered infinite universal truth.

Bruno, Giordano. *On the Heroic Frenzies: A Translation of De Gli Eroici Furori*. Trans. Ingrid D. Rowland and Eugenio Canone. Toronto: U of Toronto, 2013. Print. *De Gli Eroici Furori*, otherwise known as *The Heroic Frenzies*, is a primary source – written by Giordano Bruno in 1585. This particular translation, done by Paulo Eugene Memmo, Jr in 1964, was improved with supplementary notes. This book starts out with two introductory parts – *Argument of the Nolan* and *The Apology of the Nolan* – before the first and second parts with five dialogues in each. I used this book as a primary source which proved Bruno's extensive use of Neoplatonic imagery and his argument of urging humanity to vanquish truth and virtue with "attainment of union with the Infinite One by the human soul".

Bruno, Giordano. *Spaccio Della Bestia Trionfante, Or, The Expulsion of the Triumphant Beast*. Trans. John Toland and William Moorhead. Paris: n.p., 1707. Print. In this book, Bruno spins together the many fabrications spoon-fed to the people by the Catholic Church and delivers an impactful retaliation indicative of his work. In this primary source, many themes blend together cohesively and make a compelling case for his wisdom and notoriety in the circumstances around his execution.

MacLachlan, Lawrence. "The Trials of Giordano Bruno: 1592 & 1600." *Giordano Bruno Trials (1592 & 1600): Selected Links*. N.p., n.d. Web. Jan. 2017. <<http://law2.umkc.edu/faculty/projects/ftrials/brunolinks.html>>. This online entry, written by Lawrence MacLachlan, consists of details on Giordano Bruno's trials 1592 and 1600, effectively putting together a list of propositions that Bruno renounced as well as expanding on the procedure of the Roman

Inquisition. This secondary source, supported with several primary sources as reliable evidences, was used for this paper as an additional collection of sources to demonstrate how Bruno's trial was justified in the Vatican Archives and the Catholic viewpoint.

## Secondary Sources

Acocella, Joan. "The Forbidden World." *The New Yorker*. The New Yorker, 16 Aug. 2016. Web. 07 Jan. 2017. Joan Acocella is the author of "Mark Morris" and "Creating Hysteria: Women and Multiple Personality Disorder", as well as an editor for the New York Times. In this particular article, Acocella provided detailed chronological summary of Giordano Bruno's life as well as a new perspective, juxtaposing Bruno's interdisciplinary philosophy with a "choral exultation," which elaborated on a facet of Bruno's identity that helped formed the core concept of the paper with a secondary source.

Aquilecchia, Giovanni. "Giordano Bruno." Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica, Inc., 22 Dec. 2016. Web. Jan. 2017. <<https://www.britannica.com/biography/Giordano-Bruno>>. This encyclopedia entry explicates Giordano's Bruno's life with substantial details in parts separated in a chronological manner. It also has a section that analyzes Bruno's influence as a scholar and provides a subjective view that "modern scholars are divided as to the chief significance of his work [due to the] variety of his interests". This secondary source helped me in that it gave an alternate viewpoint that was based on the grounds that the wide range of Bruno's interests served as a weakness rather than a strength.

Blum, Paul Richard, and Peter Henneveld. *Giordano Bruno: An Introduction*. Amsterdam: Rodopi, 2012. Print. Blum does a stellar job breaking down the meat of Bruno's proclamations to its bare bones, exposing the raw truth against the common truth of his time. He also recognizes Bruno's personality with a very scrutinizing and analytical approach, which provided me with another perspective in writing the paper.

Cavendish, Richard. "Giordano Bruno Executed." *History Today*. N.p., 2000. Web. Jan. 2017. <<http://www.historytoday.com/richard-cavendish/giordano-bruno-executed>>. This web article, written by Richard Cavendish in the *History Today*, details the key events and achievements of Bruno's career in a brief summary. This secondary source was of great help in writing the paper as it efficiently organizes Bruno's aim and central ideas. Bruno's interests and studies were spread out in multiple fields and perspectives in a very haphazard way, but this article concludes that it was rooted in "Hermetic texts, mystery religions and occult speculations of the classical world".

Gaglioti, Frank. "Giordano Bruno, Philosopher and Scientist, Burnt at the Stake 400 Years Ago." World Socialist Web Site. International Committee of the Fourth International (ICFI), 16 Feb. 2000. Web. Jan. 2017. <<https://www.wsws.org/en/articles/2000/02/brun-f16.html>>. This web article, published by the International Committee of the Fourth International (ICFI) and written by Frank Gaglioti, provides a valuable insight on Bruno's significant milestones, accomplishments, failures as well as opinions of others on Bruno both in the 1580s and in the modern day. I used this secondary source as it provided a very comprehensive outline of Bruno's actions in multiple fields in different times, especially related to cosmology and his "view of the universe".

Galileo Project. "Giordano Bruno (1548-1600)." The Galileo Project | Christianity | Giordano Bruno. Rice University, n.d. Web. Jan. 2017. <<http://galileo.rice.edu/chr/bruno.html>>. This article is a part of the Gallileo Project, sponsored by the Rice University to collect sources of information on Galileo Galilei – who holds a connection to Bruno in terms of their links to Christianity and the Inquisition. Bruno is listed along with historical figures such as Cardinal Bellarmine and Maffeo Barberini as a significant figure holding a connection to Galileo – especially as a Neapolitan polymath. I used this secondary source to obtain a perspective on Bruno from other notable historical figures, which differs in several ways compared to those from modern historians.

Gatti, Hilary. Essays on Giordano Bruno. Princeton, NJ: Princeton U, 2011. Print. This contribution by Hilary Gatti is an eye opening collection of essays surrounding the figure Giordano Bruno, by these accounts aptly recognized as a cosmologist. From this secondary source, I was able to glean countless tidbits of information on Bruno's life and work, including the controversy around accusations of heresy and ultimately his execution at the hands of the Church.

Giorbran, Gevin. "Giordano Bruno." The Timeless Infinite Universe. N.p., 2005. Web. Jan. 2017. <<http://everythingforever.com/bruno.htm>>. This collection of web articles were written by Gevin Giorbran, the author of "Exploring AMany Worlds Universe" and two other books on cosmological theories. Giorbran's theory is that the universe will end with the time at an 'absolute zero' with the expansion of space being flattened out, which bears many similarities to Bruno's early models on an infinite multiverse. This collection of secondary sources, dedicated solely to Bruno, helped me write this paper as it detailed on the astrophysical aspects of Bruno's studies and theories.

Greene, Nick. "Giordano Bruno: Scientist and Philosopher." About.com Education. N.p., 25 Aug. 2016. Web. Dec. 2016. <<http://space.about.com/cs/astronomyhistory/a/giordanobruno.htm>>. This web article, written by Nick Greene, a space and astronomy expert, focuses on Giordano Bruno's actions and conflicts both socially and academically as a scientist and a philosopher. This secondary source zooms in on Bruno's consistent conflict with the Church – both personally and academically – which allowed me to further gather information on the basis of the incompatible ideologies.

Kreis, Steven. "Giordano Bruno, 1548-1600." The History Guide: Lectures on Modern European Intellectual History. N.p., 13 Apr. 2012. Web. Jan. 2017. <<http://www.historyguide.org/intellect/bruno.html>>. This brief web article was written by Dr. Steven Kreis, who has a Ph.D. degree from the University of Missouri-Columbia. This secondary source consisted of several very useful referrals to other documents and archives as well as a mention of a play named Giordano Bruno and The Field of Flowers being made – providing a broad range of secondary sources to further use in the paper.

Linder, Douglas O. "The Trial of Giordano Bruno." Giordano Bruno Trial. N.p., 2015. Web. Jan. 2017. <<http://law2.umkc.edu/faculty/projects/ftrials/bruno/brunoaccount.html>>. This web article was written by Douglas O. Linder, who is an author, narrator, professor of law, and a historian. Linder's article details how Bruno's public reputation and bold opinions contributed to the four main concerns that led to his condemnation by the Roman inquisitors. I used this source to elaborate on the critical factors behind Bruno's fate that accumulated and worsened throughout his life.

Merritt, Stephanie. "Bruno the Brave." *Aeon Essays Magazine* n.d.: n. pag. Web. Jan. 2017. <<https://aeon.co/essays/why-giordano-bruno-is-still-a-free-speech-hero-today>>. This article in a digital non-profit magazine was written by an English writer and novelist, Stephanie Merrit. Merrit is also an editor of *The Observer* and an author of a best-selling series of books on Giordano Bruno. I used this secondary source as not only did it include a chronological overview of Bruno's career like many others but it also explained how Bruno is being portrayed as in modern studies – especially how they "tilted the balance back towards Bruno's role in the development of scientific thought".

Miller, Laura. "The Heretic." *SALON*. Salon Media Group, Inc., 24 Aug. 2008. Web. 11 Jan. 2017. <[http://www.salon.com/2008/08/25/bruno\\_2/](http://www.salon.com/2008/08/25/bruno_2/)>. This web article, written by Laura Miller in *The Salon*, touches on both Bruno's achievements and shortcomings with a more approachable tone. It thoroughly explains how Bruno's magnificent ideas and potential crumbled with unconventional behavior and conflicting theories, and how several of the theories held to be the truth for centuries whereas others were undeniably odd. I used this source to prove the effect that Bruno's innate nature of being a misfit had on his ultimate downfall.

Pogge, Richard W., and Paul H. Shuch, Ph. D. "SETI Editorial: The Folly of Giordano Bruno." *SETI Editorial: The Folly of Giordano Bruno*. SETI League, n.d. Web. Jan. 2017. <<http://www.setileague.org/editor/brunoalt.htm>>. This transcript of an article by professor Richard Pogge of Ohio State University describes the ambiguity of Giordano Bruno's conviction on charges of heresy. It further explores the possibilities – especially in terms of Copernicanism – and discusses Bruno's innate self-destructive tendency. I used this secondary source to gain a deeper understanding of possible reasons behind Bruno's downward spiral to the period of exile between 1576 and 1591 and the final conviction.

Powell, Corey S. "Did 'Cosmos' Pick the Wrong Hero?" *Discover Magazine* 10 Mar. 2014: n. pag. Web. I found this article a refreshing perspective that calls into question the nature of Bruno's contribution to history as deserving of the credit under any other name. He is often regarded as a martyr to astronomy, however, Powell argues in this reliable, thoroughly written secondary source that Bruno was naturally a theologian before a scientist of physical astronomy.

Rabin, Sheila. "Nicolaus Copernicus." *Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy*. Stanford University, 30 Nov. 2004. Web. Jan. 2017. <<https://plato.stanford.edu/entries/copernicus/>>. This source gave an insightful illustration of Nicolaus Copernicus, a crucial jumping point in my research. I could not adequately discuss Giordano Bruno without first understanding the philosophical groundwork in this secondary source that had been laid out by Copernicus, the man who inspired many of Bruno's theories.

Rosenau, Josh. "Why Did *Cosmos* Focus on Giordano Bruno? | NCSE." *Why Did *Cosmos* Focus on Giordano Bruno?* NCSE, n.d. Web. Jan. 2017. <<https://ncse.com/blog/2014/03/why-did-cosmos-focus-giordano-bruno-0015457>>. This web article was written by Josh Rosenau, an evolutionary biologist and the Programs and Policy Director at NCSE. This secondary source introduces a unique viewpoint in that it alludes to a quote from a theologian who defends the common misrepresentation of Bruno along with a referral to a television show named *Cosmos* that covered Bruno's history. I used this article to include a different viewpoint on the "longdebunked and historically-discredited metaphor of warfare between science and religion" that Bruno was deeply bound to for the entirety of his life.

Rowland, Ingrid D. Giordano Bruno: Philosopher/heretic. Chicago: U of Chicago, 2009. Print.

Rowland poignantly titled her book after Giordano Bruno's two most recognizable claims to fame, as both a philosopher and a heretic. In this secondary source, the author gives Bruno the due credit he is often denied compared to his contemporaries, such as Galileo and Shakespeare, and finally gives depth to his history.

Turner, William. "Giordano Bruno." NewAdvent Catholic Encyclopedia: Giordano Bruno.

RobertAppleton Company, n.d. Web. Nov.-Dec. 2016. <<http://www.newadvent.org/cathen/03016a.htm>>. This entry in the NewAdvent Catholic Encyclopedia gives a chronological summary of Giordano Bruno's life with a special focus on connections to the Catholic church and neo-Platonists. Although Bruno's life was indeed oriented around the conflict between religion and science, a more scrutinizing analysis made this secondary source stand out.

Warnock, Christopher. "Astrology and Magic of Giordano Bruno." Astrology and Magic of Giordano Bruno. N.p., 2002. Web. 05 Jan. 2017. <<http://www.renaissanceastrology.com/bruno.html>>. This web article, centered on Giordano Bruno's theories and lectures on magic, is written by Christopher Warnock, a Renaissance astrological magician/traditional astrologer with an M.A. in Renaissance and early modern history from the University of St. Andrews. I used this source to describe Bruno's extensive opinions in magic, which are supported by Warnock with primary sources such as quotes from *Theses de Magia* and Bruno's emphasis of *vincula*.

Witkoski, Michael. "Giordano Bruno." Great Lives From History: The Renaissance & Early Modern Era, 1454-1600 (2008): 1. Biography Reference Center. Web. 28 Dec. 2016. Witkoski provides a wealth of information regarding philosophy's most inquisitive minds. This secondary source was an indispensable asset to my work, as it chronicles history's greatest contributions to modern philosophical thought with biographical additions to give context to relevant works per their respective authors.

Yates, FrancesA. Giordano Bruno and the Hermetic Tradition. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1964. Print. In this work, Yates explores Hermeticism as it relates to Renaissance philosophy. In no small way did this deeper background research through a particular secondary source contribute to my overall understanding of Giordano Bruno and the influences around him.

# Revolutions, Coups and Social Equality

Joan H.C. Chen  
International School of Beijing  
Beijing, China

---

## Introduction

In this paper, we are to review about revolution, both political and rebellious revolution and the effect of coups to an economy and relations of a nation as well as the evaluation of democracy. Powell, Jonathan (2012) describe a revolution as being a sudden, violent overthrow of an existing government by a revolutionary group. Coups ideally are meant to transform a non-democratic government to a democratic government. However, Acemoglu and Robinson (2006) describe most revolutions as being a plot to change most democratic governments to dictatorship mostly because military leadership conducts most coups.

Social equality is the state of national affairs of a nation whereby the administration ensures that all the individuals within a certain society have the same status of elements like civil rights, freedom of speech, property and equal access to the governments' resources which includes health, education and other social resources.

Over the past years, many coups have been as a result of social inequality. (Acemoglu, Daron, and James A. Robinson. 2006) Explain that inequality is major catalysts to a nation's democracy instability. These take place when given community receive little or no share of the resources thereby diminishing their support for the current regime. These include the leaders to those misrepresented communities who at times cause chaotic sceneries that may even call for military interventions when the chaos is uncontrolled. For instance, several military takeovers in Latin America like Brazil in the past decades mainly due to social inequality.

## Political coup risks

Coup risks is an understanding of clear and proximate plots of overthrows as well as coup-proofing approaches that governments implement to avoid these overthrows. Revolutions play significant roles in learning the theories of war and democracy. Speculative comprehension into factors that influence administrations towards upheaval vulnerability offers the basis for an enhanced

measure based on the power of public civilization, justice and the past experiences of revolution. (Colgan, Jeff, 2012)

Coup risks play a significant role in that they assist the administration in halting down factors such as domestic economic chaos and internal social conflicts which can lead to military intervention. Coup risks play a significant role in democratic transitions and consolidations. These indeed will indeed reassure the regime's position of a ruling which will alarm the respective administrations to respond by executing overthrow sealing techniques, for example, social stacking to subordinate the army. Leaders tend to stack the military with advocates rather than on merit-based standard officers; some leaders will even execute the top official merit-based officers to prevent potential challenges from developing. For instance, in Iraq, Saddam Hussein killed the first generals who were prosperous in warfare to avert them from utilizing their fame to contest the administration.

At the point when the control systems fizzle, the outcomes of high overthrow hazard can be lamentable; not so many revolutions have entailed slaughter except for the latest coup attempt in Turkey where more than 2000 civilians lost their lives, and others were injured. According to (Zimmerman 1983, 241) most coups involve strong vehemence as well as killing of affiliates of the administration who are trying to contest the regime.

The real occurrence of revolution may be little or high, in that case, coups risks cannot be measured exclusively regarding the number of new military conspiracies whether the army had the chances for beginning a coup. Rebellion is a reflection of structural, background characteristics of the administration, humanity/ civilization and administrative culture. The presence of Initiates assist the admirations to decide the correct planning of a revolution in governments that suffer a higher coup risk. (Marinov, Nikolay, and Hein Goemans. 2014) Valuate that both the structural and triggering causes of revolutions as elements that are connected through general appliances that are used by the military to intervene political system. The guidelines that assist in distinguishing between organizational and promoting causes are: organizational reasons of revolution incline to transit gradually. Whereas the generating bases can be quite inconsistent, structural bases have a tendency of being more profoundly installed in the administrative framework than generating causes and generating objects incline not to precipitate coup in the absence of political reasons.

Results propose that basic conceptualization of revolution hazard give an unmistakable favorable position to anticipating overthrows and results identified with transformations. The primary overthrow chance measure is compelling in that it adequately predicts counterbalancing which is a common conceptualization of upset risk.

Over the recent years, most coups are conducted mostly due to military interventions in politics. The recent coup being in Turkey on July (2016) where the armed forces attempted a coup to grab control of the government led by President Recep Erdogan. Major rebellions being conducted by the military leads to the question of what are the primary motives for military interventions in politics.

## **Military intervention in politics**

Military coups remain a reality despite strengthening consensus over the merits of democracy on a global scale. The motives that drive the armed forces of a nation to take over political rule allegedly to protect national unity outside their rule of law have provoked the questioning of a

genuine democracy if not transiting to dictatorship. Army interventions in the form of an overthrow is the most risky form of the armed forces having an impact on the policy development (Biddle, Stephen D. 2004). The military uses either a jurisdictional or executive power not only to modify the supremacies of the administration but also to employ rule over other concerned parties.

Desch, Michael C. (1999) describe a military intervention to politics as a harsh and rigid task since the results are uncertain as can overwhelmingly cause various effects on the nation's structural factors like political, economic, social, ethnic, cultural and international sets. They continue to explain the primary reasons for army involvements are: societal and economic change. Colgan, Jeff. (2012) Argues that the intensity of army interference decreases with an increase of social, economic development. An increase of societal and economic transition have cause high urbanization, increased literacy levels and an increase in mass participation to social activities. Social and economic development generates attentiveness of political events and calls for political actions. Industrialization and increased literacy levels reduce the susceptibility to military interference since the increased societal, and economic convolution puts the civil authority beyond the assistance of the military. Gorman (1967) states that army involvements take place in nations with lower economic status. Economically out-dependent countries that are not independent.

Political development. The expanded separation and specialization of political structures and the extensive socialization of political culture determines the need for the armed forces intervention in the political system of a nation. Political decay is a significant symptom that influences military interventions to respond to the deteriorated political structure that undermines the civil authority and democratic values. (Finer, S.E, 1976).

Internal conflict by social conflict. Ethnic and other social rivalries in a nation may result in the military interventions especially if the results of the conflict are fatal. Morrison and Stevenson (1972) argues that the more the number and social differing qualities of the communities the, the more the general unsteadiness is. Potential division and shifting alliances generate the likelihood of an army intervention especially if the situation has caused global interest that including the human rights involvement.

Belkin and Schafer (2003) illustrate that military coups attempts remain apprehensive with their reasons and with the contributing factor of their accomplishment. They also describe military interventions to trying to overthrow the current administration as an obstacle to democracy, and they are the leading cause of a democratic transition. A study case by Thyme and Powell (2014) shows that most political and military revolutions considerably contribute and promote democratic transitions either immediately after an attempted or a successful overthrow or even after some years. To comprehend the military overthrows we need to discuss the alleged democracy that most armies tend to excuse themselves in an upheaval

## **Evolution to democracy and Democratic Consolidation**

Traversa, Federico (2014) describe the evolution of democracy as being a change from a controlling political framework to a semi-vote based system political system. Regilme Jr, Salvador Santino F( 2013). Explains democratic solidification as the procedure by which new vote based system develops in a way that is impossible to lapse to the dictatorship without outer power. For

an actual democracy evolution to take place, it must meet three basic criteria which are: (Traversa, Federico et al. (2014))

- Competitive races must be the guideline course to the political office, that is, there must be a competitive democratic vote for the parliament as well as for the president. Fraud and forceful elections do not decide the aftermath of independent elections.
- There must be a general social responsibility among the administration and the citizens of a particular nation. Exclusion of citizenship is often neglected normally since it is difficult to inaugurate an exact onset at which omissions determine the rate of a democratic system.
- Democracies necessarily deliver assurances of customary civil rights for all that is including the minority rights which must be protected.

Democracy consolidation requires the necessity of going beyond the procedural evaluations of democracy to more normative ideas about being equivalently governed by all members of the group. Four factors facilitate democratic consolidation which is: the nation's experience of the transformation, the country's economic system, the political system and the political culture the countries.

Boix, Carles. (2011). Describe Uncertainty as a feature that determines democratic transition. The way toward setting up a vote based system is an advancement of developing and managing improbability. In a dictatorial administration, particular groups typically the military have the capability of overriding a whenever the outcome of a engagement is in conflicting their benefits. This rule is conflicts the democratic governance where no group can intervene whenever issues of conflicts disrupt their self-alleged comforts which typically means that all clusters in a democratic regime must focus their welfares to uncertainty.

### Evaluating democracy consolidation

To accurately define a consolidated government, we need to assess the operation of an individual system by the freedom values definitions. The evaluation of democracy consolidation is done using three approaches which include: behavioral grounds, attitudinal basics, and structural foundations.

### Behavioral Foundation

The behavioral foundation of democracy stability is typically done by observation of the behavior of a particular group, the fact and the non-factual elements of the group. Researchers who try to resolve the life anticipation of new or transiting democracies searches the surface of politics for signs of common ailment that may cause to jeopardizing the current regime in the administration. (Maxwell, Kenneth 1986). The scholars frequently look for instances of anti-democratic behavior. Democracy is usually in trouble when the researchers come across political actors who engage in undemocratic action. In contrast, democracy appears safe when the political players follow to the guidelines of the traditional game.

The rules of a favorite game are not illustrated but according to (Wright, Joseph. 2009) should be categorized according to the catalog of actions that violate the basic rules of the traditional game. These include:

The use of violence which involves political rivalry within a substantial self-ruled framework. The political players who trail their objectives by force intrude upon the most original custom of democratic rule. These are usually perpetuated by leaders who use their authority to assassinate their rivals, destruction of property, use of hate speech and organizing ethnic riots indicate that the constitutional prevention is far from consolidated.

The contravention of power. It is rational to entail that profuse democracy involves the rule of law rather than the rule of man. (Mainwaring, Scott, and Donald Share. 1986) Illustrates that Democratic administrators must decline the routine of placing themselves above the law of which unless they do, the government they control over may not qualify to be independent. The way the elected bureaucrats exercise their authority is controversial ad consequential not just for social equality but also for the stability of the democracy. As (Gift, Thomas, and Daniel Krcmaric. 2015) states, for a democracy to be united, the political players must adhere to the constitutional laws as well as the commonly accepted models of political conduct.

Rejection of elections, these occur when administrative parties decline to participate in democratic elections, try to control the elections or do not accept the results of independent elections. The political parties then mobilize institutional protests by trying to take over the elected establishments by power. These indicate that democracy is being interfered with by the political parties. These are some of the techniques that scholars use to evaluate democracy consolidation on a behavioral basis.

### **Attitudinal basis.**

In attitudinal form, the scholars do not monitor the surface; they evaluate whether the political player's standards and cognitive elements conform to the requirements of democratic control. In the official rationale (Wright, Joseph et al.) describes that no democracy inserted into a joint agreement has ever broken down. They further explain that democracies can survive despite the low levels of popular support since even mass support of democracy cannot prevent the emergencies of crisis. These imply that anchoring the estimations of majority rules system alliance in mainstream authenticity may offer an approach to great complexities. Authenticity represents the way of majority rule solidification, thus causing a representation of equal conditions of social equality alliance

The cognitive deviations of the new democratic consolidation in social science define the establishments as interconnecting and strengthening arrangements of anticipations. Some conceptualization of independent alliance adopts similar perspective of equality when they define institutionalism by the political player's insights. According to (Rustow, dank wet, (1995)) the political actor's essential information, as well as administrative ideals as well as their primary beliefs, may also have a significant contributory impact on administration alliance. It is then rational to presume that democracy will last if all the key players expect it to last. The biased sense of self-perception may, therefore, provide crucial data and information for all observers engrossed in establishing objective likelihoods of democracy survival.

### **Structural foundation of democracy**

The scholars evaluate the economic and social developments within the societies. (Boix, Carles. Et al (2011)) Explain that the levels of economic development have extreme effects on the

likelihood that democracy will last. According to their estimations, nations with an income below 1000\$ are extremely fragile to democracy consolidation while those with an average of 62,000\$ have a higher probability of their freedom to last long.

These suggest that the altitudes of economic growth turn into significant occasions for the association of a democracy however they do not determine the providence of political administrations.

It is, therefore, reasonable to assume that according to scholarly valuations of independent consolidation, more adjoining bases of administration solidity take priority over the unforeseen causes. Using the three methods of measurement, behavioral evidence dominates both attitudinal and structural elements. The reason being that it appears that whether the researchers depend mostly on whether the political players adapt to the elementary democratic rules or not. The evidence gathered from both the attitudinal and structural elements may qualify the conclusions drawn from the behavioral evidence.

## Conclusion

As seen in this research paper, the developing countries that mostly depend on other nations for economic support face higher chances of experiencing frequent revolutions that are majorly caused due to social inequity and economic instability. However, coups may not typically occur due to economic and social injustice, but also they may be caused due to dictatorship rule that is mainly modeled for self-gain and that which draws global political intervention. Revolutions that occur due to such rules are primarily conducted by the military and are meant to stabilize the economy as well as transit to a democratic regime. A recent example of Libya in 2011 the fall of Gadhafi.

It is therefore rational to suggest that coups aid in ushering in democracy for regimes that have experienced or have had dictatorship regimes.

## References

Acemoglu, Daron and James A. Robinson. 2006. *Economic Origins of Dictatorship and Democracy*. Cambridge & New York: Cambridge University Press.

Gift, Thomas, and Daniel Krcmaric. 2015. "Who Democratizes? Western-Educated Leaders and Regime Transitions." *Journal of Conflict Resolution* forthcoming.

Wright, Joseph. 2009. How Foreign Aid Can Foster Democratization in Authoritarian Regimes. *American Journal of Political Science* 53 (3):552–71.

Rustow, Dankwart. 1955. The Politics of Compromise: A Study of Parties and Cabinet Government in Sweden. Princeton: Princeton University Press

Maxwell, Kenneth. 1986. "Regime Overthrow and the Prospects for Democratic Transition in Portugal." In *Transitions from authoritarian rule : prospects for democracy*, edited by Guillermo A. O'Donnell, Philippe C. Schmitter and Laurence Whitehead, 109-137. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press.

Powell, Jonathan. **The Journal of Conflict Resolution; Beverly Hills**.56.6. (Dec 2012): 1017.

Marinov, Nikolay, and Hein Goemans. 2014. «Coups and Democracy.» *British Journal of Political Science* 44 (4):799-825

Acemoglu, Daron, and James A. Robinson. 2006. *Economic origins of dictatorship and Democracy*. Cambridge; New York: Cambridge University Press.

Belkin, Aaron, and Evan Schofer. 2003. "Toward a Structural Understanding of Coup Risk." *The Journal of Conflict Resolution* 47 (5):594-620.

Mainwaring, Scott, and Donald Share. 1986. "Transitions through Transaction: Democratization in Brazil and Spain." In Wayne Selcher, ed., *Political Liberalization in Brazil*, pp. 175215. Boulder: Westview.

Traversa, Federico (2014). "Income and the stability of democracy: Pushing beyond the borders of logic to explain a strong correlation?". *Constitutional Political Economy*. 26: 121–136.

Frantz, Erica, and Natasha M. Ezrow. 2011. *The politics of dictatorship : institutions and outcomes in authoritarian regimes*. Boulder, Colo.: Lynne Rienner Publishers.

Regilme Jr, Salvador Santino F( 2013). "Is International Labor Migration Good for Democratic Consolidation??" *Peace Review* 25.1 (2013): 97-103.

Biddle, Stephen D. 2004. *Military power : explaining victory and defeat in modern battle*. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.

Boix, Carles. 2011. "Democracy, Development, and the International System." *American Political Science Review* 105 (04):809-828.

Desch, Michael C. 1999. *Civilian control of the military : the changing security environment*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press.

Gorman, P.F. (1967). Internal Defense and the Less Developed Countries. In A.Jordan (ed.) Issues of National Security in the 1970's: (126-150). New York: Fredrick A Preager Publishers.

Colgan, Jeff. 2012. "Measuring Revolution." *Conflict Management and Peace Science* 29 (4):444-467. doi: 10.1177/0738894212449093.

Finer, S. E. 1976. *The man on horseback : the role of the military in politics*. 2nd enlarged ed, *Peregrine books*. Harmondsworth ; Baltimore etc: Penguin.

Colgan, Jeff. 2012. "Measuring Revolution." *Conflict Management and Peace Science* 29 (4):444-467. doi: 10.1177/0738894212449093.

# Customized Tissue Repair Therapeutic Cloning Moving Towards iPS Technology

Rie Lee  
Korea International School Pangyo

---

Research into stem cells has become of great interest to the public in last the decade, due to an aging population and a rising need for treatment for chronic degenerative diseases. Stem cell technologies hold the promise of regenerating progressive and degenerative tissue damage. Moreover, there has been a longstanding need for methods which can enable tissue or organ repair and thus alleviate the burden of organ transplant lists. It would be even more compelling if such *de novo* tissues would also contain the host DNA, thus alleviating any concerns regarding immunological rejection. This can be accomplished using methods originally developed in the 1950's when Briggs and Kings first demonstrated that cell nuclei could be transferred into a new cell and remain viable. In general, tissue repair and cloning involves the generation of pluripotent stem cells, which have the capacity to develop into any tissue or cell type. There currently exists two viable methods for obtaining such cells; somatic cell nuclear transfer (SCNT) and inducible pluripotent stem cells (iPS). The former involves transfer of nuclei (as in the Briggs and Kings experiments), while the latter involves the reprogramming of somatic cells into a state of pluripotency. Today, as cloning technologies develop, we find an increasing need for such technology given the healthcare trend toward personalized medicine. Unfortunately, there are a number of difficulties in using SCNT as a technology for therapeutic cloning. In the United States and United Kingdom, the use of human embryos is restricted to a certain number per year, and other countries such as Austria, Ireland, Italy and Germany have banned the use of human embryos in research entirely (Lo et al. 2010). Furthermore, human ES cells are typically obtained from donated embryos which would be discarded after in vitro fertilization procedures and thus, is a highly limiting factor. Conversely, iPS technology does not hold these same ethical concerns, while also avoiding immunological rejection. Thus, while iPS technologies also suffer from some limitations, some have argued that therapeutic cloning strategies should move toward iPS technologies. In this review of the literature, we will discuss the current landscape in the therapeutic cloning sector and the advantages and limitations of both SCNT and iPS technologies.

## Introduction

Cloning is the process by which copies of biologically relevant material are replicated. Cloning has existed since the 1950s, where seminal experiments by Briggs and Kings first demonstrated that cell nuclei could be transferred into a new cell and remain viable (Briggs and King 1952). In general, there are three different kinds of cloning which are DNA cloning, reproductive cloning and therapeutic cloning. DNA cloning is a term used to refer to genetic engineering of DNA. Reproductive cloning refers to the creation of a genetically identical animal by implantation of an engineered embryo into an animal and allowing it to come to term. In this process, DNA is taken from an individual and implanted into an enucleated embryo in a process called somatic cell nuclear transfer (SCNT). The resulting cell then begins to undergo division in the same manner as an embryo but is now genetically identical to the donor except for its mitochondrial genome (Hanley, Rastegarlari, and Nathwani 2010). A successful and high profile example of reproductive cloning is Dolly the sheep, in which the nucleus of an adult sheep was transferred into an embryo, implanted into a host mother and allowed to develop to term.

D'Amour et al. (2006) designed a five-step procedure to enable human embryonic stem cells to develop into endocrine cells. Producing most pancreatic hormones including glucagon and insulin, this procedure was developed for potential use in cell replacement therapy for the treatment of diabetes mellitus. A mixture of growth factors and differentiation markers were added at each stage of the method which were intended to duplicate pancreatic organogenesis *in vivo*. This is a breakthrough which could lead to the generation of organs using therapeutic cloning. These highly publicized experiments demonstrated to the world that SCNT embryos could be viable and produce genetically identical animals and cell types (Sparman et al. 2009).

In contrast, SCNT is also performed during therapeutic cloning, however the resultant cells are not implanted into the uterine environment as the endpoint of those experiments do not require the creation of a fully developed animal. The recent accomplishment of therapeutic cloning of Parkinson's disease in a mouse model indicates clinical applicability in humans to cure neurodegenerative diseases and disorders involving demyelination. Parkinson's disease is characterised by the decline of dopaminergic neurones resulting in continuous tremor and muscular stiffness impairing motility. Such animal models of human diseases can be planned through therapeutic cloning for research purpose (Mitalipov & Wolf, 2006).

Research into stem cells has become of great interest to the public in the last decade, due to an aging population and a rising need for treatment for chronic degenerative diseases. Stem cell technologies hold the promise of regenerating progressive and degenerative tissue damage (Surani and McLaren 2006, Zacharias et al. 2011). In principal, stem cell technologies would be leveraged to produce new and functional tissues, preferably containing the same DNA as the host, and surpassing the limitations of conventional methods such as organ transplants and tissue rejuvenation methods (Korbling and Estrov 2003, Zacharias et al. 2011).

Pluripotent stem cells have the capacity to differentiate into cells of any type and are necessary for the generation of *de novo* tissues (Zacharias et al. 2011). In general, there are two approaches to obtaining host DNA-specific pluripotent stem cells: somatic cell nuclear transfer (SCNT, also known as therapeutic cloning) and induced pluripotent stem cells (iPS). Prior to the development of iPS, it seemed that methods for effective tissue repair or replacement using stem cells would involve

the use of human embryos, a controversial topic due to the seemingly intractable differences in belief on the moment by which human life begins.

Therapeutic cloning and iPS technologies hold enormous potential in ameliorating significant human health burdens. When used in conjunction with gene therapies, it may allow for the permanent treatment of genetic disorders (Kfouri 2007). In cases of diseases in which certain cell types must be replaced, therapeutic cloning may allow for effective and oftentimes permanent treatment of diseases such as Duchenne muscular dystrophy, diabetes mellitus and Parkinson's disease as previously demonstrated with in vivo animal studies (Kfouri 2007, Rideout et al. 2002). Lastly, therapeutic cloning may one day allow for replacement of entire organs, which would eliminate the need for transplantations and the need for immunosuppressant drugs. This article will review the history of the development of therapeutic cloning and iPS technologies, the methods by which they function, and give perspective on the trends of their use in relevance to customized tissue repair.

## Therapeutic Cloning & SCNT

In the landscape of modern cloning technology, cloning is often associated with personalized medicine and customized tissue repair, namely where cells would be extracted from a patient and used to grow replacement tissues or organs. The genetic makeup of all the somatic cells are identical as products of fertilization of oocyte by sperm, yet they specialize into 200 different types which perform their relative biological functions by selectively switching on and off specific genes (Stemcell 101 | Eli and Edythe Broad Center of Regeneration Medicine and Stem Cell Research). Therapeutic cloning is the amalgamation of somatic cell nuclear transfer (SCNT) and embryonic stem (ES) cell transfer techniques; whereby *the host oocyte is arrested at metaphase*.

With the help of suction produced by a micropipette, the cell is then immobilised and its DNA is removed with the help of a needle. A somatic cell is enucleated in the same way and the somatic nucleus is incorporated into the enucleated ovum by electrofusion. The cell division is encouraged/initiated by mild electric shocks. The pre-embryo is incubated for 4-5 days to develop and produce stem cells, after which the pre-embryo is destroyed/killed to harvest stem cells. The stem cells are encouraged to *produce stem cells which may grow into replacement tissues that can be used to treat the patient (Australian Stem Cell Centre, 2010). These stem cells can be used to produce desired organs for transplantation which will greatly reduce the chances of organ rejection by the host*, thus leading to almost no rejection due to the immune response (Hochedlinger and Jaenisch 2006).

Therapeutic cloning can be done using either embryonic stem cells or adult stem cells. Human embryonic stem cells (hESC) and adult stem cells each have their respective advantages and disadvantages concerning their potential use for therapeutic cloning. One of the major differences between the two is their different capacities in the quantity and type of differentiated cell types they can form. Embryonic stem cells are a type of pluripotent stem cell originating from the inner cell mass (ICM) of the blastocyst. These cells have the ability to become all 220 cell types of the body because they are pluripotent. However, the pluripotent cells cannot form extra-embryonic tissues such as the amnion, chorion, and other components of the placenta (Pereira et al., 2011). Adult stem cells are assumed to have limited capability of differentiating into only their tissue of origin. While embryonic stem cells are easy to grow in a culture, adult stem cells are found in very rare quantities in mature tissues. Their isolation from an adult tissue is challenging, and techniques to multiply their

numbers in cell culture have not yet been devised. This is an important peculiarity, as large quantities of cells are required for stem cell replacement therapies.

Scientists believe that host bodies will react differently to organs produced from either type of stem cells after transplantation. Due to limited clinical trials of organ transplants derived from hESCs, there is limited knowledge of whether tissues resulting from embryonic stem cells will cause rejection. Adult stem cells, and tissues derived from them, are currently believed to be more host-friendly after transplantation. This is due to the fact that patient's own cells could be multiplied in culture, programmed into differentiation, and re-established into the patient, causing less chances of rejection by immune system due to their genetically identical nature. This is a noteworthy advantage as there will no longer be the need for continuous administration of immunosuppressive drugs that may cause deleterious side effects if used to suppress the immune system. The use of adult stem cells has the advantage of precluding the use of immunosuppressant drugs in order to prevent the onset of graft versus host disease (GVHD) once the extracted cells are reintroduced into the patient (Hanley, Rastegarlari, and Nathwani 2010). This strategy is attractive, as this could abolish the need for transplant lists, and save the lives of individuals which are waiting for viable organs.

Unfortunately, there are a number of difficulties in using SCNT as a technology for therapeutic cloning. In the United States and United Kingdom, the use of human embryos is restricted to a certain number per year, and other countries such as Austria, Ireland, Italy and Germany have banned the use of human embryos in research entirely (Lo et al. 2010). Furthermore, human ES cells are typically obtained from donated embryos which would be discarded after in vitro fertilization procedures and thus, is a highly limiting factor (Smith, Luong, and Stein 2009).

Recent studies have also demonstrated that SCNT techniques are not necessarily non-immunogenic. A high impact publication in *Cell: Stem Cell* in 2015 demonstrated that mismatched mitochondria in SCNT embryonic stem cells leads to the induction of an immune response (Deuse et al. 2015). These data demonstrate that while SCNT technologies have high potential, they are limited by difficulties in sourcing cells, restrictive legislation as well as technical limitations such as immunogenicity. Additionally, recent studies believe that host bodies will react differently to organs produced from either type of stem cells after transplantation (Jiang et al., 2011; Kfoury). There is limited knowledge of whether tissues resulting from embryonic stem cells will cause rejection due to limited clinical trials of organ transplants derived from hESCs.

### **Inducible Pluripotent Stem Cells (iPS)**

SCNT was widely researched in the early 2000's and held the promise of patient customized tissues for a large number of diseases. This approach has fallen out of use in many cases, primarily due to the demonstration that pluripotent stem cells could be induced in somatic cells as stated in a paper by the Yamanaka group in 2006 (Takahashi and Yamanaka 2006). Simply put, scientists use somatic cells such as fibroblasts and B lymphocytes, instead of embryos, to convert them into pluripotent stem cells. This alleviates the considerable ethical concerns raised by the public regarding the use of embryos in stem cell research, and has therefore gained considerable traction as the primary method used for obtaining pluripotent stem cells for tissue repair research (Martins, Vunjak-Novakovic, and Reis 2014).

Inducible pluripotency in human cells can be achieved by retroviral induction of four genes, namely Oct4, Nanog, Lin28, and Sox2 (Yu et al. 2007). Using iPS technology, it was found that tissues derived from all three embryonic germ layers (ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm) could be generated (Takahashi et al. 2007, Aoi et al. 2008, Nakagawa et al. 2008, Park, Zhao, et al. 2008). Since the initial proof of concept experiments in 2007, human iPS cells have proven to be robustly reproducible, achieving even the strictest definitions of pluripotency, such as the ability to produce offspring capable of germline transmission (Okita, Ichisaka, and Yamanaka 2007). Moreover, the iPS cells can be easily obtained as they require only a tissue biopsy for derivation, meaning anyone can donate easily (Zacharias et al. 2011). In contrast, patient genotype pluripotent stem cells created by SCNT are limited by the need to extract cells from human embryos (Zacharias et al. 2011).

The applications of iPS are broad, where patient derived iPS cells can be used for the testing of drugs, for the study of disease models, and even for diagnostic testing (Hanley, Rastegarlari, and Nathwani 2010, Park, Arora, et al. 2008, Nelson, Martinez-Fernandez, and Terzic 2010, Wichterle and Przedborski 2010). In terms of tissue regeneration or repair, there has been an increasing number of reports demonstrating that iPS cells can be used to treat a variety of disease models including hemophilia A (Xu et al. 2009), Parkinson disease (Wernig et al. 2008), myocardial infarctions (Nelson et al. 2009) and sickle cell anemia (Hanna et al. 2007), among others.

However, this method is not without its limitations, especially in cases where iPS can require a considerable number of cells of a particular type (Willmann et al. 2013). Furthermore, a failure to harvest the proper cell types can lead to unsuccessful reprogramming (Willmann et al. 2013). In these cases, induction of pluripotency can be inefficient and is a highly stochastic process in which most cells of the culture become arrested in a partially reprogrammed state (Rais et al. 2013). However, there has been some progress made in this regard with the discovery that the depletion of Mbd3 proteins can raise pluripotent stem cell induction from somatic cells to nearly 100% (Rais et al. 2013). Animal studies utilizing iPS have also demonstrated the dearth of information in the application of iPS toward therapeutic use. In transplantation studies using iPS derived tissues in mice, there has been early success with no rejection of tissues. However, observation of the clinical outcomes of these animals demonstrates a high mortality rate due to cancers with a tendency for these cells to display cancer-like characteristics (Boiani 2010, Marion et al. 2009). These data demonstrate the need for further studies to better characterize iPS derived cells before they can be considered of use in human disease.

After continuous trials of various cloning experiments, a successfully cloned human blastocyst, the early stage of an embryo right after the fertilization, was cloned in 2008 by a California research team (Stem Cells Australia, 2010). This report also indicates that the cloned embryo did not show any issues due to immunological rejection. The technique employed to create these cloned blastocysts was SCNT (Stem Cells Portal 2009). In order to complete this crucial process, donated oocytes (egg cells) and DNA from male adults were needed (Stem Cells Portal 2009).

According to the results, three out of five cloned blastocysts contained DNA from the skin cell of the man, indicating that the process of reprogramming to an embryo was successful (French, Adams, Anderson, Kitchen, Hughes, Wood 2008). In addition, it takes approximately 3 to 4 weeks for initial colonies, early embryos, to develop. This duration determines whether reprogramming was completed (Pfannkuche et al., 2010). The successful proof of cloning can not only be seen in the DNA resemblance, but also the presence of the female's mitochondrial DNA found in the cloned

embryo (French, Adams, Anderson, Kitchen, Hughes, Wood 2008). These crucial evidences prove that the technology to clone embryos overcame the biological issue of immunological rejection.

## Limitations in Cloning

Although advancements in technology have allowed scientists to create clones, this process is highly inefficient, with about 0.1% to 3% chance to successfully create clones (Society 2009). For instance, about 277 attempts were made in the cloning of Dolly the sheep (Griffin 1999). Most cloned embryos perish at early stages of embryonic development or naturally abort after pregnancy induction in animals (Alert 2004). Further, even when the cloned animal comes to term, most suffer and die shortly after birth due to a variety of physiological and anatomical deformities. While there may be some exceptions, in most experiments the success rate is less than 1%.

There are further complications for those animals that do survive gestation and are relatively normal at birth. Many cloned animals suffer from additional health issues, such as cancers and large offspring syndrome (LOS), in which the cloned embryos are much larger than normal embryos and exhibit a number of organ defects (Young, Sinclair, and Wilmut 1998). For example, Dolly, the eldest of the cloned animals, had a lung tumor at six and also showed signs of arthritis. Dolly was euthanized at the age of six which is significantly less than the typical life expectancy of 9 years in normal sheep (Chase-Topping et al. 2005). The primary cause of low success rate in reproductive cloning is aberrant gene expression rather than the direct damage to the DNA. Therefore, these interrupted gene expressions would cause various lethal anatomical diseases starting from birth or even as a fetus.

There are a number of factors which have been shown to influence the low success rate of cloning. Interestingly, it appears that more than just the SCNT or iPS procedure, the in vitro culture conditions also play an important role. The addition of bovine serum to cultures significantly increased the incidence of abnormal pregnancies and fetal mortalities (Lane et al. 2003)□. LOS following in vitro cultures of embryos can also influence epigenetic modifications to chromatin which leads to some of the more extreme phenotypic abnormalities and is further exacerbated during SCNT experiments (Ogawa et al. 2003). SCNT often results in incomplete reprogramming of donor DNA to and aberrant expression of important genes during embryonic and fetal development such as H19 and IGF-II (Ogawa et al. 2003).

Cloned pregnancies are particularly susceptible to the loss of embryos during the first trimester of life with mortality at approximately 50% over the 2-4% during natural pregnancies (De Sousa et al. 2001). This markedly higher incidence in pregnancy failure is largely attributed to changes in the placenta during cloned pregnancies with failures in placental attachment and dysfunctional expression of immune response proteins such as MHC I (Thompson and Peterson 2000, Hill et al. 2002).

Given that placental development is so crucial to normal fetal growth and that abnormal placenta are often a feature of cloned pregnancies, it is not surprising that these abnormal placenta lead to abnormal or incomplete growth and development in cloned fetuses (Farin, Crosier, and Farin 2001). Although placental defects can widely vary, perturbations to IGF-II expression in the placentae is often observed and likely to be a major contributor to the large offspring syndrome associated with cloned pregnancies (Gardner et al. 1999). As previously mentioned, even if the animals do

come to term, there are also post-natal differences that can be observed, such as shortened telomere lengths and abnormal mitochondria (Shiels et al. 1999, Evans et al. 1999). Therefore, there are considerable gaps in our knowledge of the biological pathways that underlie embryonic development that would enable the reprogramming of cells during cloning.

Furthermore, the laws are a hindrance to the pace at which research can be carried out in this field. One of the main problems is the current developments of laws concerning biomedicine. The language of the laws is vague and is framed in imprecise terms that do not differentiate between reproductive and therapeutic cloning. The Convention on Human Rights and Biomedicine (Oviedo convention) articulated by the Council of Europe in 1997 is counterintuitive. Article 13 states that “an intervention seeking to modify the human genome may be only undertaken for preventive, diagnostic or therapeutic purposes” and Article 18 says that “the creation of human embryos for research is prohibited (Arsanjani, 2006)”.

The Protocol on Cloning, put forward in 1998 and signed by 19 European nations, bans reproductive cloning and was ironically signed by France and Germany, which both have permissive policies concerning the generation of human ntESC lines. Currently, Asia has the highest legal permissibility since the generation of human ntESC lines through SCNT is legal (Hall, Stojkovic, & Stojkovic, 2006). Australia is currently revising its present laws to follow the Asian trend and to legalise the generation of chimaeras by human DNA. Since both reproductive and therapeutic cloning require the *in vitro* generation of a human embryo, barring reproductive cloning severely obstructs medically important research based on therapeutic cloning. A worldwide ban on reproductive human cloning was proposed by France and Germany to the UN in 2001, which became effective in September 2006 (Arsanjani, 2006).

## Conclusions

While cloning as a concept continues to be an intriguing one, there is a long journey still ahead for the development of human cloning. Namely, there are considerable ethical and legal considerations when dealing with ES cells which limit or entirely restrict their use. In consideration of the highly controversial use of human ES cells worldwide, it is important to ask whether the use of ES cells are necessary given that iPS is an available technology and, in most cases, a functional substitute. Furthermore, the use of ES cells is time consuming and the sourcing of eggs or embryos highly limits work using this method (Smith, Luong, and Stein 2009). Inducible pluripotent stem cell technologies have similar capacities as embryonic stem cells to differentiate into any cell, however iPS lack the ethical issues and cell source limitations of ES cells. In light of these issues, it seems that iPS will become the predominant technology utilized when considering clinical therapeutic applications due to the ease of sourcing cells, the lack of ethical disputes, and essentially zero risk of immune-mediated rejection (Zacharias et al. 2011). In conclusion, while Dolly and Copy Cat restarted conversations about cloning humans and therapeutic cloning techniques make it a viable concept, iPS technologies are likely to become the standard utilized technology for cloning over embryonic stem cells.

## References

Alert, Human Genetics. 2004. Reproductive Cloning: Ethical and Social Issues.

Aoi, T., K. Yae, M. Nakagawa, T. Ichisaka, K. Okita, K. Takahashi, T. Chiba, and S. Yamanaka. 2008. "Generation of pluripotent stem cells from adult mouse liver and stomach cells." *Science* 321 (5889):699-702. doi: 10.1126/science.1154884.

Arsanjani, M. H. 2006. "Negotiating the UN declaration on human cloning." *The American Journal of International Law*, 100(1), 164–179.

Australian Stem Cell Centre. 2010. "Fact Sheet 4 Therapeutic Cloning (Somatic Cell Nuclear Transfer)." Retrieved from [www.stemcellcentre.edu.au](http://www.stemcellcentre.edu.au)

Boiani, M. 2010. "Is the perfect mouse cloning experiment in sight?" *Biol Reprod* 83 (6):887-9. doi: 10.1095/biolreprod.110.088310.

Briggs, R., and T. J. King. 1952. "Transplantation of Living Nuclei From Blastula Cells into Enucleated Frogs' Eggs." *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 38 (5):455-63.

Chase-Topping, M. E., L. E. Kruuk, D. Lajous, S. Touzeau, L. Matthews, G. Simm, J. D. Foster, R. Rupp, F. Eychenne, N. Hunter, J. M. Elsen, and M. E. Woolhouse. 2005. "Genotype-level variation in lifetime breeding success, litter size and survival of sheep in scrapie-affected flocks." *J Gen Virol* 86 (Pt 4):1229-38. doi: 10.1099/vir.0.80277-0.

Cyranoski, D. 2008. "Human Embryos Cloned from Adult Cells." *Nature Publishing Group*. Accessed: Mar. 12, 2017. <http://www.nature.com/news/2008/080117/full/news.2007.350.html>.

D'Amour, K. A., Bang, A. G., Eliazer, S., Kelly, O. G., Agulnick, A. D., Smart, N. G., Baetge, E. E. 2006. "Production of pancreatic hormone-expressing endocrine cells from human embryonic stem cells." *Nature biotechnology*, 24(11), 1392–1401. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nbt1259>

De Sousa, P. A., T. King, L. Harkness, L. E. Young, S. K. Walker, and I. Wilmut. 2001. "Evaluation of gestational deficiencies in cloned sheep fetuses and placentae." *Biol Reprod* 65 (1):23-30.

Deuse, T., D. Wang, M. Stubbendorff, R. Itagaki, A. Grabosch, L. C. Greaves, M. Alawi, A. Grunewald, X. Hu, X. Hua, J. Velden, H. Reichensperner, R. C. Robbins, R. Jaenisch, I. L. Weissman, and S. Schrepfer. 2015. "SCNT-derived ESCs with mismatched mitochondria trigger an immune response in allogeneic hosts." *Cell Stem Cell* 16 (1):33-8. doi: 10.1016/j.stem.2014.11.003.

Eli and Edythe Broad Center of Regeneration Medicine and Stem Cell Research. "Stemcell 101." Retrieved from: <https://stemcell.ucsf.edu/stemcell-101>

Evans, M. J., C. Gurer, J. D. Loike, I. Wilmut, A. E. Schnieke, and E. A. Schon. 1999. "Mitochondrial DNA genotypes in nuclear transfer-derived cloned sheep." *Nat Genet* 23 (1):90-3. doi: 10.1038/12696.

Farin, P. W., A. E. Crosier, and C. E. Farin. 2001. "Influence of in vitro systems on embryo survival and fetal development in cattle." *Theriogenology* 55 (1):151-70.

French, A. J., Adams, C. A., Anderson, L. S., Kitchen, J. R., Hughes, M. R., and Wood, S. H. 2008. "Development of Human Cloned Blastocysts Following Somatic Cell Nuclear Transfer with Adult Fibroblasts." *Stem Cells*, 26:485-493. doi:10.1634/stemcells.2007-0252

Gardner, R. L., S. Squire, S. Zaina, S. Hills, and C. F. Graham. 1999. "Insulin-like growth factor-2 regulation of conceptus composition: effects of the trophectoderm and inner cell mass genotypes in the mouse." *Biol Reprod* 60 (1):190-5.

Griffin, HD. 1999. "DOLLY: THE SCIENCE BEHIND THE WORLD'S MOST FAMOUS SHEEP."

Hall, V. J., Stojkovic, P., & Stojkovic, M. 2006. "Using therapeutic cloning to fight human disease: a conundrum or reality?" *Stem cells*, 24(7), 1628–1637. <https://doi.org/10.1634/stem-cells.2005-0592>

Hanley, J., G. Rastegarlari, and A. C. Nathwani. 2010. "An introduction to induced pluripotent stem cells." *Br J Haematol* 151 (1):16-24. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2141.2010.08296.x.

Hanna, J., M. Wernig, S. Markoulaki, C. W. Sun, A. Meissner, J. P. Cassady, C. Beard, T. Brambrink, L. C. Wu, T. M. Townes, and R. Jaenisch. 2007. "Treatment of sickle cell anemia mouse model with iPS cells generated from autologous skin." *Science* 318 (5858):1920-3. doi: 10.1126/science.1152092.

Hill, J. R., D. H. Schlafer, P. J. Fisher, and C. J. Davies. 2002. "Abnormal expression of trophoblast major histocompatibility complex class I antigens in cloned bovine pregnancies is associated with a pronounced endometrial lymphocytic response." *Biol Reprod* 67 (1):55-63.

Hochedlinger, K., and R. Jaenisch. 2006. "Nuclear reprogramming and pluripotency." *Nature* 441 (7097):1061-7. doi: 10.1038/nature04955.

Jiang, Y., Kelly, R., Peters, A., Fulka, H., Dickinson, A., Mitchell, D. A., & St John, J. C. 2011. "Interspecies somatic cell nuclear transfer is dependent on compatible mitochondrial DNA and reprogramming factors." *PLoS one*, 6(4), e14805. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0014805>

Kfouri, C. 2007. "Therapeutic cloning: promises and issues." *Mcgill J Med* 10 (2):112-20.

Korbling, M., and Z. Estrov. 2003. "Adult stem cells for tissue repair - a new therapeutic concept?" *N Engl J Med* 349 (6):570-82. doi: 10.1056/NEJMra022361.

Lane, M., D. K. Gardner, M. J. Hasler, and J. F. Hasler. 2003. "Use of G1.2/G2.2 media for commercial bovine embryo culture: equivalent development and pregnancy rates compared to co-culture." *Theriogenology* 60 (3):407-19.

Lo, B., L. Parham, A. Alvarez-Buylla, M. Cedars, B. Conklin, S. Fisher, E. Gates, L. Giudice, D. G. Halme, W. Hershon, A. Kriegstein, P. Y. Kwok, and R. Wagner. 2010. "Cloning mice and men: prohibiting the use of iPS cells for human reproductive cloning." *Cell Stem Cell* 6 (1):16-20. doi: 10.1016/j.stem.2009.12.004.

Marion, R. M., K. Strati, H. Li, M. Murga, R. Blanco, S. Ortega, O. Fernandez-Capetillo, M. Serrano, and M. A. Blasco. 2009. "A p53-mediated DNA damage response limits reprogramming to ensure iPS cell genomic integrity." *Nature* 460 (7259):1149-53. doi: 10.1038/nature08287.

Martins, A. M., G. Vunjak-Novakovic, and R. L. Reis. 2014. "The current status of iPS cells in cardiac research and their potential for tissue engineering and regenerative medicine." *Stem Cell Rev* 10 (2):177-90. doi: 10.1007/s12015-013-9487-7.

Mitalipov, S. M., & Wolf, D. P. 2006. Nuclear transfer in nonhuman primates. *Methods in molecular biology*, 348, 151–168. [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-59745-154-3\\_10](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-59745-154-3_10)

Nakagawa, M., M. Koyanagi, K. Tanabe, K. Takahashi, T. Ichisaka, T. Aoi, K. Okita, Y. Mochiduki, N. Takizawa, and S. Yamanaka. 2008. "Generation of induced pluripotent stem cells without Myc from mouse and human fibroblasts." *Nat Biotechnol* 26 (1):101-6. doi: 10.1038/nbt1374.

Nelson, T. J., A. Martinez-Fernandez, and A. Terzic. 2010. "Induced pluripotent stem cells: developmental biology to regenerative medicine." *Nat Rev Cardiol* 7 (12):700-10. doi: 10.1038/nrcardio.2010.159.

Nelson, T. J., A. Martinez-Fernandez, S. Yamada, C. Perez-Terzic, Y. Ikeda, and A. Terzic. 2009. "Repair of acute myocardial infarction by human stemness factors induced pluripotent stem cells." *Circulation* 120 (5):408-16. doi: 10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.109.865154.

Ogawa, H., Y. Ono, N. Shimozawa, Y. Sotomaru, Y. Katsuzawa, H. Hiura, M. Ito, and T. Kono. 2003. "Disruption of imprinting in cloned mouse fetuses from embryonic stem cells." *Reproduction* 126 (4):549-57.

Okita, K., T. Ichisaka, and S. Yamanaka. 2007. "Generation of germline-competent induced pluripotent stem cells." *Nature* 448 (7151):313-7. doi: 10.1038/nature05934.

Park, I. H., N. Arora, H. Huo, N. Maherali, T. Ahfeldt, A. Shimamura, M. W. Lensch, C. Cowan, K. Hochedlinger, and G. Q. Daley. 2008. "Disease-specific induced pluripotent stem cells." *Cell* 134 (5):877-86. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2008.07.041.

Park, I. H., R. Zhao, J. A. West, A. Yabuuchi, H. Huo, T. A. Ince, P. H. Lerou, M. W. Lensch, and G. Q. Daley. 2008. "Reprogramming of human somatic cells to pluripotency with defined factors." *Nature* 451 (7175):141-6. doi: 10.1038/nature06534.

Pereira, P. N. G., Dobreva, M. P., Graham, L., Huylebroeck, D., Lawson, K. A., & Zwijsen, A. N. 2011. "Amnion formation in the mouse embryo: the single amniochorionic fold model." *BMC developmental biology*, 11, 48. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-213X-11-48>.

Rais, Y., A. Zviran, S. Geula, O. Gafni, E. Chomsky, S. Viukov, A. A. Mansour, I. Caspi, V. Krupalnik, M. Zerbib, I. Maza, N. Mor, D. Baran, L. Weinberger, D. A. Jaitin, D. Lara-Astiaso, R. Blecher-Gonen, Z. Shipony, Z. Mukamel, T. Hagai, S. Gilad, D. Amann-Zalcenstein, A. Tanay, I. Amit, N. Novershtern, and J. H. Hanna. 2013. "Deterministic direct reprogramming of somatic cells to pluripotency." *Nature* 502 (7469):65-70. doi: 10.1038/nature12587.

Rideout, W. M., 3rd, K. Hochedlinger, M. Kyba, G. Q. Daley, and R. Jaenisch. 2002. "Correction of a genetic defect by nuclear transplantation and combined cell and gene therapy." *Cell* 109 (1):17-27.

Shiels, P. G., A. J. Kind, K. H. Campbell, D. Waddington, I. Wilmut, A. Colman, and A. E. Schnieke. 1999. "Analysis of telomere lengths in cloned sheep." *Nature* 399 (6734):316-7. doi: 10.1038/20580.

Smith, K. P., M. X. Luong, and G. S. Stein. 2009. "Pluripotency: toward a gold standard for human ES and iPS cells." *J Cell Physiol* 220 (1):21-9. doi: 10.1002/jcp.21681.

Society, MCB 41: Genetics and. 2009. Human Embryonic and Pluripotent Stem Cells and Cloning Techniques. University of California, Berkeley.

Sparman, M., V. Dighe, H. Sritanaudomchai, H. Ma, C. Ramsey, D. Pedersen, L. Clepper, P. Nigmat, D. Wolf, J. Hennebold, and S. Mitalipov. 2009. "Epigenetic reprogramming by somatic cell nuclear transfer in primates." *Stem Cells* 27 (6):1255-64. doi: 10.1002/stem.60.

Stem Cells Journal Online Community. 2009. "Successful Cloning of Human Embryo." *Stem Cells Portal*. Accessed: March 12, 2017.

Surani, M. A., and A. McLaren. 2006. "Stem cells: a new route to rejuvenation." *Nature* 443 (7109):284-5. doi: 10.1038/443284a.

Takahashi, K., K. Tanabe, M. Ohnuki, M. Narita, T. Ichisaka, K. Tomoda, and S. Yamanaka. 2007. "Induction of pluripotent stem cells from adult human fibroblasts by defined factors." *Cell* 131 (5):861-72. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2007.11.019.

Takahashi, K., and S. Yamanaka. 2006. "Induction of pluripotent stem cells from mouse embryonic and adult fibroblast cultures by defined factors." *Cell* 126 (4):663-76. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.07.024.

Thompson, J. G., and A. J. Peterson. 2000. "Bovine embryo culture in vitro: new developments and post-transfer consequences." *Hum Reprod* 15 Suppl 5:59-67.

Wernig, M., J. P. Zhao, J. Pruszak, E. Hedlund, D. Fu, F. Soldner, V. Broccoli, M. Constantine-Paton, O. Isacson, and R. Jaenisch. 2008. "Neurons derived from reprogrammed fibroblasts functionally integrate into the fetal brain and improve symptoms of rats with Parkinson's disease." *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 105 (15):5856-61. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0801677105.

Wichterle, H., and S. Przedborski. 2010. "What can pluripotent stem cells teach us about neurodegenerative diseases?" *Nat Neurosci* 13 (7):800-4. doi: 10.1038/nn.2577.

Willmann, C. A., H. Hemeda, L. A. Pieper, M. Lenz, J. Qin, S. Joussen, S. Sontag, P. Wanek, B. Denecke, H. M. Schuler, M. Zenke, and W. Wagner. 2013. "To clone or not to clone? Induced pluripotent stem cells can be generated in bulk culture." *PLoS One* 8 (5):e65324. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0065324.

Xu, D., Z. Alipio, L. M. Fink, D. M. Adcock, J. Yang, D. C. Ward, and Y. Ma. 2009. "Phenotypic correction of murine hemophilia A using an iPS cell-based therapy." *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 106 (3):808-13. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0812090106.

Young, L. E., K. D. Sinclair, and I. Wilmut. 1998. "Large offspring syndrome in cattle and sheep." *Rev Reprod* 3 (3):155-63.

Yu, J., M. A. Vodyanik, K. Smuga-Otto, J. Antosiewicz-Bourget, J. L. Frane, S. Tian, J. Nie, G. A. Jonsdottir, V. Ruotti, R. Stewart, Slukvin, II, and J. A. Thomson. 2007. "Induced pluripotent stem cell lines derived from human somatic cells." *Science* 318 (5858):1917-20. doi: 10.1126/science.1151526.

Zacharias, D. G., T. J. Nelson, P. S. Mueller, and C. C. Hook. 2011. "The science and ethics of induced pluripotency: what will become of embryonic stem cells?" *Mayo Clin Proc* 86 (7):634-40. doi: 10.4065/mcp.2011.0054.

Varmus, H. 2009. The Art and Politics of Science. "Chapter 13: Embryos, Cloning, Stem Cells, and the Promise of Reprogramming." New York: W. W. Norton & Company. Available from: <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK190607/>

# The Great Sioux War of 1876: Native Americans Taking a Stand in History

Ryan Eusuk Jang  
Seoul International School

---

*“As individual fingers we can easily be broken, but all together we make a mighty fist.”*  
- Sitting Bull<sup>225</sup>

From the moment Christopher Columbus “discovered” North America in the year 1492, a pivotal conflict was triggered between the indigenous Native Americans of the “New World” and the European encroachers of the “Old World.” As this struggle continued for decades, it manifested into different forms, one of them being The Great Sioux War of 1876, also known as the Black Hills War. The series of battles captured the Native American spirit of resistance, and showed the world what it meant to stand up for one’s beliefs. Following leaders like Crazy Horse and Sitting Bull, the Native Americans fought to protect their culture by taking a stand against the government and military of the United States of America.

## Prelude to the Great Sioux War

*“All we wanted was peace and to be left alone.”*<sup>226</sup>

Armed with the idea of Manifest Destiny during the 19<sup>th</sup> century, the government and citizens of the United States of America expanded throughout the continent, towards the Pacific Ocean.<sup>227</sup> Shown through the purchase of the Louisiana territory in 1803, the Jefferson administration and the American citizens believed that westward expansion was both justified and inevitable.<sup>228</sup> When expanding west they found that Native Americans had already settled in the desired areas for hun-

---

<sup>225</sup> Hull, Michael. *Sun Dancing: A Spiritual Journey on the Red Road*. Rochester, VT: Inner Traditions International, 2000. Print.

<sup>226</sup> Sanders, Thomas Edward, and Walter W. Peek. *Literature of the American Indian*. New York: Glencoe, 1973. 294. Print.

<sup>227</sup> Heidler, David Stephen, and Jeanne T. Heidler. *Manifest Destiny*. Westport, CT: Greenwood, 2003. Print.

<sup>228</sup> Marshall, Thomas Maitland. *A history of the western boundary of the Louisiana Purchase, 1819-1841*. Vol. 2. University of California Press, 1914.

dreds of years.<sup>229</sup> In order to inhabit the areas of California, Oregon, New Mexico, and Texas in tandem with the already settled indigenous populations, the governmental authorities of the 1800s pressed for the assimilation of these Native Americans into Western culture.<sup>230</sup> As this policy was not successful, the government moved on to push for the complete removal of the indigenous from the disputed areas<sup>231</sup> (See Appendix A). According to President Andrew Jackson in his first annual message to Congress:

“It has long been the policy of Government to introduce among [the Native Americans] the arts of civilization, in the hope of gradually reclaiming them from a wandering life. This policy has, however, been coupled with another wholly incompatible with its success. Professing a desire to civilize and settle them, we have at the same time lost no opportunity to purchase their lands and thrust them farther into the wilderness. By this means they have not only been kept in a wandering state, but been led to look upon us as unjust and indifferent to their fate. Thus, though lavish in its expenditures upon the subject, Government has constantly defeated its own policy, and the Indians in general, receding farther and farther to the west, have retained their savage habits.”<sup>232</sup>

In response to these concerns, the Indian Removal Act, a decree which empowered the federal government to arbitrate treaties and deals for the exchange of Native American land, was enacted.<sup>233</sup> Thus, the process of Native American relocation began throughout the country in 1830. In 1838, the relocation took a turn for the worse with the Trail of Tears battle, where an estimated 8,000 lives were lost<sup>234</sup> as the Cherokee Nation was forcibly relocated from their southeastern homelands to reserved Indian Territory in present day Oklahoma.<sup>235</sup>

While the government of the United States pushed its agenda for the removal of Native Americans from western territory in North America, the indigenous were resolute in claiming that their forms of government, nomadic lifestyle, and religion were unalterable and legitimate. There were a few fundamental differences in the ways these Native Americans carried out their lives, in comparison to non-natives. Though these differences did not make the indigenous less civilized, less refined, or more barbaric,<sup>236</sup> Native Americans were still perceived in a negative light as the government and citizens believed the indigenous lifestyle was a threat to the ideas of the U.S.<sup>237</sup>

229 Nies, Judith. *Native American History: A Chronology of a Culture's Vast Achievements and Their Links to World Events*. N.p.: New York, 1996. Print.

230 Hoxie, Frederick E. *A final promise: The campaign to assimilate the Indians, 1880-1920*. U of Nebraska Press, 1984.

231 United States. Cong. *A Century of Lawmaking for a New Nation: U.S. Congressional Documents and Debates, 1774 - 1875*. 56 Cong., 1 sess. Cong 44015. N.p.: Library of Congress, n.d. *Library of Congress*. Web. 3 Jan. 2017. <<http://memory.loc.gov:8081/cgi-bin/ampage?collId=llss&fileName=4000/4015/llss4015.db&recNum=129>>.

232 Andrew Jackson: “First Annual Message,” December 8, 1829. Online by Gerhard Peters and John T. Woolley, *The American Presidency Project*.

233 Act, Indian Removal, Indian Removal Act, and Public Opinion. “Indian Removal Act.” *Encyclopedia of Media and Propaganda in Wartime America* 1 (2011): 203.

234 Thornton, Russell. “Cherokee population losses during the Trail of Tears: a new perspective and a new estimate.” *Ethnohistory* (1984): 289-300.

235 Coates, Julia. *Trail of Tears*. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 2014.

236 Churchill, Ward. *Struggle for the land: Native North American resistance to genocide, ecocide, and colonization*. City Lights Books, 2002.

237 Francis Daniel Pastorius, Circumstantial Geographical Description of Pennsylvania, 1700, including later letters to Germany; in Narratives of Early Pennsylvania, West New Jersey and Delaware, 1630-1707, ed. Albert Cook

## Beginning of the Resistance

*“I rose, tomahawk in hand, and I have done all the hurt to the whites that I could.”*<sup>238</sup>

As tensions escalated between the U.S. government and Native American tribes, a series of incidents sparked one of the greatest conflicts between the two bodies: The Great Sioux War of 1876. The Great Sioux War began as a conflict between the Lakotas (Teton Sioux), Northern Cheyennes, and the United States government over the Black Hills region in the Dakota territory. After the Custer Expedition in 1874 revealed that there was gold in the hills,<sup>239</sup> both the U.S. government and private prospectors flocked the region to mine the precious metal, resulting in the Black Hills Gold Rush<sup>240</sup> (See Appendix B). Regardless of whether or not this land was sacred territory for the two Native American tribes, the indigenous were merely seen as obstacles in the way of economic prosperity.

Though the Treaty of Fort Laramie in 1868 guaranteed the Lakota people ownership of the Black Hills territory,<sup>241</sup> encroachers disregarded the agreement entirely to pursue their own economic greed. As a result, in May of 1875, Sioux delegations led by Spotted Tail, Red Cloud, and Lone Horn began in an effort to convince President Ulysses S. Grant to honor the aforementioned treaty.<sup>242</sup> Unfortunately, no peaceful solution was found, as both parties refused to concede and give up the territory. The first major battle of the war occurred in 1876 at the Battle of Powder River, where the Native American resistance sprung to life after they were defeated in the conflict.<sup>243</sup> The Native Americans retaliated at the Battle of Little Bighorn, where they defeated numerous soldiers, showing the United States they would not go down without a fight.<sup>244</sup>

## The Battle of Powder River

*“Women screamed. Children cried for their mothers. Old people tottered and hobbled away to get out of reach of the bullets singing among the lodges. Braves seized whatever weapons they had and tried to meet the attack.”*<sup>245</sup>

The United States was the first to strike in the Great Sioux War. On the 17<sup>th</sup> of March in 1876, Colonel Reynolds and the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> U.S. Cavalry attacked a Cheyenne Indian village in Montana

---

Myers (New York: Charles Scribner’s Son, 1912), pp. 384-385.

238 Utley, Robert Marshall. *The lance and the shield: The life and times of Sitting Bull*. Random House Digital, Inc., 1994.

239 McLaird, James D., and V. Turchen Lesta. “Exploring the Black Hills, 1855–1875: Reports of the Government Expeditions. Colonel William Ludlow and the Custer Expedition, 1874.” *South Dakota History* 4 (1974): 315.

240 Parker, Watson. *Gold in the Black Hills*. SDSHS Press, 2012.

241 Milligan, Edward A. *Wounded Knee 1973 and the Fort Laramie Treaty of 1868*. 1973.

242 Nowlan, Robert A. *The American Presidents from Polk to Hayes: What They Did, What They Said & What Was Said about Them*. Denver, CO: Outskirts, 2016. Print.

243 Hedren, Paul L. *Great Sioux War orders of battle: how the United States Army waged war on the Northern Plains, 1876-1877*. Vol. 31. The Arthur H. Clark Company, 2011.

244 Mangum, Neil C. *Battle of the rosebud: prelude to the Little Bighorn*. Vol. 5. Upton & Sons, 1987.

245 Leg, Wooden. *Wooden Leg: a warrior who fought Custer*. U of Nebraska Press, 2003.

Territory, destroying their property.<sup>246</sup> While they planned to surround the Native American settlement,<sup>247</sup> take their animals, and burn their houses, many unforeseen obstacles were encountered.<sup>248</sup> Due to the village being further North than anticipated, the rough terrain and poor weather conditions, only 47 men of the U.S. Cavalry charged into battle.

After five hours of combat, Reynolds withdrew after destroying the Native American settlement. Although the Cheyenne would later recapture most of their horses, the men, women, and children were left with no food, shelter, or comfort in the aftermath of the war. In the harsh winter weather, several women and children froze to death as they trekked to other villages in hopes of finding food and shelter. Despite this heartbreaking defeat, the Native Americans would continue to attempt to protect their land and join forces to resist the American government.

### The Battle of Little Bighorn

*“Custer made no attack, the whole movement being a retreat”<sup>249</sup>*

Also known as Custer’s Last Stand, the Battle of Little Bighorn commenced as the Lakota, Northern Cheyenne, and Arapaho tribes fought against the 7<sup>th</sup> Cavalry Regiment of the United States on June 25<sup>th</sup> and 26<sup>th</sup>, 1876 near the Little Bighorn River.<sup>250</sup> The combined Native American forces, led by Crazy Horse and Chief Gall, were successful in defeating George Custer’s army of 700 men<sup>251</sup> (See Appendix C). Though the Native American tribes were formerly unaligned with each other, they joined together in the face of adversity to stand up against the United States government.

A crucial reason why Custer lost the war was because he had greatly underestimated the number of Native American forces.<sup>252</sup> He had his men widely scattered, as he expected only about 800 Native American combatants when there ended up being around 2,000.<sup>253</sup> Custer’s underestimation was a testament to the Native American spirit of rebellion. The fact that enough warriors showed up to defeat the 7<sup>th</sup> Cavalry Regiment of the United States demonstrated the unity and passion the indigenous had for their culture and heritage.

246 Vaughn, Jesse Wendell, Joseph J. REYNOLDS, and U. S. Major-General. *The Reynolds Campaign on Powder River: [With Plates, Including Portraits.]*. University of Oklahoma Press, 1961.

247 Hedegaard, Major Michael L. *Colonel Joseph J. Reynolds And The Saint Patrick’s Day Celebration On Powder River; Battle Of Powder River (Montana, 17 March 1876)*. Pickle Partners Publishing, 2014.

248 Porter, Joseph C. *Paper Medicine Man: John Gregory Bourke and his American West* Norman: University of Oklahoma Press, 1986

249 Curtis, E. (1907) *The North American Indian. Vol.3*. The Sioux

250 Graham, William Alexander. *The Story of the Little Big Horn: Custer’s Last Fight*. U of Nebraska Press, 1988.

251 Scott, Douglas D; et al. (2013). *Archaeological Perspectives on the Battle of the Little Bighorn*. Norman, OK: University of Oklahoma Press. p. 244.

252 Sandoz, Mari. *The battle of the Little Bighorn*. U of Nebraska Press, 1978.

253 Donovan, James (2008). *A Terrible Glory: Custer and the Little Bighorn – the Last Great Battle of the American West* (Kindle Location 5870). Little, Brown and Company.

## Lasting Effects of the Great Sioux War

*“It does not require many words to speak the truth.”<sup>254</sup>*

Though the Native Americans ended up losing the Great Sioux War of 1876, they continued to fight for their rights.<sup>255</sup> With increased awareness and political activism, Native American groups in the United States achieved landmark legal victories (See Appendix D). For example, with the passing of the Indian Civil Rights Act in 1968,<sup>256</sup> Native Americans were granted many of the civil rights for which they were fighting. Again in 1980, the Supreme Court acknowledged that the United States of America had taken the Black Hills without due reparation to the inhabitants,<sup>257</sup> resulting in the United States paying compensation with interest to the Sioux.<sup>258</sup> However, the payment was refused as the Native Americans believe that if they accepted, they are legally handing over the Black Hills region to the government. To the indigenous, the Black Hills are still sacred and not for sale.<sup>259</sup> Yet again in 2007, the United Nations adopted the UN Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples,<sup>260</sup> showing the world that Native American’s rights are becoming valued over the world.

## Taking a Stand in History

*“A very great vision is needed and the man who has it must follow it as the eagle seeks the deepest blue of the sky.”<sup>261</sup>*

The Great Sioux War of 1876 showed the world what it meant to take a stand in history. Instead of allowing the United States government to bulldoze over their rights, the indigenous fought to protect their values, culture, and heritage. While the Native Americans were fighting for what they believed in at the time of the war, they were making their mark in history by setting a precedent which still exists today. The spirit of Native American resistance continues to show itself in the form of peaceful protests as the indigenous fight for their unalienable rights (See Appendix E).

---

254 Beal, Merrill D. “*I will fight no more forever*”: Chief Joseph and the Nez Perce War. Vol. 6. University of Washington Press, 1963.

255 Lazarus, Edward. *Black Hills White justice: The Sioux nation versus the United States, 1775 to the present*. U of Nebraska Press, 1999.

256 Russell, Steve. “Indian Civil Rights Act (1968).” *Major Acts of Congress*, edited by Brian K. Landsberg, vol. 2, Macmillan Reference USA, 2004, pp. 186-188.

257 Newton, Nell Jessup. “Compensation, Reparations, & (and) Restitution: Indian Property Claims in the United States.” *Ga. L. Rev.* 28 (1993): 453.

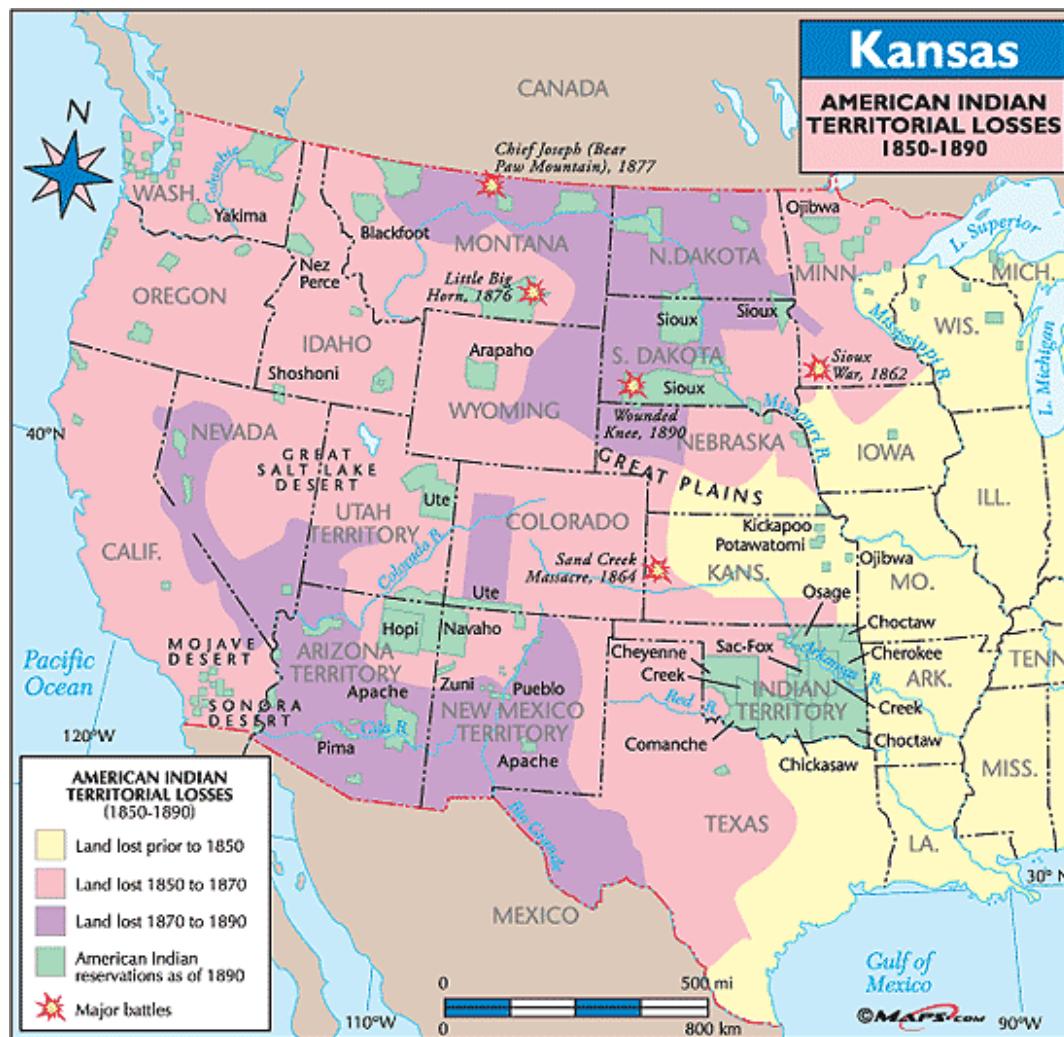
258 Riley, Angela R. “The history of Native American lands and the Supreme Court.” *Journal of Supreme Court History* 38, no. 3 (2013): 369-385.

259 Hanson, Stephen Cosby. “Special Recent Development: United States v. Sioux Nation: Political Questions, Moral Imperative, and the National Honor.” *American Indian Law Review* 8, no. 2 (1980): 459-484.

260 UN General Assembly, *United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples : resolution / adopted by the General Assembly*, 2 October 2007, A/RES/61/295

261 Anderson, Tia, Brad Christ, and Fay Cleaveland. “American Indian Cultural Corridor: Vision, Strategies, and Action.” (2009).

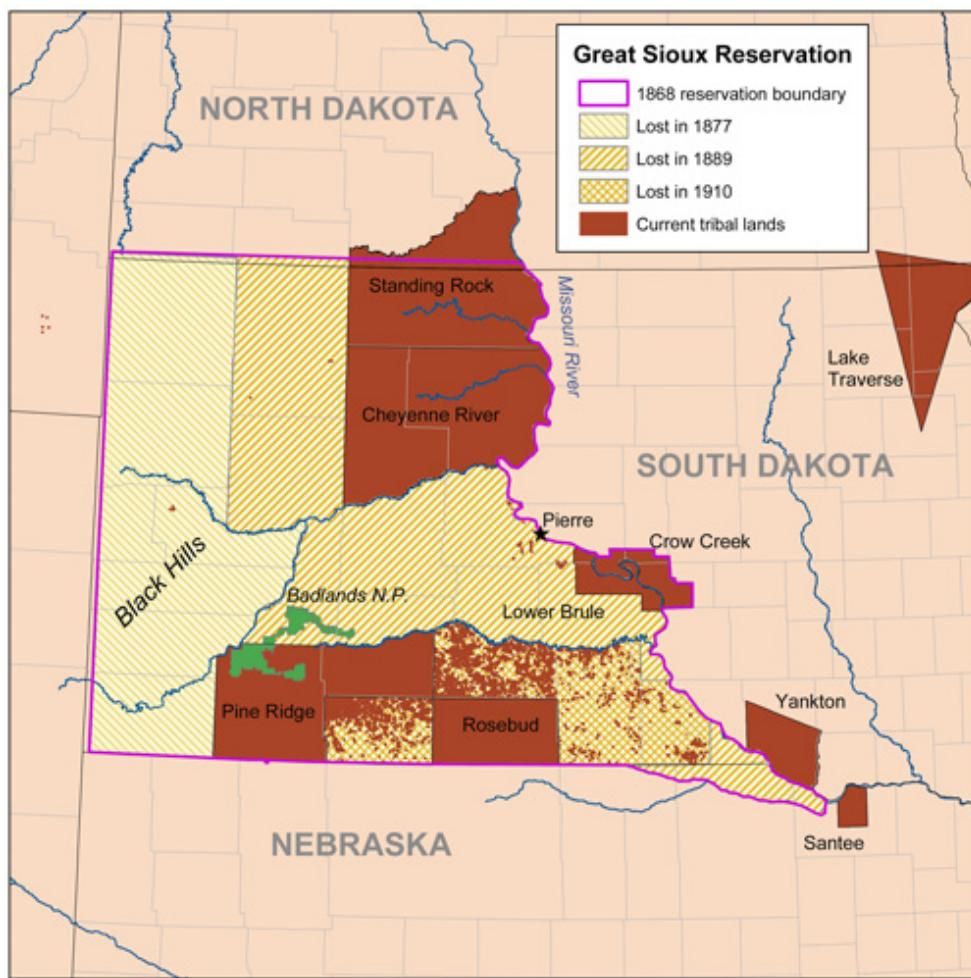
## Appendix A



*Map of American Indian Territory Losses. Digital image. Indian Territory History. Oklahoma Historical Society, n.d. Web. 1 Feb. 2017.*

This map shows the loss of Native American land to the government of the United States from 1850~1890. The U.S. government and its citizens would continue to push westwards, leading to conflict between the indigenous already inhabiting the area.

## Appendix B



*Kmusser. Map of the Great Sioux Reservation. Digital image. Wikimedia. Wikipedia, 18 Mar. 2008. Web. 1 Feb. 2017.*

This map depicts the Native American land losses in South Dakota, where the Black Hills region was located. As shown in the map, the Black Hills region was the first area the U.S. government claimed due to the rich gold deposits.

## Appendix C



Russell, Charles M. The *Custer Fight*. 1903. The Library of Congress, Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division Washington, D.C. 20540 USA.

This lithograph depicts the Battle of Little Bighorn from the Native American perspective. In this battle, an overwhelming Native American victory is portrayed, where the indigenous are successful in driving out Custer's army.

## Appendix D



N.d. Richard Nixon Presidential Library and Museum, Washington, D.C.. *The Trail Posse*. Web. 1 Feb. 2017.

In this image, President Nixon signs into law a bill that gave land to several Native American groups. This bill is an example of one of the legal victories the Native Americans had following the Great Sioux War of 1876.

## Appendix E



Sylvester, Terray. 2016. Montana. *The Trail Posse*. Web. 1 Feb. 2017.

Native Americans of the Sioux Tribes march in protest against the Dakota Access oil pipeline that is routed through the Sioux Reservation in North Dakota on September 9<sup>th</sup>, 2016. This peaceful protest is an example of the Native American spirit of resistance that is present today.

## References

### Primary Sources

Andrew Jackson: "First Annual Message," December 8, 1829. Online by Gerhard Peters and John T. Woolley, *The American Presidency Project*.

This speech by Andrew Jackson helped me understand the perspective and viewpoint of the leaders of America during the time before, after, and during the Great Sioux War. Andrew Jackson's perspective was valuable because it taught me why the animosity between the two groups existed during the times of conflict.

Beal, Merrill D. "*I will fight no more forever*": *Chief Joseph and the Nez Perce War*. Vol. 6. University of Washington Press, 1963.

These quotes from the Nez Perce War were used in my paper to depict the viewpoints of the Native Americans during times of conflict. I used a quote that I pulled directly from this text in order to portray to the audience how Native Americans felt about the conflict as it dragged on for years.

Curtis, E. (1907) *The North American Indian*. Vol.3. The Sioux

This firsthand account from the Sioux Indians was used to gain insight into the Battle of Little Bighorn. Quotes from these accounts were used to depict the Native American perspective during and after the Battle of Little Bighorn, when the indigenous realized they had won the battle.

Francis Daniel Pastorius, Circumstantial Geographical Description of Pennsylvania, 1700: including later letters to Germany; in Narratives of Early Pennsylvania, West New Jersey and Delaware, 1630-1707, ed. Albert Cook Myers (New York: Charles Scribner's Son, 1912), pp. 384-385.

These quotations and letters during the time period showed me how the colonists viewed the indigenous. It portrayed the positive manner in which the indigenous were viewed, and gave me evidence regarding the benevolent nature of the Native Americans.

Leg, Wooden. *Wooden Leg: a warrior who fought Custer*. U of Nebraska Press, 2003.

As a leader, Wooden Leg was able to represent Native American sentiments. I used quotes from his book to depict the Battle of Powder River, where he saw the massacre of his own people. The emotion and distress in his words allowed me to see the family-like bonding that occurred within a Native American tribe.

Russell, Charles M. *The Custer Fight*. 1903. The Library of Congress, Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division Washington, D.C. 20540 USA.

This lithograph depicted the Battle of Little Bighorn from the Native American perspective. The primary source was used in my appendix in order to give my audience a visual that portrayed the Native American victory.

Russell, Steve. "Indian Civil Rights Act (1968)." *Major Acts of Congress*, edited by Brian K. Landsberg, vol. 2, Macmillan Reference USA, 2004, pp. 186-188.

This act in 1968 showed me that Native Americans were becoming known by the U.S.

Government. I used this primary source document as evidence for the idea that Native Americans were gaining more rights as the years went on.

UN General Assembly, *United Nations Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples : resolution / adopted by the General Assembly*, 2 October 2007, A/RES/61/295

This resolution by the United Nations General Assembly was an additional piece of evidence supporting the idea that Native Americans rights were becoming more progressive. This primary source document is important because it shows the effects of taking a stand in history.

United States. Cong. *A Century of Lawmaking for a New Nation: U.S. Congressional Documents and Debates, 1774 - 1875*. 56 Cong., 1 sess. Cong 44015. N.p.: Library of Congress, n.d. *Library of Congress*. Web. 3 Jan. 2017.

These government files on Indian Land Cessions showed me the extent to which the government of the United States impeded on the land of the Native Americans. Additionally, the data shed light on where and when the land was taken from the Native Americans.

Utley, Robert Marshall. *The lance and the shield: The life and times of Sitting Bull*. Random House Digital, Inc., 1994.

These quotes about Sitting Bull displayed the mentality that the Native Americans had towards the government of the United States. Sitting Bull's words demonstrated the animosity shared between the two parties, and the tensions that arose as a result of the land disputes.

## Secondary Sources

Act, Indian Removal, Indian Removal Act, and Public Opinion. "Indian Removal Act." *Encyclopedia of Media and Propaganda in Wartime America* 1 (2011): 203.

This secondary source described the Indian Removal Act. It also explained the significances and the effects of the implementation of the act on the Native Americans that lived in the United States.

Anderson, Tia, Brad Christ, and Fay Cleaveland. "American Indian Cultural Corridor: Vision, Strategies, and Action." (2009).

I helped me to understand the Native American mindset when it comes to their point of view on life. Understanding their lifestyle and the way they think helped me write my paper from their point of view.

Churchill, Ward. *Struggle for the land: Native North American resistance to genocide, ecocide, and colonization*. City Lights Books, 2002.

This secondary source described the relationship between the Native Americans, the government and the citizens of the United States. I used this source to explain how these two parties viewed each other, leading up to the inevitable tension between the two groups.

Coates, Julia. *Trail of Tears*. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 2014.

This book describes the Trail of Tears in great detail. By implementing information from this event into my paper, I was able to describe how the Great Sioux War developed.

Finerty, John Frederick. *War-path and Bivouac: Or The Conquest of the Sioux, a Narrative of Stirring Personal Experiences and Adventures in the Big Horn and Yellowstone Expedition of*

*1876, and in the Campaign on the British Border, in 1879.* MA Donohue, 1890.

As a collection of stories and personal experiences, these accounts gave me insight into the Sioux's point of view as the U.S. government invaded their private property. I tried to portray the Sioux's sentiments about the events throughout my essay, especially when describing the events that led to the war.

Gitlin, Marty. *Battle of the Little Bighorn*. ABDO, 2010.

This book explained the Battle of Little Bighorn, and was used for information and facts in my paper. Specific dates and names were pulled from this resource in my paper.

Graham, William Alexander. *The Story of the Little Big Horn: Custer's Last Fight*. U of Nebraska Press, 1988.

This book about the Battle of Little Bighorn was more of a narrative book that portrayed the emotion of the battle. These sentiments were used in my paper when I described the battlefield.

Hanson, Stephen Cosby. "Special Recent Development: United States v. Sioux Nation: Political Questions, Moral Imperative, and the National Honor." *American Indian Law Review* 8, no. 2 (1980): 459-484.

This law review evaluated the Black Hills conflict that occurred years ago. I used this evaluation to help write about the Black Hills conflict in my own paper, as it offered an unbiased point of view on the event.

Hedegaard, Major Michael L. *Colonel Joseph J. Reynolds And The Saint Patrick's Day Celebration On Powder River: Battle Of Powder River (Montana, 17 March 1876)*. Pickle Partners Publishing, 2014.

This secondary source described the Battle of Powder River from the perspective of the United States. I used this perspective in my paper to help present the battle from a more objective standpoint. By using sources that depicted the battle from both the Indians' and the United States' view, I was able to gain an objective perspective on the event.

Hedren, Paul L. *Great Sioux War orders of battle: how the United States Army waged war on the Northern Plains, 1876-1877*. Vol. 31. The Arthur H. Clark Company, 2011.

This book was a list of battles that occurred during the Great Sioux War. I used this book to pick and choose the most important battles, and elaborated on those in my research paper.

Heidler, David Stephen, and Jeanne T. Heidler. *Manifest Destiny*. Westport, CT: Greenwood, 2003. Print.

In order to understand the motivations and reasons the U.S. wanted to expand westwards, I conducted research on the idea of Manifest Destiny. I used the insight I gained to explain the motivations to displace the Native Americans.

Hoxie, Frederick E. *A final promise: The campaign to assimilate the Indians, 1880-1920*. Nebraska Press, 1984.

This book described the attempts of the U.S. Government to assimilate Native Americans into American culture. I used the information from this book to show how this assimilation process failed, leading to increased tensions.

Kmusser. *Map of the Great Sioux Reservation*. Digital image. *Wikimedia*. Wikipedia, 18 Mar. 2008. Web. 1 Feb. 2017.

This map of Native American lands was used in the appendix. It depicted the gradual process of how the Native Americans lost the Black Hills region to the United States.

Lazarus, Edward. *Black Hills White justice: The Sioux nation versus the United States, 1775 to the present*. U of Nebraska Press, 1999.

This book describes the Black Hills conflict in detail. I used it to explain how the Great Sioux War erupted. I pulled facts from this book and input them into my research paper.

Levine, Michelle. *The Sioux*. Lerner Publications, 2006.

In order to understand the Native Americans, I conducted research on them. I read about the Sioux tribes in this book to understand their mindset, and used this to write from their perspective.

Mangum, Neil C. *Battle of the rosebud: prelude to the Little Bighorn*. Vol. 5. Upton & Sons, 1987. Understanding the timeline of events is important in history, and I used this book to help put the Battle of Little Bighorn into perspective. I was able to look at the bigger picture of the Great War, and as a result I understood the scale of the conflict.

Marshall, Thomas Maitland. *A history of the western boundary of the Louisiana Purchase, 1819-1841*. Vol. 2. University of California Press, 1914.

The Louisiana Purchase occurred because of ideas like Manifest Destiny. I used evidence of the Louisiana Purchase in this book to help support my claim that Native Americans were being displaced because of westward expansion. The Louisiana Purchase is a great example of the U.S. Government expanding towards the Pacific Ocean.

McLaird, James D., and V. TurchenLesta. "Exploring the Black Hills, 1855–1875: Reports of the Government Expeditions. Colonel William Ludlow and the Custer Expedition, 1874." *South Dakota History* 4 (1974): 315.

When writing about the conflicts that led to the Great Sioux War, the Black Hills conflict was crucial. I used these reports of government expeditions to increase my understanding of the conflict to provide a full and complete analysis of the event.

Milligan, Edward A. *Wounded Knee 1973 and the Fort Laramie Treaty of 1868*. 1973.

The violation of the Fort Laramie Treaty was an example of a direct conflict that led to the eruption of the war. I used this secondary source to gain information about how and why the U.S. Government did not uphold this treaty, and used it as context in my research paper as to why the Great War began.

Newton, Nell Jessup. "Compensation, Reparations, & (and) Restitution: Indian Property Claims in the United States." *Ga. L. Rev.* 28 (1993): 453.

This book explained and listed many of the points of conflict regarding land between the Native Americans and the United States government. I specifically used this book to get information about the Black Hills land conflict.

Nies, Judith. *Native American History: A Chronology of a Culture's Vast Achievements and Their Links to World Events*. N.p.: New York, 1996. Print.

I required evidence that Native Americans were, in fact, the first ones to be in America, and that the Europeans were encroachers. I used this book to prove my point that Native Americans were the victims of European conquest.

Nowlan, Robert A. *The American Presidents from Polk to Hayes: What They Did, What They Said & What Was Said about Them*. Denver, CO: Outskirts, 2016. Print.

The President of the United States is the spokesperson for the citizens and the government. I pulled quotes from Presidential speeches and comments from this book, and used those quotes in my paper to represent the opinion of the United States as a whole.

Parker, Watson. *Gold in the Black Hills*. SDSHS Press, 2012.

With this book, I was able to understand that a gold rush occurred in the Black Hills region in the past which explained why the U.S. Government was motivated to seize this valuable land. This allowed me to understand why the U.S. government claimed this region.

Riley, Angela R. "The history of Native American lands and the Supreme Court." *Journal of Supreme Court History* 38, no. 3 (2013): 369-385.

In order to understand the relationship between the Native Americans and the Supreme Court, I read excerpts from this book. Specifically, I was able to understand the end result of the Black Hills conflict, with the Supreme Court ruling.

Sandoz, Mari. *The battle of the Little Bighorn*. U of Nebraska Press, 1978.

This book listed the reasons why Custer lost the fight in the Battle of Little Bighorn. I used this book in my research paper to briefly describe the end results of the battle.

Scott, Douglas D; et al. (2013). [Archaeological Perspectives on the Battle of the Little Bighorn](#).

Norman, OK: University of Oklahoma Press. p. 244.

In order to find out the number of men who fought in the Battle of Little Bighorn, I read this archeological book. It gave me exact numbers that I pulled from the book, and used in my research paper.

Thornton, Russell. "Cherokee population losses during the Trail of Tears: a new perspective and a new estimate." *Ethnohistory* (1984): 289-300.

The Trail of Tears was a tragic incident that led to the Great Sioux War. From this book, I found out the number of Cherokee Indians who died during the Trail of Tears, and used the information to add context to my research paper.

# Social Enterprises in a Business Setup

Sungwoo Kim  
La Jolla Country Day School

---

## Introduction

The topic of social enterprise has gained renewed and increased attention over the years. Meant as a way to combine free market tenets and management principles with socially minded missions, social enterprises potentially represent an evolution in the theory and application of addressing some of the most pressing social and environmental issues of our time. However, there is still much debate over what exactly constitutes a social enterprise, what its responsibilities and relationships are to other sectors and ultimately, whether it represents a permanent or lasting shift in how society addresses inequity at home and abroad.

Social enterprises reflect a change in the thinking of and approach to addressing social and environmental problems that the nonprofit, government or private sector has apparently failed to solve. They operate at the intersection of the business and nonprofit worlds and have the opportunity to combine the best practices of their respective sectors. As a hybrid organization that serves more masters than one, social enterprises as a whole, have much less room for error compared to the nonprofit and private sector. Social enterprises serve interests that may have competing priorities. In essence, social enterprises must strike a fine balance between both carrying out its mission and financing it against the interests of investors who are not always aligned with the mission of those the organization with which they work.

The challenges facing the performance, success and longevity of social enterprises are unique and unforeseen. While many of the underlying concepts that underscore social enterprises are not new, the field in which social enterprises currently operate in is, and it must both collaborate and compete with the many already existing actors and sectors. Instead of attempting to battle giants with long claimed territory, social enterprises can use its hybridity to evade traditional restrictions or limitations that other more established industries experience.

## Objectives

This paper will review social enterprise and its meaning, origins and role in today's rapidly expanding and changing global economy. It will then review some of the best practices of social enterprise, its limitations as well as some further considerations. Finally, this paper will review social

enterprise within a larger, societal context, examining its role, responsibilities and relationships with other actors, including business and government.

The primary aim of this paper is to examine the ways in which social enterprises can maximize both its mission and bottom line by exploiting its unique position working at the intersection of market forces and a socially minded focus (Battilana & Matthew, Advancing research on hybrid organizing - Insights from the study of social enterprises, 2014). While making a profit may be one of many motives, social enterprises can serve its clients and investors while dealing with the whims and volatility of the market (Hoffman & Thomas, 2015). The best strategy of dealing with such volatility is by adeptly using available information, to involve all appropriate stakeholders and to respond swiftly to address any unforeseen circumstances (Sabeti, 2011). This research paper will explore some of social enterprise's unique characteristics that can improve service delivery and maximize profit (Dong, 2014).<sup>262</sup> In doing so, this paper will evaluate the assumption that social enterprise requires both a social heart and a business mind, and to satisfy both sides, social entrepreneurs need to adapt marketing processes to fit their business goals and transparently represent their social aims.

## Background

The past few years reflect a growing dynamism in the world of business and how globalization presents new opportunities to identify and potentially solve problems. There has then been an increasing concern of properly identifying and connecting firms with appropriate clients (Bugg-Levine, Kogut, & Kulatilaka, A new approach to funding social enterprises, 2012). Fortunately, this gap is being addressed through the rise and proliferation of social enterprises (Ridley-Duff & Bull, 2015). Social enterprises are organizations that are both business and socially minded. Thus, one of their primary goals is to generate revenue, in addition to carrying out their organization's mission (Shuming, 2015). It is this special position that gives social enterprises the relevant business acumen to create and nurture relationships that can create value over the long run (Logue, 2014). As noted by Logue, some investors have the resources and the desire to deploy capital to areas and projects that can have the most social impact, but they do not know where to put their money (Dzielinski, Measuring economic uncertainty and its impact on the stock market, 2015). These impact investors are commonly found in stock exchanges and market shares business (et al., 2014). As a result, the social exchange companies have seen a rapid rise in growth (Statmanet, 2006).

There is no universally accepted definition of what actually constitutes "social enterprise," its relationship to the public, private and nonprofit sector, and ultimately, its goals and this lack of consensus can create unexpected problems in the short and long term. Scholars define social enterprise broadly as the "idea that business acumen can be applied to community causes to achieve a transfer of economic and social resources to disadvantaged groups and individuals" (Bugg-Levine & Emerson, Impact investing: Transforming how we make money while making a difference, 2011). Others offer a much more narrow definition of social enterprise, defining it as a process of that "providing goods and services which the market or public sector is unwilling or unable to provide, developing skills, creating employment [...] creating and managing workspace [...] and enhancing civil public involvement" (Ko, 2005). This paper will use the latter definition.

---

262

The public policy arena in which social enterprise has emerged, and indeed in which the greater role of social work operates, is in a state of turbulence as many of the certainties of the welfare state are challenged or abandoned. Many governments throughout the English-speaking world have re-positioned themselves as partners in the provision of services, rather than as primary service providers. In general, the direction of social enterprise initiatives is towards practices which extend the options available to service users for both social and economic participation, based on the notion that government should, at most, facilitate rather than provide such options (Pearson, 2001) (Mawson, 2001).

While the ideas that underlie social enterprise are not entirely new, the attention paid to it, however, is. In order to better understand social enterprise as a whole, it would be beneficial to discuss the history and the context from which it springs. Starting in the 1970s and accelerating through the 1980s and 1990s, budget cuts and divestment from social services by governments were primary reasons for the growth and proliferation of nonprofit organizations (Mulgan, 2011). The tradition of socially focused ventures date back at least the 19<sup>th</sup> century. Britain, in particular, has a long history of “entrepreneurial charities, mutuals, cooperatives, industrial and provident organizations and socially committed family farms” (Mulgan, 2011).

One advantage of social enterprises is that they can quickly adapt to and exploit prevailing business trends (Pierdzioch & RülkeJan, 2014). In many ways, social enterprises are best positioned to help impact investors, investors who wish to make a difference through investments, by keeping them informed of the most effective use of their capital and where to deploy resources where they are needed most (Klaus & et al., 2016). It is therefore safe to say that social enterprises serve as a critical link between the nonprofit and the for profit sectors.

Other than connecting firms with critically vulnerable populations, social enterprises offer valuable information and insight that most firms cannot gleam on their own (Flockhart, 2005). These types of information gathering and analysis create a space where actors from different sectors and from around the world can discuss potential solutions that span their respective sectors and issue areas (Murray, 2012) (Mars & Rhoades, 2012). Effective information sharing requires that social enterprises to be responsive to the smallest nuance and changes in the world. Among actors that are joining this trend are public universities. According to Mars and Gary, students, including many business students, can leverage knowledge and other institutional resources to discover, research, and analyze the market trends and use that information as capital to both obtain higher returns and effect greater social change (Chen, 2013) (Pierdzioch & RülkeJan, 2014). At times, the very nature of serving the public can be a stressful and taxing one. But where private enterprises may lack a particular expertise or a cultural competency to engage with certain populations, social enterprises can fill this gap with their experience and knowledge.

For many inside and outside government, social enterprises presented an opportunity to break apart apparently stagnant service models and a chance to refashion those pieces into something that can deliver a greater impact. The emergence of social enterprises was heralded as a turning point in alleviating some of the most pressing problems we face. For example, a YouGov poll conducted in April found that 43% of the British public thought that a “community business that reinvests its profits to improve services” or a social enterprise would be best placed to run public services, compared with 36% favoring central and local government and just 4% favoring commercial firms. But there are several key factors that explain why social enterprises were unable to fulfill those lofty expectations.

Many of the hopes that accompanied the initial rush of attention paid to social enterprises a decade or two ago have not yet been realized. Social entrepreneurs argued that they had the knowledge and the skills to change existing delivery systems with radically improved results. But outside analysts, and to a large extent the public, have been unable to decipher their intentions and whether or not they have been achieved. The lionization of social entrepreneurs highlights this, as the emphasis on individual heroes overshot and was, at times, almost comically oversold. Awards that celebrated what some saw as a ‘club-class’ elite of social entrepreneurs and privileged backgrounds. The language of magic and alchemy used to describe social entrepreneurs encouraged muddled thinking and action (Mulgan, 2011).

There is also the very real fact that some of these enterprising individuals are ill suited to growing and consolidating the organizations they found and are also uncomfortable with what growth requires: “a shift from freewheeling and informal cultures to structure, bureaucracy and formal accountability to investors” (Mulgan, 2011).

Another disappointing factor was the lack of sustained commercial investment that was supposed to accompany the high hopes of the 1990s. But that unfortunately did not come to pass. The absence of scale, was yet another factor that help explain why social enterprises never took off in the way that it was envisioned. These concerns risk undermining an organization’s mission and can corrode values and legitimacy.

## Further Considerations

Social enterprises do not exist within a social, political or economic vaccuum. Indeed, social enterprises exists and participate in an existing framework whose actors are other social enterprises, nonprofit organizations, businesses and government and whose rules are already determined. For a social enterprise to ensure its own success, it must not only learn how to navigate a complex set of rules, customs and limitations, but it must also exhibit a flexibility to adapt to a changing mission and differing set of expectations.

## Relationship to Government

It is important for social enterprises to recognize its relationship to the government and how its rules and regulations that may affect its sector (Gray & Healy, 2003). While social enterprises can have a positive impact on the provision and delivery of social services, social enterprises haves certain limitations.

Many of those who work in social enterprises have differing beliefs on the scope and the extent to which governments should be involved in delivery and evaluation of social services. There are some who favor a more free market approach, where governments should only seek to remove cumbersome bureaucracy and to encourage as much entrepreneurial activity as possible. While others believe that government serves a vital role in establishing and enforcing standards and regulations that protect civil rights and ensure equitable access to economic opportunity and resources (Considine, 2000). Others still, believe that the “modern welfare state centres upon passive forms of welfare that disempower individuals and communities” (Botsman & Latham, 2001).

Governments have a strong role in redistributing resources equitably and in creating and sustain adequate social infrastructure that begin at the local and regional levels. The government does not have a profit motive and in many ways, it is charged with the weighty responsibility of ensuring the wellbeing of all of its citizens, particularly the most vulnerable. It can be argued that social enterprises require more, not less, government involvement in order to deliver the most effective and efficient results. However, this does not mean that government cannot be more flexible and adaptable to the changing social, political and economic landscape. There is no one size fits all approach that will benefit all members of a society.

### **Relationship to businesses, private sector and capitalism**

Social enterprises incorporate many tenets of and practices employed by private sector. As such, it exposes social enterprises to a unique set of criticisms. For example, it can be argued that social enterprises can undermine “arguments in favor of mobilising resources of the state,” which gives government a way out of its responsibility to provide for the most vulnerable (Healy, 2001) (McDonald & Marston, 2001).

On the one hand, the term social enterprise, like social capital, can be seen as a strategic vehicle that draw attention to the productivity of the ‘social’ sphere. It extends concepts traditionally associated with the business sector to allow recognition of the creativity and entrepreneurship that already exists within the social services sector. It also challenges the artificial separation between government, business and community services sectors and draws attention to the capacities and responsibilities of each to contribute to the greater good. On the other hand, the terminology of social enterprise sits uncomfortably with many in the nonprofit sector, particularly those who seek to distance themselves from the world of commerce and profit making.

On the other hand, the private sector is not a monolithic category or a homogeneous entity, and relying heavily on this stereotype is a disservice. The private sector is just as diverse as the nonprofit sector and it includes large and small corporations as much as it does small businesses and businesses that are struggling to survive. Social enterprises, as a whole, emphasize the community as an important resource in combating inequity. These advocates seek to combat the widely accepted perception about the dependency of marginazlied communities on social welfare services. To that end, these advocates rely more on the community members themselves instead of hiring outside professionals, experts and contractors (Gray & Healy, 2003). However, this theoretical construct elides the fact that communities are not always in agreement in their priorities. In reality, it is much more complex and communities are a source of “complex power relations and [potential] conflict, which can be detrimental to the most vulnerable communities that require the most amount of help” (Gray & Healy, 2003).

Criticisms of social enterprise are more or less linked to critiques of capitalism. There are critics that argue “global capitalism is leading to the death of democracy and the rise in importance of multinational companies that are replacing national governments’ function in setting social agendas and providing social services” (Hertz, 2001). It is hard not to fault this line of thinking given that there are numerous studies that illuminate how “corporations around world manipulate and pressure governments and of how consumer protest and product boycotts have become more effective weapons for change than the ballot box” (Gray & Healy, 2003).

On the other hand, there are arguments that while social enterprises are intertwined with capitalism, the very fact that social enterprise remains a distinct concept and field of practice gives power to the countervailing argument that it can be used as a tool to “counteract the forces of globalisation, centralization and denationalization” and that it could be used to “address their impact in local contexts where the opportunity to generate resources through diverse means and funding sources, such as partnerships and for-profit social enterprise initiatives, arises” (Gray & Healy, 2003).

## Legitimacy

An effective social enterprise must maintain its legitimacy in order to carry out its objectives. At its most broad definition, legitimacy can be defined as “a generalized perception or assumption that the actions of an entity are desirable, proper, or appropriate within some socially constructed system of norms, values, beliefs, and definitions” (Ko, 2005). Legitimacy is not only important for carrying out an organization’s mission, it can also have an impact on its “stability, performance and longevity” (Ko, 2005). How an organization views itself, and how others perceive them, can influence the scope of their work as well as the types of resources available to them.

A social enterprise can obtain and maintain its legitimacy from stakeholders by “persistently adopting structures, practices and procedures that conform to normative expectations in a social system (Ko, 2005). In the end, legitimacy can provide an organization’s activities as something more “stable, comprehensible, worthy, meaningful, predictable, and trustworthy,” and this can minimize the risk of “organizational death” (Ko, 2005).

There is a “negative spillover effect” occurs when one organization’s poor performance can tarnish an entire category or sector of social enterprises. A negative perception may precipitate a withdrawal of support from customers and social investors and it can “overflow the boundaries of that social enterprise and affect other social enterprises. Ultimately this will have a ripple effect on social enterprises as a whole, and thus severely affecting their viability” (Ko, 2005).

Being a hybrid organization, a social enterprise must balance many different needs but sometimes it is not always successful. Based on what expectations social investors have of social enterprises, these stakeholders may perceive certain actions to be inappropriate such as having financial goals take precedence over social missions and vice versa. Furthermore, since stakeholders themselves hold a diversity of expectations, the concept of accountability is not set in stone and this asymmetry in understanding can lead to mistrust and even the withholding of funds. However, if a social enterprise can successfully navigate this sphere and redefine expectations, it can “help engender trust, credibility, and reputation, which would in turn render the activities of social enterprises more legitimate” (Ko, 2005).

## Empathy

The concept of empathy underlies much of the work social enterprises are engaged to do and truly understanding and employing this concept can strengthen a social enterprise’s service provision and performance. Empathy can be defined as a person’s ability to “suspend judgement... [which] promotes collective understanding rather than individual self-interest” (Kopec, Hazenberg, & Seddon, 2015). Given than a social enterprise’s goal is social much more than financial, empathy

can contribute to an organization's success both in its delivery and how successfully it carries out its vision. Empathy can enable people to temporarily suspend their judgment, which can create more interactive and cooperative environments. It can promote putting the needs of the group before self interest. Empathy has also have a positive impact on the bottom line. Since social enterprise rely strongly on human capital, empathy can be the most effective way to create a high performing team. However, the greater challenge here is how delicately an organization is able to combine individual and the group agenda.

The "social" in social enterprise and social entrepreneurship serves as a critical reminder that whatever activities these individuals or organizations undertake, it must consider the communities they seek to serve. As mentioned previously, there is an inherent conflict between the "social" and "enterprise," and that empathy can not only help an organization remain aligned with its mission, it can also enhance its employees' morale and the overall performance of the organization. For example, empathy can positively affect "job satisfaction and organisational behaviour as well as helping to fulfil a social mission. In turn empathy promotes a new way of leadership as transparent and authentic" (Kopec, Hazenberg, & Seddon, 2015).

### **Relationship to nonprofits and other existing actors**

Social enterprises can both augment and benefit from its work with existing nonprofits and socially minded organizations. For example, the tenets of social enterprise can present both unique challenges and opportunities for the social work profession. Given that social enterprise is not a new idea within the community services field, social work illustrates the push and pull factors that can affect the future of the profession. Social work has already been involved in a range of community services "from small consumer advocacy groups to large charities, have developed through, and continue to use, entrepreneurial strategies both to ensure their continued survival and to promote the social and economic interests of the communities with which they work" (Gray & Healy, 2003).

The rising prominence of social enterprises raises many questions about existing industries and the actors within them. Whatever results from this complex interplay of actors, policies and expectations can have lasting effects not only on the welfare state and its continued development but also on the most marginalized who have come to depend on those services. This author argues that social enterprises can augment the work already being done to address social and environmental problems and they should be seen as a "replacement for, government involvement in social service provision and structural change" (Gray & Healy, 2003).

But the simultaneous growth of the nonprofit and social enterprise sector as a major actor of change presents social workers with the unique opportunity to directly and indirectly influence the delivery of services, including drafting mission statements, modifying hiring and human resources policies and working side by side with impact investors, government agencies and other stakeholders.

### **Community Empowerment**

Social enterprise is meant to be a tool, not a panacea, to our most pressing problems. It cannot be seen as a savior coming from the outside. Social enterprises must work closely with and

alongside the communities they seek to serve. But achieving this in practice is not always easy. The emergence of social enterprise can be linked to the constraint of resources in the nonprofit sector. Whatever increase there is in government funding to welfare agencies has not kept pace with the dramatic increase in the demand for social services. There has been a shift in how governments choose to deliver social services and it is increasingly relying on metrics and deliverables when awarding contracts, which runs the risk of commodifying social services into products. This serves to it “legitimize the expanded role of the community sector thus privileging ‘community management over government and politics’” (Lyons, 2001). It also has the added effect of transferring government responsibility for these social services to the private or corporate sector.

Thus, the concept of social enterprise should value local initiatives and participation just as much as it advocates for macro level change. This will require a dedication to the organization’s social mission in addition to promoting social cohesion and collective action. This type of approach to social and economic issues centers the responsibility for change squarely back on the communities the organizations work with and serve.

And lastly, social justice should remain at the core of the work that social enterprises engage in. It should guide the organization’s mission and inform the proposal, implementation and evaluation of policies, but it shouldn’t completely displace the entrepreneurial activity that can energize a social enterprise and free it from the traditional limitations that nonprofits face. This sort of hyper-local change can directly and indirectly change the larger structural inequities that can perpetuate injustices (Pearson, 2001).

## Conclusion

Social enterprise represents a desire to address the most pressing social and environmental issues of our time by using business principles, a multifaceted perspective and innovative and iterative approaches. Since they incorporate both business and nonprofit principles, social enterprises have the opportunity to break free from traditional limitations that face those respective sectors. However, since many of the central motivations of social enterprises of empowerment, cooperation and direct action are not new, there is much value in defining what exactly constitutes a social enterprise. Doing so, can assist us in assessing a social enterprise’s scope of work, determining the type of services it will provide and adjusting our expectations.

The intense attention and accompanying scrutiny of social enterprises means that they must strike a careful balance between the needs of their investors and the needs of the communities they serve. Social enterprises, and those who work within them, have to consider their role and responsibilities not only to governments, businesses and nonprofits but also to their clients. Without considering other intangible factors like empathy or legitimacy, a social enterprise risk jeopardizing its short term performance and long term longevity.

Good intentions, by themselves, are not enough to ensure the success of a social enterprise. By combining flexibility, collaboration and a good governance structure, and by enlisting the support of their investors, administration and staff, social enterprises can multiply their positive effects and scale it from the local to the global. Social enterprises, in and of itself, won’t be the panacea we seek to solve the social and environmental problems we face today, but they represent yet another tool in our arsenal in our ever continuing journey towards self-empowerment and justice.

## References

Battilana, J., & Matthew, L. (2014). Advancing research on hybrid organizing - Insights from the study of social enterprises. *The Academy of Management Animals*, 397-441.

Battilana, J., Lee, M., Walker, J., & Dorsey, C. (2012). In search of the hybrid ideal. *Stanford Social Innovation Review*, 51-55.

Botsman, P., & Latham, M. (2001). *The Enabling State: People Before Bureaucracy*. Pluto Press.

Bugg-Levine, A., & Emerson, J. (2011). Impact investing: Transforming how we make money while making a difference. *Innovations*, 9-18.

Bugg-Levine, A., Kogut, B., & Kulatilaka, N. (2012). A new approach to funding social enterprises. *Harvard Business Review*, 118-123.

Chen, T. (2013). Do investors herd in global stock markets? *Journal of Behavioral Finance*, 230-239.

Considine, M. (2000). Competition, quasi-markets and the new welfare state. In S. P. O'Connor I, *Contemporary Perspectives on Social Work and the Human Services: Challenges and Change*. Longman, Surrey Hills.

De Leonardi, O., & Mauri, D. (1992). From de-institutionalization to the social enterprise. *Social Policy*, 50-54.

Dong, L. (2014). Attracting investor attention through advertising. *Review of Financial Studies* .

Dzielinski, M. (2012). Measuring economic uncertainty and its impact on the stock market. *Finance Research Letters*, 167-175.

Dzielinski, M. (2015). Measuring economic uncertainty and its impact on the stock market. *Finance Research Letters*, 167-175.

et al., B. (2014). Social enterprises as hybrid organizations: A review and research agenda. *International Journal of Management Reviews*, 417-436.

Flockhart, A. (2005). Raising the profile of social enterprises: the use of social return on investment (SROI) and investment ready tools (IRT) to bridge the financial credibility gap. *Social Enterprise Journal*, 29-42.

Gray, M., & Healy, K. a. (2003, June). Social enterprise: is it the business of social work? *Australian Social Work*, 56(2).

Healy, K. (2001). Social enterprise: A strategy or paradigm for the sector. *Impact*, 16.

Hertz, N. (2001). *The Silent Takeover*. Sydney: Random House.

Hoffman, A., & Thomas, P. (2015). How return and risk experiences shape invest beliefs and preferences. *Accounting & Finance*.

Klaus, A., & et al. (2016). Stock market volatility and learning. *The Journal of Finance*, 33-82.

Ko, S. (2005). Viability of social enterprises: the spillover effect. *Social Enterprise Journal*, 1.

Kopec, A., Hazenberg, R., & Seddon, F. (2015). The Role of Empathy in Social Enterprise. *European Conference on Innovation and Entrepreneurship*.

Logue, D. (2014). The 'Stuff' of Markets: An Institutional Analysis of Impact Investing. *Academy of Management Proceedings*.

Lyons, M. (2001). *The Contribution of Nonprofit and Cooperative Enterprises in Australia: The Third Sector*. Crows Nest: Allen & Unwin.

Mars, M., & Rhoades, G. (2012). Socially oriented student entrepreneurship: A study of student change agency in the academic capitalism context. *The Journal of Higher Education*, 435-459.

Mawson, A. (2001). Making dinosaurs dance: Social entrepreneurship and civic action. In B. P. (eds), *The Enabling State: People Before Bureaucracy*. Annandale: Pluto Press.

McDonald, C., & Marston, G. (2001). Fixing the Niche? Rhetorics of the Community Sector in the Neo-Liberal Welfare Regime. *Social Entrepreneurship Workshop: Centre for Full Employment and Equity and the Department of Social Work*.

Mulgan, G. (2011). The new frontier? *RSA Journal*, 157, 22-25.

Murray, J. (2012). *Choose Your Own Master: Social Enterprise, Certifications and Benefit Corporation Statutes*. Social Enterprise, Certifications and Benefit Corporation Statutes.

Pearson, N. (2001). Rebuilding indigenous communities. In B. P. (eds), *The Enabling State*. Annandale: Pluto Press.

Pierdzioch, C., & RülkeJan, C. (2014). On the internal consistency of stock market forecasts. *Journal of Behavioral Finance*, 351-359.

Ridley-Duff, R., & Bull, M. (2015). Understanding social enterprise: Theory and practice. *Sage*.

Sabeti, H. (2011). The for-benefit enterprise. *Harvard Business Review*, 98-104.

Shuming, L. (2015). Investor sentiment and stock market liquidity. *Journal of Behavioral Finance*, 51-67.

Statmanet, A. (2006). Investor overconfidence and trading volume. *Review of Financial Studies*, 1531-1565.

# Religion Based Information

Ta Young Im  
Korea Kent Foreign School

---

For thousands of years, religion has had a significant influence on art, culture and national identity. The history of Asian art begins with three main religions: Buddhism, Hinduism, and Jainism. However, in analyzing the most treasured and preserved pieces of Asian art, it is clear that Buddhism, above all others, has had the strongest influence. In contrast to Hinduism and Jainism, Buddhism transcended religion and became the symbolic structure that Asian language, culture, art, and identity were constructed upon. (Nietupski, 2011) With the growing media focus on issues of national identity, and in attempts to understand our own unmistakable cultural characteristics, we often look to visual expression in the form of images, symbols, and art to connect our past to our present. Since time immemorial, visual manifestations such as paintings, sculptures, architecture and the decorative arts have provided tangible ways to communicate and document complex social and religious influences. It would be difficult to examine the history of Asian art without acknowledging the hand of Buddhism, guiding and shaping the development of Asia's visual culture. Throughout its long history, Buddhism has left many artistic masterpieces, and while works of Buddhist art often share common themes, they ultimately differ because of the influence of the traditional culture which varies from region to region.

From ancient times, China, Korea, and Japan have shared influences and traditions through an ongoing socio-cultural exchange, but also through their common religious ties. However, each one has also developed and maintained their own unique cultural characteristics which are reflected in the visual expression of each culture. Today's Buddhist culture is a blend of each country's traditional culture, indigenous nature, and distinct regional characteristics. The long history of Buddhism in each region has left the modern world with thousands of temples, paintings, sculptures and other art forms across vast distances, but with a shared set of uniquely Buddhist characteristics. This paper endeavors to investigate the effect of Buddhism on the art developed in three similar but separate nations, namely China, Korea and Japan.

The roots of Buddhism can be traced to a young prince, Siddhartha Gautama, living 2500 years ago in Lumbini, Nepal. Early scholars agree that he lived for eighty years sometime between 563 and 450 B.C.E, preceding both Jesus of Nazareth, the founder of Christianity and Muhammad, the founder of Islam. (Leidy, 2008) Today, he is venerated as the Buddha or Buddha Shakyamuni. The basic tenets of Buddhism are that life is impermanent, illusory, and filled with suffering. Suffering, according to Buddha, is caused by both desire and ignorance, and ultimately gives rise to a continuous cycle of death and rebirth. In Buddhism, suffering can only be avoided when desire and

ignorance are eliminated, and this is achieved through a life of moderation, moral behavior, and the life-long practice of meditation.

The teachings of the Buddha spread quickly from India to other parts of Asia and resulted in the development of two major schools of Buddhism: Theravada and Mahayana. Theravada Buddhism focused on a personal salvation that was possible only for those who join a monastic order and was considered the “teaching of Elders.” It spread in a southeastern direction and can often be found today in areas such as Indonesia, Sri Lanka, and Southeast Asia. In Theravada, the Buddha is considered a distinguished teacher, and each person is individually responsible for their own journey to enlightenment. In contrast, Mahayana Buddhism is considered the “greater vehicle,” and while it recognizes the Buddha as a godlike figure, it also involves devotion to bodhisattvas, other enlightened beings. Mahayana Buddhism spread from India in a more northeasterly direction, reaching China, Korea, and Japan. Slight variations of each sect evolved, some offering instant salvation through elaborate rituals and powerful gods, which were particularly attractive to the rich and ruling classes of China, Korea, and Japan.

According to an analysis of Korean Buddhism by Starr (2016), the teachings of Buddhism were transmitted through eastward across Central Asia was by monks, traders, and travelers along land and sea routes. It is estimated that Buddhism reached China in the first century A.D., and was carried to Korea by Chinese Buddhist monks by the fourth century where it became the official religion of the kingdoms of Koguryô (37 B.C.–668 A.D.), Paekche (18 B.C.–660 A.D.), and eventually Silla (Starr, 2016). It was through official Korean envoys from the Paekche court that Buddhism was first introduced to Japan in the sixth century.

The foundations of Buddhism are laid out in numerous religious texts, or sutras, which provide the tenets of the Buddhist belief system. The sutras were often copied by hand and illustrated or were reproduced through woodblock printing. The royal court and aristocracy employed vast highly skilled calligraphers and painters to reproduce these sacred works using the finest materials available at the time. A common theme in Buddhist art is the representation of deities and spiritually perfected people, and this is a common expression of Buddhist thought. Artists visually convey the enlightened status of these figures through their appearance as idealized beings. Specific character attributes are often implied by distinct physical features. According to Nietupski (2011), a protuberance on top of the head (ushnisha) is connected with wisdom, a tuft of hair or gem in the middle of the forehead is linked to enlightenment. Extended earlobes—a sign of having worn heavy jewelry as princes before denouncing material wealth—are a commonly used to portray princely wealth and the rejection of materialism, while a figure with three neck folds suggests auspiciousness. According to Nietupski (2011), the monk’s robes are a symbol of the ascetic life of the Buddha and eyebrows—as well as hand gestures (mudras) and sitting poses (asanas)—can convey a message or indicate the identity of the figure depicted. According to Leidy (2008), deities in Buddhist art are commonly portrayed with a halo or nimbus—an ancient Near Eastern solar symbol—surrounding their heads and/or an aureole, or mandola, around their entire bodies. As with many religious or spiritual artworks, emanating light is used by the artist to communicate the figure’s spiritual radiance. Additionally, the power and magical abilities of the deities in Buddhism are frequently represented by unrealistic characteristics like multiple arms and heads. Decorative aspects, such as hairstyles, jewelry, dress and hand gestures can also indicate royalty or revered spiritual beings. (Nietupski, 2011)

Our modern ideas about physical perfection and beauty are closely connected to modern culture and media. In ancient Asian art, the figures depicted were a reflection of the physical ideals

of the time. The gentle expressions and soft, rounded physiques of Buddhist figures can often look slightly feminine to modern Western viewers, however, the artists who created these images were responding to the culture of the time and driven by a desire to depict Buddhist deities in a positive light, their representations transcending the mortal limitations of age, gender, and realistic human physical features.

Upon reaching Korea in the fourth century, Buddhism was received favorably by both the court and the aristocracy. It served as the national religion until the end of the fourteenth century and, as a result, had an enormous impact on the arts of Korea. In fact, the majority of Korea's most significant surviving art treasures were inspired by the practice of Buddhism. (Starr, 2016) The advent of Buddhism in the fourth century marked a departure from the types of images and artistic styles that were common to Korea at that time. Korea's artistic heritage has its origins in the Neolithic period, almost 9000 years ago. The earliest known examples are pieces of pottery produced on the peninsula. Over the centuries, Korean potters distinguished themselves by their manufacturing of celadon, punch'ong ware, white porcelain, and underglaze-painted porcelain. (Koehler, 2012) Many of the pieces created by Korean artisans, particularly ceramics, were originally created for ceremonial and practical use, but are appreciated as pieces of art today. Korean pottery is characteristically simple, beautifully proportioned outlined, and skillfully carved and inlaid. Throughout history, Korean artisans have produced objects in a variety of other materials, including metal, lacquer, silk, and wood. In ancient times, valuable gold and bronze items like vessels and weapons were placed in the tombs of royalty and the aristocracy to assist them in the afterlife. However, the adoption of Buddhism in the fourth century significantly shifted the artistic aesthetic of Korea. This shift in taste can be observed in the vast temple complexes, striking stone and bronze statues, paintings, and exquisitely illustrated manuscripts produced from the fifth century onward. Buddhism reached the peak of its influence under the Unified Silla (668–935) and Koryô (918–1392) dynasties, as evidenced by the high number of exceptionally elegant and refined works of art created during those periods.

The royal courts and aristocracy of Korea were active patrons, regularly donating both land and large sums of money to fund the construction of Buddhist monasteries, temples and monasteries and facilitating the production of exquisite works of art. According to Buddhist teachings, devotees can gain spiritual merit through the commissioning and production of religious texts and images. For the common people of the lands, this merit was accrued by living virtuous lives and acts of assistance, such as helping to build monasteries and temples. (Leidy, 2008) It was this belief that drove the wave of artists being commissioned to create tremendous numbers of votive figures, ritual implements, illuminated manuscripts of Buddhist scriptures, and elaborate paintings. A vast number of these devotional artworks were made to decorate the numerous temples built by the Three Kingdoms and Unified Silla kings. For centuries, the upper classes of Korea were the primary proponents of Buddhism, and huge sums were invested in the production of lavish devotional objects. However, by the end of the Koryô period, the wealth and political power that had been amassed by the Buddhist establishment, coupled with the reported corruption of the clergy, and the expense of publicly funded Buddhist rituals turned the tide of favor, and the Buddhist establishment was faced with increasing criticism. While some Chosön monarchs and members of the royal family chose to remain Buddhists, the Chosön dynasty as a whole suppressed Buddhism and embraced Neo-Confucianism as the new state ideology, which not only marked the end of Buddhism's golden period in Korean history but also created another shift in the aesthetic style of the country. (Asian Society, 2017) Under Neo-Confucianism, Korea adopted a taste for simpler, more austere and practical items.

Today, modern Korean art is often described as vibrant, vigorous, spontaneous. Many of these characteristics can be applied to some of the most distinctive works of art produced in Buddhist Korea, especially the paintings and illustrated sutras, vibrant lacquerware, intricate gold ornaments, and the vast quantities of celadon wares produced for the court, aristocracy, and religious establishments during the Three Kingdoms, Unified Silla, and Koryô periods. (Koehler, 2012) All of these artworks reflect both the Buddhist beliefs of the time and the sophistication and refinement that is characteristic of East Asia's skillful artisans.

The earliest Chinese art to be influenced by Buddhism was identified as early as the second century B.C. There was an influx of foreign monks who served as teachers and translators of Buddhism, and early representations of Buddha have been discovered in tombs—such as the wall paintings in two Eastern tombs in Sichuan, among others—dating back to the second and third centuries. (Kieschnick, 2003) Despite these findings, there is little to indicate a widespread acceptance of Buddhism until the fourth century. Chinese beliefs are often a blend of the elements of Confucianism, Daoism, and Buddhism. According to Graham's analysis of faith and power in Japanese art, Confucian teachings lean toward proper moral conduct and familial piety—respecting, honoring and caring for elders, parents, and ancestors. Daoism is focused on the importance of living a balanced life and finding the Way of the Universe. In contrast, Buddhism focuses on the life of the Buddha and living in a manner that reduces suffering. Thus, many traditional Chinese myths and stories have themes and morals that weave together one or more aspects of these individual belief systems. From the fourth to the tenth century, Chinese traditions, such as Pure Land Buddhism, a practice that emphasizes faith and devotion as a means to enlightenment, began to flourish. (Hirota, 2000) Another practice, Chan, prescribes meditation and mindfulness during daily activities—both traditions were also prevalent in both Korea and Japan. Many of these practices were intended to protect the Chinese people and attain tangible benefits, such as wealth and health for the ruling elite of Chinese society. In some cases, this involved complex rituals and forms of devotion designed for advanced practitioners.

Through Buddhism, Chinese artists expressed both inner harmony and outer harmony, particularly a peace with natural surroundings. (Tanaka, 1980) Chinese artists often isolated themselves by leaving the hustle and bustle of busy cities and traveling to remote, mountainous areas where they could live and work surrounded by nature. For this reason, landscapes have become a familiar theme in Chinese art. Chinese artists did not strive for realism in their landscapes; there is typically little weight given to the laws of perspective or even the use of fixed point of perspective. Light comes from multiple perspectives and shadows are often non-existent for this reason. According to Tanaka (1980), the seasons are frequently repeated across several screens or panels and there is, of course, a visible focus on brushwork that has become a distinctive and defining element of Chinese landscape painting. (Nietupski, 2011)

Another reason that landscape painting became popular in Asian regions directly related to the dominance of Confucianism and neo-Confucianism. Confucianism was a belief in the unity of heaven and human morality. Thus they believed that the combination of the nature of the human, nature, and heaven created a well-defined unity that brought beauty to art. The artists of ancient China often focused on nature itself because it was considered sacred. For them, it was both an integral part of human life and a symbol of higher spiritual being. As China developed its own variations of the Buddhist philosophy and adapted the related rituals, Chinese art styles also adapted and improved. For example, while Chinese Buddhist art played a leading role in Northeast Asia since ancient times, and was unmistakably characterized by diversity. Many of the core elements reveal the

strong influence of Korean and Japanese art. (Sullivan, 1962) However, the art of ancient China was based on Chinese legends, myths, and Confucian thought, making it unique to the region. Buddhist art flourished during the period of the Southern and Northern dynasties and China's most revered art form—landscape painting—emerged during Song dynasty. When Buddhism spread throughout China, it also brought with it the art of calligraphy through its exquisite illuminated manuscripts, ritual manuals and sutras. Weidner's (2001) examination of the cultural intersections of Chinese Buddhism reveals that literature—or literati culture—became a distinctive element of Chinese society, with monks being particularly skilled in the scholarly arts. In addition to being an act of worship, calligraphy became a viable and powerful way to disseminate the Buddhist texts and scriptures.

Chinese Buddhist sculpture is left many masterpieces and thousands of monasteries to the modern world. The enduring works often illustrate robust physiques in flimsy clothing, an Indian influence, while sculptures that feature slight bodies with thick clothing suggest a Chinese expression. According to Kieschnick (2005) the symbolism of the number 3 extended to the robes of monks, which are often portrayed in an arrangement of three robes to represent the “three times”—past, present and future. These visual traditions, like the many religious traditions, are often mixed to create a unique style from a patchwork of influences.

The Buddhist influence was initially carried to Japan from the Korean kingdom of Paekche in a series of diplomatic exchanges in 538 or 552. (Asia Society, 2017) The idea of Buddhism was welcomed with interest by the ancient Japanese people. However, they did not necessarily want to convert to Buddhist beliefs; rather they wanted to use Buddhism to bring power to the state. The introduction of Buddhism to Japan was one of the most influential events in Japanese history and had an enduring effect on the development of its culture and its visual art. As with China, Korea and other regions, the visual culture of Buddhism is inextricably linked to its practice as a faith. As Buddhism flourished in Japan, the arts and Japanese artisans also prospered. The religion was firmly established by the 7th century, and Japan had many temple complexes, a plentitude of orders of priests and nuns, and a body of highly skilled artisan devoted to creating the large-scale icons for public worship and smaller statuettes for private worship of the Buddhist faith. (MetMuseum, 2017)

According to Graham (2007), Japanese visual culture was also considerably influenced by the immigration of a wave of Chinese Chan monks during the 13th and 14th centuries. Chan referred to the philosophy of Zen and was enthusiastically received by the Japanese people, especially the powerful samurai class of the time. These periods of cultural change not only brought religion and monastic life to the region but also brought many distinct aspects of Chinese culture, including art. The Japanese culture was quickly flooded with new structures of cultural expression, thought systems, a more sophisticated political framework, numerous art forms, and even a writing system of Chinese characters, much of which they adopted without adaptation. For example, we can see from artworks produced in the 18th and 19th centuries that Japan adopted the Chinese methods, style, and motifs of painting. In addition, many texts and hanging scrolls began to appear in this period. One of the most highly revered and widely read texts is the Lotus Sutra, which espouses—in easily understood language—the ability of all devotees to attain enlightenment purely through the power of belief. (Graham, 2007) Much of the Japanese Buddhist art in the Asia Society's collection date from the 8th to the 14th century and include many fine specimens of clay, bronze, and wood sculptures, which were created for the altars of worship halls. (Graham, 2007) An art form that is intimately linked to Zen Buddhism is ink monochrome painting, and many of the artisans to popularize this

medium and style were Zen monks. They used the quick and expressive medium to document and share their religious views and personal convictions.

However, with the passing of time, many artists moved on to more secular themes related to nature, such as birds, orchids, bamboo, flowering plums, all of which were subjects of scholarly symbolism in Chinese society. The subject matter—frequently painted on silk screens and panels—later expanded to include literary figures and landscapes, and the medium and style of painting often became more important than the artist's individual expression. As explained by Hirota (2000), art and society became increasingly secular, and Zen Buddhism placed value on simplicity and the importance of the natural world, which is reflected in the distinctive aesthetic that developed around it. Despite this shift in values, Buddhism is still the dominant religion in Japan to this day.

To a modern Western art lover examining the Buddhist art of these three countries, the differences will not be immediately obvious. The continent of Asia has always been made up of multiple religions, cultures, nationalities and style aesthetics. They often share common themes of the Buddhist religion and man's relationship with nature. Nevertheless, as we have examined in this essay, Buddhist art in the fields of painting, sculpture and textual art exhibit many differences, mostly resulting from the unique blend of Buddhism and each region's inherited traditional culture, indigenous nature, and distinct regional characteristics, all of which differ from country to country and from region to region. While China, Korea, and Japan have shared influences and traditions, and have had common religious ties since ancient times, it is clear that each one has developed its own unique cultural and visual identity, and further, its own individual connection with Buddhism. Through its rich history with these regions, Buddhism has left thousands of masterpieces to posterity. They include temples, sculptures, paintings, ceramics, writings and manuscripts, icons and practical items created for ceremonial purposes, all revealing each region's culture, customs, traditions, and beliefs, and steadily guiding the developing the visual culture and national identity of each country.

## References

Awakawa, Y. (1982). *Zen painting*. New York: Kodansha International.

B. (2017, March 19). Influence of Buddhism in the Heian Period - Boundless Open Textbook. Retrieved June 27, 2017, from <https://www.boundless.com/art-history/textbooks/boundless-art-history-textbook/japan-before-1333-ce-15/the-heian-period-106/influence-of-buddhism-in-the-heian-period-480-7706/>

Buddhism in China. (n.d.). Retrieved June 27, 2017, from <http://asiasociety.org/buddhism-china>.

Buddhism in Japan. (n.d.). Retrieved June 27, 2017, from <http://asiasociety.org/education/buddhism-japan>.

Dehejia, A. V. (n.d.). Buddhism and Buddhist Art | Essay | Heilbrunn Timeline of Art History | The Metropolitan Museum of Art. Retrieved June 27, 2017, from [http://www.metmuseum.org/toah/hd/budd/hd\\_budd.htm](http://www.metmuseum.org/toah/hd/budd/hd_budd.htm)

Dumoulin, H. (1990). *Zen Buddhism: a history*. New York: Macmillan.

Graham, P. J. (2007). *Faith and power in Japanese Buddhist art: 1600-2005*. Honolulu: Univ. of Hawaii Press.

Hirota, D. (2000). *Toward a contemporary understanding of the pure land Buddhism: creating a Shin Buddhist theology an a religiously plural world*. Alabny, NY: State Univ. of New York Press.

Kieschnick, J. (2003). *The impact of Buddhism on Chinese material culture*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University.

Koehler, R., Larios, D., & Kim, H. (2012). *Korean ceramics: the beauty of natural forms*. Seoul, Korea: Seoul Selection.

Lee, A. S. (n.d.). Korean Buddhist Sculpture (Fifth–Ninth Centuries) | Essay | Heilbrunn Timeline of Art History | The Metropolitan Museum of Art. Retrieved June 27, 2017, from [http://www.metmuseum.org/toah/hd/kobs/hd\\_kobs.htm](http://www.metmuseum.org/toah/hd/kobs/hd_kobs.htm)

Leidy, D. P. (2008). *The art of Buddhism: an introduction to its history & meaning*. Boston: Shambhala.

Nietupski, P. K., OMara, J., & Kucera, K. J. (2011). *Reading Asian art and artifacts: windows to Asia on American college campuses*. Bethlehem: Lehigh University Press.

Nuances of Black and White. (n.d.). Retrieved June 27, 2017, from <http://academic.mu.edu/meissnerd/comella.html>

Religious Influence on Korean Art. (n.d.). Retrieved June 27, 2017, from <http://asiasociety.org/education/religious-influence-korean-art>

Starr, F. (2016). *Korean buddhism: history, condition and art*. Lavergne, TN: S.n.

Sullivan, M. (1962). *The Birth of Landscape Painting in China*. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Tanaka, I., & Darling, B. (1980). *Japanese ink painting: Shubun to Sesshu*. New York: Weatherhill.

Weidner, M. S. (2001). *Cultural intersections in later Chinese Buddhism*. Honolulu, HI: University of Hawaii.

Zen Buddhism and the Arts of Japan. (n.d.). Retrieved June 27, 2017, from <http://mcclungmuseum.utk.edu/exhibits/zen-buddhism-and-the-arts-of-japan/>

# Terrorism in the 21<sup>st</sup> Century

Kerry Hollis  
Elgin High School  
Elgin, IL

---

The events of 9/11, in the United States, brought to light the painful reality that the world is in a state where all countries, even the superpowers are vulnerable to terrorist attack. The attack can be launched from within a country and may be supported by different ideologies and parties or can be external launched. Today, many nations are vulnerable to terror attacks. For instance, there have been recent terror attacks in various European nations such England, Germany, Belgium, and France. Developing economies such as Kenya and Burkina Faso are also struggling with the problem. Although it is now more than a decade since the events of 9/11, there is still confusion on various issues concerning terrorism. There are still questions on who “terrorists” are, what “terror” is, and what motivates “terrorism.” There are also questions on the best way to combat terror attack. Besides, scholars from political science, sociology, economics, and psychology field have developed different theories to explain terrorism phenomenon. The study explores the topic of terrorism and various theories explaining the phenomenon. The aim of the paper is therefore to discuss various debates on terrorism, history of terrorism, and causes of terrorism.

## Defining Terrorism

Defining terrorism is considered to be complicated but necessary. Ideally, terrorism arises from the term “terror” which defines various activities associated with parties or individuals who use violence to instill fear (Wardlaw 17). There have been different reasons given to justify the use of violence to instill terror, and there have also been various parties involved in defining terrorism, each giving different perceptive, which has led to many definitions of terrorism. However, various historical events can be used to provide insight on terrorism and hence define the phenomenon.

Many sources seeking to explain terrorism show that terrorism is not a recent phenomenon. In the history of human, individuals have been using violence to instill fear in a wider audience with the aim of preventing certain people from doing something or on the other hand to persuade them into particular behavior (Wardlaw 26). Such violence activities continue to occur in many states and regimes for decades. The term “terrorism” was first used to refer to activities of the nation and not subgroup as it is currently used (Abrahms 43). For instance, the government that took charge after the French Revolution conducted a mass execution on the nobles who were believed to be against

the newly formed state (Ankersen and O'Leary 23). Terrorism was seen to be perpetrated by state different from the modern day terrorism which is carried out by non-states parties such as Al Qaeda.

The original definition of terrorism is distinct from the modern terrorism. In the late 19th and early 20<sup>th</sup> century, terrorism involved assassinations and killing of individuals who were radical and believed to be against the government (Mirza and Verdier 181). It was a way to suppress political movements that were a threat to the ruling government. From the mid-20th century, the concept of terrorism was expanded to include any political violence that scholars believed were conducted to instill fear in people (Wardlaw 43). Different scholars categorize terrorism as a form of political violence. Media also started labeling any attack from an external source as terrorism (Ankersen and O'Leary 38). Such made it difficult to have a common definition of the term "terrorism" currently.

The term "terrorism" originates from a Latin word "terrere" meaning "to frighten" (Wardlaw 15). As indicated earlier, the term was first used after French Revolution, a period known as Reign of Terror that happened from 1793 to 1794 (Mockaitis 78). Different events in history can be argued to provide an idea of terrorism. The Roman Empire forced individuals and nations into submission by using crucifixion and genocides. The French Revolution claimed lives of more than 20,000 people with few months as a way to suppress people. Nazi in Germany and Stalinist in the Soviet Union are considered to be contemporary examples of terrorism (Mockaitis 85). These events are considered to be acts of terrorism perpetrated by the state or the ruling political parties. There are also examples of various non-state violence acts that have been used to create fear or coerce people into certain behavior in the history. Jewish Zealots assassinated those they believed to conspire against them when they were countering the Roman Empire (Sageman 72). The killing of Archduke Franz Ferdinand by Serb nationalist that led to starting of First World War is also considered to be an act of terrorism (Chaliand et al. 83). The event of 9/11 is another example of non-state terrorism. These examples show that both state and non-state can perpetrate terrorism.

Different studies indicate that terrorism is very broad consisting of various actors who have different goals. However, all activities of terrorism involve the use of violence. In Russia for instance, it can be argued that anarchists used violence not only to cause terror in the czarist regime but also to introduce a larger revolution (Wardlaw 63). Such an example provides a correct idea of terrorism but also show the difficulty of having an absolute definition of terrorism. Chaliand et al. argue that it has been difficult to create a generalization of the term without making the definition meaningless to some events (36). The main confusion has been on the development of a definition that will include all actors such as states and all goals and motivations of terror attacks.

Most scholars seem to agree that terrorism is an anxiety-inspired approach of repeated violent activities that are perpetrated by individuals, groups or state for political, criminal or idiosyncratic reasons (Wardlaw 29). Different from assassination, in terrorism, the direct target of violence is not the intended or the primary objectives. Chaliand et al. argue that the immediate target of violence are chosen selectively or randomly from the target population and are used to send a message to the wider population (92). For instance, terrorist considers the latest Manchester attack on children as a way to caution the larger population in England and Europe. Mirza and Verdier describe terrorism as a violence-based communication whereby a terror group or organization targets certain victims to manipulate the main target (183). The communication used by terror group is expected to create terror or create attention depending on the goal sought by the attacker. Terrorism is described as the used of unlawful violence to coerce a government or political, religious, ideological societies (Chaliand et al. 19). Although the definition covers all forms of terrorism, it does not differentiate

terror attack from other attacks. The European Union describes terrorism as an act that is aimed to intimidate a population, persuade government or international body to perform or stop performing a certain act and to destabilize the political, economic, constitutional or social structure of a nation or international body (Ankersen and O’Leary 56).

Terror groups achieve their objectives through various illegal activities. Terror activities range from targeting individuals to destroying vital infrastructures and services to society. Terrorists are also involved in activities such as kidnappings, hijackings and other criminal activities that cause fear in the wider audience. According to European Union definition, terrorism is not just a movement or ideology but also a tactic of achieving various objectives (Chaliand et al. 21). As a tactic, terrorism does not have a political charge or ideology. Terrorism can, therefore, be argued to be a process that uses different methods to instill fear in target audience with the aim of achieving certain goals (Ankersen and O’Leary 25). For instance, a terror group may tamper with traffic lights to cause confusion with the intention of turning people against authority and thus destabilizing political system. Terrorists and terrorist organizations are therefore individuals and organizations who believe in using methods of instilling fears to achieve their objectives (Chaliand et al. 27). Describing “terrorism” tactic indicate that freedom fighters can be referred to as terrorist since they use terror to achieve their goals. However, the difficulty experienced in differentiating the form of terror used by individuals or organization, especially when considering freedom fighters underlines the lack of precise definition of terrorism. Defining terrorism as a method of using terror, therefore, leave many with the question of what exactly is terrorism. However, the possible definitions in the literature that associated terrorism with spread terror to coerce certain behavior can be argued to be enough to explain the phenomenon.

## History of Terrorism

History shows that method of using fear as a weapon is common for both states and non-state bodies. Different authors provide different accounts of terrorism, both in the past and in the present. Rapport provides four waves of international terrorism (47). The first wave known as an anarchist of terrorism which marked the start of modern terrorism began in Russia in the 19th century and lasted until the beginning of 20th century. The second wave known as anticolonial happened between the 1920s and 1960. The third wave known as new left occurred between the 1960s and 1980s. The “anarchist” wave emerged from Russia signifying anarchist dissatisfactions with slow reforms of society. Anarchists believed that various traditions bounded the society and therefore used terror to destroy these traditions. Their idea was that terror was going to persuade those who were pro-government to stop supporting the government. They attacked many top officials with the aim of polarizing society and promoting uprising. The anti-colonial wave started after signing of the Treaty of Versaille that ended the First World War (Chaliand et al. 78). The principle of self-determination inspired new kind of terrorist groups. For instance, Jewish and Irish Republican Army organizations waged terror attacks against Britain (Rapoport 49). The Vietnam War inspired the start of the “new left” terrorism. The new left terrorists were the first indication that modern states were vulnerable to tactics and weapons that were relatively unsophisticated. Many young people started terror groups such as Italian Red Brigades, West German and French Action Directe (Rapoport 51). These organizations engaged in activities such as hijacking, kidnapping, and assassination. The “religious” marked by the rise of a suicide attack is an attempt to cause mass casualties and the use of chemical

weapons. For instance, in 1983, the Shai organization promoted suicide terrorists against US marines. According to Sedgwick, the fourth wave of terrorism inspired by the need to destroy United States target and defend Islam (98).

Many authors have criticized Rapoport's description of the history of terrorism. Sedgewick agrees with the four waves of terrorism but argues that the first wave started in Italy in 1820 and not in Russia (99). He also argues that there has been more terrorist organization between the 1920s and 1960s and that terrorism was inspired more by the strategies that were adopted more than the causes. Mockaitis argues that more terrorist activities in the fourth wave were committed by a follower of Islam giving another perspective of terrorism (54). He further argues that instability remains among the primary motivation of terrorism.

## Cause of Terrorism

Different studies provide different conclusions on the causes of terrorism. Terrorism can either be due to political and social injustices or the belief that causing violence to instill fear will bring social or political change. Although this explanation may seem simple, it highlights two main features witnessed in most of the terrorist activities. Individuals who chose terrorism as a tactic believe that violence is an effective way of achieving their political, social or religious goal. However, scholars argue that the cause of terrorism is difficult to determine (Hoffman 34). The best way to determine the answers to the causes of terrorism is to consider different definitions of terrorism (Abrahms 47). Also, the cause can be found by considering the motivations of terrorists.

Ethno-nationalism is deemed to be among the leading causes of terrorism. Ethno-nationalism refers to a situation whereby a population desires to break from the bondage of government and make their government. Many authors have cited discrimination as a cause of terrorism especially in Europe. Leiken argues that the Muslims who are sometimes viewed as outsiders in European nations and treated differently, forcing them to become radicalized (1). Religion is another factor that is believed to cause terrorism. Although it is not the main reason as believed today, it plays a factor in most of the terrorist activities previously conducted in most countries. Some scholars associate modern terrorism with radical Islamic fundamentalism.

Sageman describes global Salafi jihad as a global religious revivalist movement which the main agenda is to reestablish Muslim lost glory in Islamic states (15). Studies have shown that terrorism may be motivated by social-economic factors such as poverty (Chaliand et al. 72). Wardlaw argues that issues such as victimization, frustration, and humiliations among young people in developing nation may increase tension and hostilities (83). Socioeconomic problems allow terrorist organizations to easily convince young people to wage their anger on western countries (Chaliand et al. 78). Lastly, political grievances due to oppressive governments inspire some individuals to form terror groups as a way of expressing their dissatisfaction. Most of the explanation provided about the causes of terrorism cites dissatisfactions with political, religious or social systems as the main reason for formation terror groups. In most cases, these terror groups are formed to achieve certain goals through the spread of fear.

### The Islamic State of Iraq and the Levant (ISIS)

The ISIS is considered to be the biggest threat in western nations currently. The group rose to prominence in 2014 when it used violence to overthrow Iraq government (Carter et al. 1). Based

on the definitions of terrorists, ISIS is a terrorist organization because it uses terror to achieve its goals. The organizations are widely known for its terror activities that involve spreading videos of the beheading of journalists, civilians, and soldiers. ISIS has its origin from a group that associated al-Qaeda and is believed to claim authority over all Muslims in the world (McCabe 145). Similar to other terror organizations such as al-Qaeda, ISIS continues to conduct multiple attacks, some of which have exposed western world. In Europe, the organization has claimed ownership of different terror attacks in Belgium, Britain, France, Germany, and Sweden. Young Muslims have perpetrated most terror attacks believed to engage in fundamental values (McCabe 148). These attacks have changed the perspective of terrorism in European nations. Before, although there were some terror attacks, European nations felt relatively secure. Due to these attacks, individual countries and the European Union have taken measure to combat terrorism. For instance, in 2015 the European Union took measure to prevent smuggling of arms and illegal immigrants into Europe (McCabe 151). In 2016, another measure was taken by the European Union by launching of counter-terrorism Center, the ECTC (Europol 1). These measures show how terrorism has been a huge threat even to first world countries that were considered to be secured.

## **Effectiveness of Terrorism**

Apart from the psychological impact of terrorism, it is important to consider terrorism has any impact on politics. Various studies on whether terrorism has any influence on state policies and have provided different conclusions. The primary goals of terrorists include territorial change, regime change social control, and policy change. They pursue their goals through intimidation, attrition, provocation, suicide, outbidding and spoiling.

Most authors argue that the most important element of terror attacks is the information delivered to targeted political, religious and social organizations. Terrorists use their terror to change perceptions and communicate. In similar ways, counter-terrorism uses information. Studies have also shown that terrorists are more likely to attack democracy than other regime types. Democracies are the main target for terrorists because they are more restrained in their response to counterattack (Abrahms 48). Regarding coercing states, Pape claims that about 50 percent of terror attack between 1980 and 2001 succeeded in policy changes (251). Abrams conducted an analysis of 28 terrorist organizations to determine the effectiveness of their strategies and found that only 7 percent of their goals were achieved (43). The conclusion was that terrorism is not an effective method of coercion. The effectiveness of terror campaigns is dependent on information, type of objective, regime type targeted and type of attack used (Ankersen and O'Leary 74). All in all, terrorists have managed to create fear in many countries. Although they may not achieve their goals, they succeed in spreading fear among the innocent population.

## **Conclusion**

Although there is not agreement on the actual definition of terrorism, the term can be argued to refer to activities that are aimed to cause terror with the goal of achieving political, religious, economic and social goals. In most case, terrorism has political aspects, but it is different from other forms of political violence. It has happened in many regions and has affected people in different generations. Distinct from another form of violence, terror is used a weapon by individuals who

believe that it is only by spreading fear among people that they can achieve their goals. Although often people tend to associate terrorism with Islam, it has been perpetrated by different groups of the various beliefs over the time. Causes of terrorism are in most cases associated with dissatisfaction. All in all, terrorism represents movements that use terror as a tactic to achieve its goals.

## References

Abrahms, Max. "Why Terrorism Does Not Work." *International Security* 31.2 (2006): 42-78. Web.

Ankersen, Christopher, and Michael O'Leary. *Understanding Global Terror*. Cambridge: Polity, 2007. Print.

Carter, Chelsea J., Hamdi Alkhshali, and Susanna Capelouto. "Kerry Assures U.S. Support If Iraq Unites Against ISIS - CNN.Com". CNN. N.p., 2014. Web. 3 July 2017.

Chaliand, Gérard et al. *The History Of Terrorism*. Berkeley, Calif.: University of California Press, 2007. Print.

Europol. "European Counter Terrorism Centre - ECTC". Europol. N.p., 2017. Web. 3 July 2017.

Hoffman, Bruce. *Inside Terrorism*. New York City: Columbia University Press, 2017. Print.

Leiken, Robert. "Europe's Angry Muslims." *Foreign Affairs*. N.p., 2005. Web. 3 July 2017.

McCabe, Thomas R. "A Strategy For The ISIS Foreign Fighter Threat." *Orbis* 60.1 (2016): 140-153. Web.

Mirza, Daniel, and Thierry Verdier. "International Trade, Security And Transnational Terrorism: Theory And A Survey Of Empirics." *Journal of Comparative Economics* 36.2 (2008): 179-194. Web.

Mockaitis, Thomas R. *The "New" Terrorism: Myths And Reality*. Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press, 2008. Print.

PAPE, ROBERT A. "The Strategic Logic Of Suicide Terrorism." *American Political Science Review* 97.03 (2003): 243-261. Web.

Rapoport, David C. "Four Waves Of Modern Terrorism." *Attacking Terrorism: Elements Of A Grand Strategy*. Audrey Kurth Cronin and James M. Ludes. Washington, D.C: Georgetown University Press, 2004. Print.

Sageman, Marc. *Understanding Terror Networks*. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2011. Print.

Sedgwick, Mark. "Inspiration And The Origins Of Global Waves Of Terrorism." *Studies in Conflict & Terrorism* 30.2 (2007): 97-112. Web.

Wardlaw, Grant. *Political Terrorism*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2002. Print.

# World War II in Korea

Hans Bromin  
Celina High School  
Celina, TX

---

## Introduction

The Second World War started in September 1, 1939 and continued for six years ending on the 2<sup>nd</sup> of September, 1945. Being a war that involved virtually the entire world, one would expect that there was a solid reason as to why the world went into war. This, however, is not the case. There are a number of events cited as the cause of World War II. Some sources claim that World War II was simply a continuation of world war two. Other sources point at a conflict between China and Japan after Japan seized Manchuria from China. Italy's defeat in the battle of Adowa in Ethiopia is also cited as one of the reasons for a second global war (Coetzee & Shevin-Coetzee, 2011). The war saw the Axis powers on side which included Germany, Italy and Japan with the Allies on the other side which included France, Soviet Union, U.S.A., Great Britain and China. With just a few countries mentioned to fight against each other, one would wonder why the war is called a world war. While other nations are not mentioned as key players, they all hard a part to play. These major countries were at the time colonial masters. When they went to war, they got help from their colonies. Japan for instance, ruled over Korea and got immense help from the country. This paper aims at looking at the role played by minor nations specifically Korea in World War II.

## Causes of World War II

The cause of World War II remains a mystery. However, a few points are forwarded as the true causes of the deadliest war to have ever crossed the face of the earth. The peace of Paris is cited to a major cause of World War II. At the end of World War I, a treaty was signed in Paris. This treaty, however, did not satisfy all parties. Some felt aggrieved and were determined to fight for an equal share. The losing side in the First World War including Germany and Austria did not subscribe to the Paris agreement (Coetzee & Shevin-Coetzee, 2011). This agreement called for the losers to give up arms and consequently demanded that they make reparations. Signing of this agreement was not an easy task. Germany, for instance, had to be threatened for it to sign the treaty.

Economic concerns also played a huge part in causing this war. World War I had left countries in a bad economic state. Countries had over spent on military and lost millions of soldiers. Replacing their positions would cost huge amounts of money. Europe, however, took a short time to

recover economically. This would, nevertheless, be short lived as the Great Depression in the U.S. had huge impacts on Europe. Due to the economic downfall, countries were eager to take on any opportunity to generate more wealth. The First World War had ended with losers being punished to the advantage of winners. As a result, a new war was welcome if winners would go ahead and be compensated by the losers.

Nationalism is also cited as one of the causes of World War II. After World War I, people grew extremely patriotic to their countries. Winners had all reasons to be proud of their countries. They felt that they had conquered the world. Surprisingly, the losing countries had more patriotism growing. People either believed that they had been short changed or that they would have another day where they would win. This extreme patriotism would ensure that virtually everyone supported any move by the government especially in attacking those they believed had denied them victory.

Dictatorship had started spreading in many countries. People were not given a chance to voice their concerns especially if it would go against what the rulers wanted. Dictatorship was the result of numerous political unrest in countries as well as the worsening economic state of these countries. For recovery, leaders believed to have better ideas and would not listen to other opinion. Countries such as Japan, Soviet Union, Italy and Germany had dictators who did what they thought was right. With dictatorship, it was easy to go back to war right after another war which had contributed to the poor state of global economy.

Failure of appeasement between Great Britain and Germany is also cited as one of the major causes of World War II. Czechoslovakia became an independent country right after the World War I. as German encroached on more territories, Czechoslovakia was surrounded by German territory. This meant that Germany had overpowered the country and thus was an easy target. Sudetenland, an area in Czechoslovakia was occupied by Germans. This caught the attention of Hitler and he decided to seize it. Great Britain stood with Czechoslovakia preventing any attack by Germans. However, as a way to appease the Prime Minister of Britain allowed Hitler to have Sudetenland with the condition that he would not ask for more territory (Media Rich Learning, 2004). Hitler would, however demand more territory and in 1939, he seize the rest of Czechoslovakia. This caused bad blood between Germany and Great Britain.

## Role of minor nations in World War II

While initially the war touched mostly a few major nations, minor nations would eventually be involved. The minor nations came to support their friendly nations and thus escalated the war. While in the beginning only a few countries were willing to join the big nations, by the end of the war, only a few countries had managed to stay neutral. Minor countries from Europe, Asia, America and even Africa participated in the war as minor contributors. In Africa, one of the most important minor countries to be involved in the war was Kenya. Kenya acted as a training ground for the British soldiers. In World War II alone, Kenya contributed a total of 98,240 Askaris into the Kings Africa Rifle which fought for Britain's interest (Iriye, (2014). The Kenyan soldiers were also used in the Burma campaign against the Japanese. The Burma War was one is where Britain and Japan as two major countries. In Asia, one of the minor countries involved in the war was Korea. At the time, Korea was under the rule of Japan. World War II was a significant event to Korea. The end of the war also marked the end of Japanese rule over the country. In World War II alone, more than 100,000 Koreans had become members of the Imperial Japanese Army. Many of them would die in war.

In Europe, there were plenty of minor countries joining the war. A good example is Finland. Finland was under the interest of the Soviet. It would, however refuse the Soviet Union to build some of its military bases in that country. Consequently, Soviet Union attacked it. After the attack, it unsuccessfully sought help from United Kingdom. After UK denied Finland help to stop invasion by the Soviet Union, Finland sought help from the Nazi. Nazi cooperation with Finland led to an attack by the Soviet Union leading to start of the Continuation War (Iriye, (2014). This would see Britain declaring War on Finland. A few minor countries would later declare war on Finland as well. These countries included New Zealand, Canada, Australia and South Africa. The war continued with the relations between the Nazi and the Finnish almost became an alliance. Finland would later be compelled end its relations with Germany for it to regain peace. This happened after Germany surrendered. It would then realize complete peace with the UK and the Soviet Union.

In down south, New Zealand is an example of minor countries that rallied behind their colonial masters. The country declared War in 1939 immediately after Britain had declared war. New Zealand issued a statement saying, *“With gratitude for the past and confidence in the future, we range ourselves without fear beside Britain. Where she goes, we go; where she stands, we stand. We are only a small and young nation, but we march with a union of hearts and souls to a common destiny”* (Lyons, 2016). New Zealand contribution in the war was profound. It sent troops to serve in North Africa, Italy and Greece. It also offered a good number of pilots to serve in the war. After Britain, New Zealand was second in per capital casualties suffered among all the commonwealth nations.

Brazil was initially not interested in the war. It remained neutral until 1941 after it caved gave in to the request by the U.S. to have bases which the U.S. would use as bases for patrolling South Atlantic. Brazil would later persuade other American countries to cut diplomatic and economic relations with the axis powers. This came after the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbor and the declaration of war against the U.S.A. by the Fascist Italy and the Nazi Germany. After the American countries agreed to cut relations with the Axis Powers, Germany and Italy would extend warfare against such nations (Coetzee & Shevin-Coetzee, 2011). Brazil would continue supporting the allied nations helping these nations gain control over South Atlantic. Brazil would later cave in to popular pressure and agree to send 25,000 troops to help fight in the Italian campaign.

## Korea in World War II

All the major nations in World War II turned to the minor nations for help at one time. Any time when a country goes to war, it requires a lot of resources. Some of these resources are used to feed the military while others are to sustain the war through acquisition of weapons. In big wars, courtiers are not able to sustain themselves. As a result, they choose to borrow hence incurring colossal amount of debts. During World War II era, countries had managed to seize other courtiers turning them to colonies. These colonies would then supplement the major countries with food and in some cases men to fight in the war. During World War II. Korea was a Japanese protectorate. Later, it was annexed into Japanese borders under the Japan-Korea Annexation treaty (Lee, 1998). Japan would later start the puppet nation of Manchukuo where it started various industries. As the industries grew, Korea benefited from the improved infrastructure. Later, as Japan grew in population and expanded its military, it allowed Korea to start heavy industries such as mining. All these

were in a bid to raise enough resources to feed the expanding Japanese military. Korea proved to be a key partner to Japan as it also provided the country with rice, timber and fish (Tsurumi, 2015).

World War II started in different times in different parts of the world. In Europe, many scholars cite 1939 as the year when World War II started. In the U.S., World War II is said to have started in 1941 when Japan attacked USA (Lyons, 2016). In Asia, World War II started in 1937 when Japan launched total war against China. This attack by the Japanese empire on the Republic of China was referred to as Second Sino-Japanese War. This war began with the Marco Polo Bridge incident. Dispute between troops from the two countries escalated into a fully-fledged war. Two years into the war, Japan labor force shrunk considerably. Most men were fetched from their work places and taken to war. This resulted in a drop in production back home. This development called for a quick response to salvage the situation. This led to the recruitment of Koreans to work in Japan. As the war continued, more resources were needed thus more Koreans were taken to Japan to work. By the end of the Second Sino-Japanese War, more than five million Koreans worked in activities that directly helped Japan's war mission.

All this while, Koreans had not participated directly in the ongoing war. 1938, Japanese army had started to fall short in numbers. As a result, the Japanese army welcomed Koreans to help them fight against China. Initially, the Korean wing was only allowed to fight in Manchukuo. In Manchukuo, they only served in anti-insurgency roles. As the war progressed, the involvement of the Korean army grew and was involved in numerous other areas. By the time Japan attacked the U.S., Korean army was involved in major and minor attacks across the Pacific (Lyons, 2016). The Korean army earned a good reputation for their skills. They fought for Japan with loyalty never seen before. Japan's persistence in war called for more men to join the war. This time, Japan not only fought in the Second Sino-Japanese war, but also engaged in other ways with United Kingdom and U.S.A. As a result, more men were required to serve in the army. In 1944, a directive was given requiring all Korean men who did not work in various in Japan to register in the Japanese Army. By the end of the war, a total of 242,341 Koreans had actively fought in World War II under Japan's wings.

Everything would not remain as good for Japan. Korea increasingly got tired serving Japan. Almost two million Koreans had moved to Japan by the end of the war. Three quarters of this people chose to return back to Korea while the rest chose to remain in Japan. In 1941, the Korean government which was in exile at the time in China declared war on Japan. In doing so, it shifted its allegiance from the Axis powers to the Allied side. The Korean government organized volunteer groups to fight the Japanese. They were helped by China, Soviet Union and USA. As World War II came close to its conclusion, Russian troops moved overrun Northeastern China and crossed into Korea (Lowe, P. (2014). Japan would later surrender. The run of events caused America to rush to Korea to curb Russian influence in the country (Lee, 1998). Japanese living in Korea would later be deported back to Japan.

### **Korea women as comfort women**

During war, women and children suffer the most. Men leave for army camps while women are left back at home. In most cases, women are forced to prepare food and take the food to their husbands and sons. In America, Women played a much bigger role. As the war continued, more men joined the military. This led to a shortage in workforce. To prevent a drop in production, women volunteered to work in these industries. Women also played a crucial role in providing nursing services

to injured soldiers. During World War II, Korea was under Japan. This meant that the women were not as free as those in America and other places. In Korea, the Japanese army contracted women to work in various areas. These areas included cooking, nursing and laundry. Many women joined in the call to help the army considering that even some Korean men also served in the army. After joining the military camps willingly, some of the women would later be detained near military barracks. These would be used as comfort women. They would be sexually abused over and over. Prostitutes would also be recruited and taken to various stations abroad as comfort women (Tsurumi, 2015). Later, as the Japanese army expanded, there was a rise in demand for comfort women. Determined to win the war, Japan provided its troop with everything they deemed necessary to win the war. This called for more women to be taken as comfort women. With many women having left already, there was a shortage of women. This led to the forceful abduction of young girls from poor families. These girls would be fraudulently be taken from their homes some with the promise of good jobs. They would then be taken to military camps where they too would be used as comfort women by the Japan soldiers. These women can be said to have played a role in World War II. Because of their services, Japan's soldiers were able to fight. Not all women were used as comfort women. Some were given the promised jobs such as cooking and nursing.

## Conclusion

World War II goes down as the longest and fiercest war to have happened on earth. While it revolved around major nations, nations with minor interests in the war also joined. Some nations such as Korea, however, participated in the war forcefully. Their colonial masters required them to contribute a good number of soldiers while also help raise enough food to sustain the war. In World War II, Korea served in both sides. First, its allegiance was with the Axis powers. Later, as it fought Japan, it joined forces with China, Soviet Union and USA. There were many casualties that resulted from this war. Korea also registered a number of deaths among its soldiers. This war also led to close to a million Koreans opting to remain in Japan. Korean women also suffered as a result of this war. They were taken captive and used as comfort women by the Japan soldiers. By the end of World War II, Japan surrendered and moved back to its country allowing the Korean government to its affairs.

## References

Coetzee, F., & Shevin-Coetzee, M. (2011). *The world in flames: A World War II sourcebook*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Iriye, A. (2014). *The origins of the Second World War in Asia and the Pacific*. Routledge.

Lee, L. E. (1998). *World War II in Asia and the Pacific and the war's aftermath, with general themes: A handbook of literature and research*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press.

Lowe, P. (2014). *The origins of the Korean War*. Routledge.

Lyons, M. J. (2016). *World War II: A short history*. Routledge.

Media Rich Learning (Firm). (2004). *World War II*. Chicago, IL: Media Rich Learning.

Miller, F. T. (1955). *War in Korea: And the complete history of World War II*. Philadelphia?.

Tsurumi, K. (2015). *Social change and the individual: Japan before and after defeat in World War II*. Princeton University Press.

# Turkey Coups and Stock Market

Steven Yunsoo Lee  
Stevenson High School

---

## Abstract

It is well known that stock markets and currency prices are affected by a number of variables, and that fluctuations are difficult to pin down to a single event. Yet, it is still important to gauge an understanding of these markets in order to best predict financial and economic outcomes. While it is possible to make predictions about large, established global markets like the New York Stock Exchange, it becomes more difficult when examining the volatility in emerging markets like Turkey and other MENA markets, which are often deemed to be too new to have enough data to determine specific patterns and do not always follow macroeconomic trends like global markets do.

The following paper explores the impact of political events and government types, two of the variables that may cause fluctuations, in Turkey by looking at both its currency and the stock market. By examining the recent stock market and currency data from the July 15, 2016 coup in comparison with surrounding literature and media events, this paper posits that in the case of Turkey, political events may act as variables that result in short-term fluctuations in both stock prices and currency valuations. However, because Turkey is integrated in the world financial system these fluctuations from political events do not result in long-term financial trends, at least not on their own.

## Introduction

The July 15<sup>th</sup>, 2016 attempted military coup in Turkey shocked Europe and the West, but the military's attempt to overthrow Turkish President Emir Recep Erdogan was only the latest in a number of coups in recent Turkish history, including similar events in 1960, 1971, 1980, and most recently in 1997. Still, in the days and hours after the 2016 coup, fears of economic turmoil rose both inside and outside of Turkey, particularly as the Turkish lira plunged against the dollar, and as the Borsa Istanbul Index dropped the most it had since the year 2013.

Volatility in the stock market has often been recognized as being influenced by politics or political events in addition to shocking events like terrorist attacks. Understanding this correlation is important because it could help economists be better able to predict the economic aftermath of specific political events, and it also presents the possibility that the stock market can be gamed by those who influence geo-political events. While a failed military coup may directly affect politics in Turkey alone, other events might have the potential to create economic turmoil heard around the world.

While politics is recognized as an influence in finance, it may not influence the economy in traditionally accepted ways. Recent reports published by the Economist and repeated across the news-sphere suggests that political instability or a failure to adopt democracy, as is the case in Turkey, is not a sign of a failing economy. In fact, evidence suggests that political instability may not have a significant long-term impact on a nation's economy, or at least not on its own.

The following paper builds on the question regarding a correlation or causation between politics and the economy by investigating whether there is a demonstrable correlation between Turkish stock market instability and Turkish military coups. The paper will begin by presenting a brief review of recent literature on the relationship between politics and economic turmoil before moving on to present evidence that the Turkish government today is, at minimum, semi-autocratic regime that remains characterized by political instability. Finally, the paper will assess the available data on Turkish Borsa and Turkish lira fluctuations following the July 15, 2016 military coup in Turkey to suggest that for countries whose markets are considered to be integrated with the global market, political events have short-term impacts on pricing, but overall, there is not statistical evidence that proves that Turkey's integrated market would suffer long-term from political instability.

### **Literature Review: Politics and Economic Turmoil**

The following literature review will provide a brief overview of influential literature covering two important areas relevant to subsequent investigation of the relationship between Turkish coups and Turkish stock market fluctuations. It will begin by reviewing literature on the impact of political events and world events on the stock market before surveying some of the literature that highlights the controversy on the impact of differing political systems on a country's economy.

### **Political Events and the Stock Market**

It generally acknowledged that stock market fluctuations are subject to a variety of factors; but, according to a 1988 paper for the National Bureau of Economic Research, it is difficult to pin down all price fluctuations on a single event or even a singular major factor. In their paper, Cutler, Poterba, and Summers acknowledge that macroeconomic developments are an important source of news that informs traders and investors; however, political developments that affect risk also play a role in the pricing of assets on the stock market. The researchers used the World Almanac to identify important global events that were carried by the New York Times as a lead story and acknowledged by the Time's business section as having important stock market affects. They created a table of the stock market variations of 49 events that impacted the world; yet, they found that even major political events like invasions, the Cuban Missile Crisis, and assassinations had a relatively low impact on the stock market itself compared to normal fluctuations. In fact, the researchers found it difficult to explain half of the variations in stock prices based on the news of global political events alone, and they did not find sufficient empirical evidence to account for every large swing.

Despite evidence from major world markets that major political events do not dramatically impact share prices and volatility, the same was not reported to be true for Middle East and North

Africa (MENA) markets. In Hassan et al.'s paper on emerging markets in the Middle East and North Africa, the researchers found that in the sample markets political shocks play a significant role in the volatility in the market, and the GARCH model analysis used showed that volatility was created by financial shocks in South African and Kenyan markets, and Jordan was deeply affected by political and financial shocks. The study also included Turkey, Egypt and Morocco, whose markets withstood or were not significantly affected by political, economic, or financial risks.

Their study made an important point for the later discussion of this paper: not all MENA markets are the same, and their behaviors are not all aligned at all periods. This is evidenced by the extreme financial growth that has taken place in Saudi Arabia, Turkey, Israel, and the United Arab Emirates despite the political instability experienced by the general MENA area, including the American War on Terror in the Middle East, the civil war in Iraq, turbulence in world oil markets, and deteriorating block relations with the West. The task ahead is to be able to distinguish which markets are able to resist the instability and associated volatility.

### Integrated and Segmented MENA Markets

Analysis of MENA markets have shown that markets in this area can be separated into two very broad categories: markets that are well integrated with global markets, and those that are strongly segmented from global markets. Markets which feature strong integrated tend towards balanced international pricing and maintain general global trends in pricing risks, but they may feature local pricing features sometimes. Meanwhile, markets that are segmented from global equity markets are more likely to face local pricing on trading, which can make them more unstable as they are less likely to follow the predictions of global trends. However, it is important to note that instability and local pricing is not a bad thing for investors. Several papers have shown that MENA segmented markets add diversification to investors' portfolios. Thus, volatility does not prevent international investment.

It is generally understood that Turkey is well integrated with global markets, and it is likely to follow global pricing trends while using local pricing on 20 percent or less of its days of operation. Understanding Turkey's place in between global markets like the United States and newly emerging markets in the MENA region is important for these purposes. There is a significant gap in the literature on the finances of the MENA region, particularly because these markets are new and there is not enough evidence for economists to confidently say what an individual market will do when exposed to certain conditions compared to larger, more well-established markets like the American, European and Japanese markets. However, being able to understand which markets, like Turkey's Borsa, are more predictable according to global trends helps establish whether one can examine the Borsa as an emerging market, global market, or one that falls somewhere in between.

Although Turkey is recognized as being an integrated market compared to other MENA markets and there is interest in understanding the country's economic performance, the literature regarding the relationship between finances and politics in Turkey is limited. Gunay's 2016 study of political risk for Turkey showed that political risk is a reality for the nation despite giving the impression of being a fast growing and stable economy.

## Democracy or Autocracy: Effects on the Economy

In 2013, *The Economist* published an article in which it considered whether the real income growth in East Asia, which grew sevenfold between 1950 and 2005, was correlated to the increase in democracy in the region. The authors mentioned that mostly-democratic societies like India had grown into some of the most important economies in the world; but some of the highest income economies in at the time of publication, particularly Singapore, South Korea, Hong Kong, have not traditionally featured governments employing full-blown Western liberal democracy, and China, which is one of the most important economies in the world, features a staunch autocracy which tightly controlled its economic growth.

*The Economist* brought an interesting question into the mainstream: does a country require democracy in order to run a successful capitalist system? Comparative studies are popular among economists and political scientists, but many yield conflicting results, and most are unable to identify statistically important evidence that finds strong positive effects of democracy on economic growth across countries.

Ultimately, there is not yet any accepted theory that relates democracy to stock market returns, nor is there a theory that suggests that autocracy is negatively correlated to significant returns. However, there are several details that should be pointed out. The International Country Risk Group suggests that a lack of democracy or associated democratic accountability on behalf of the government is calculated as a part of political risk. Additionally, there is an argument that a democracy is better associated with stronger or better institutions, like law enforcement, regulation, and private property. However, as Lehtonen and Heimonen point out, a democracy sees a greater frequency in a change in officials, and thus greater frequency in policy change, than does an autocracy, so in this way, a democracy may be more unstable than an autocracy. Thus, it is not possible to empirically say that any particular political system relates to economic success on its own.

## Understanding the Turkish Political System: Democratic or Semi-Authoritarian or Neither

Turkey has undergone several political transitions since the fall of the Ottoman Empire in the early 20<sup>th</sup> century. Since the transition away from the monarchy, Turkey has been considered to be an “illiberal democracy” that Freedom House has called “partly-free” in the sense that political hero Mustafa Ataturk established modern, secular state, but it does not include all the trappings of a Western liberal democracy like that of the United States, though it is technically a parliamentary republic like Germany. However, since the 1990s, the country has been navigating its way back from this illiberal democracy, or tutelary democracy, to a delegative democracy in which free and fair elections take place and political freedoms and rights are recognized, to a form of competitive authoritarianism.

The transition to authoritarianism can be seen in the events of the late 20<sup>th</sup> century. The 1990s in Turkey was rife with economic crises and unstable governments, and this turmoil provided a platform for a new party – the Justice and Development Party or AKP. The AKP party, founded in 2001, grew quickly in popularity and by 2014, it hosted nine million registered members. In addition to strong popular support, AKP is also the party of the current Turkish president, Recep Tayyip Erdogan, who was elected prime minister in 2002 and served for 11 years in this position until he became

the first directly-elected president in Turkey in 2014. It is also important to note that the AKP is recognized by scholars as an Islamist party, and its attempts to integrate with the EU and support for democracy serving as a hidden agenda that includes removing the country's recent secular heritage in favor of a more Islamist regime. However, the AKP is not read this way across the board. Some scholars view it as the result of the military-heavy elite politics of the past century and instead view it as a period of normalization in Turkish politics. Although Erdogan has used his term to call for fair elections, economic growth, an end to the Turkish-Kurdish conflict, and a normalized military, the AKP party has overridden certain aspects of the Turkish constitution, which prevent personality driven regimes and unchecked powers by using a more balanced government.

Recent events in Turkey that provide demonstrable evidence of a shift from a semi-democratic secularism to an Islamist autocracy include the closure of secular high schools, increases in mosque building, slow-creeping alcohol prohibitions, the re-emergence of the Turkish-Kurdish conflict, and the targeting of journalists and academics who stand in political opposition to Erdogan and the AKP. All of these are questionable in terms of constitutionality; however, the AKP party does not yet have enough parliamentary votes to change the constitution to make their ambitions legal under the constitution.

### **Instability in the Turkish State**

Recent trends towards authoritarianism have not created instability in Turkey, as it already existed, but the latest instability, which has occurred primarily in opposition to the Erdogan government, has been punctuated by protests that have been met by the police and the riot police. These protests include the Gezi Park protests, which began with a protest about the building of the park and transformed into demonstrations lasting the month of June and included somewhere between 3.5 million and 7.5 million people who were actively protesting against encroaching Islamism. Further instability has been created by June 2015 lapse of the ceasefire previously struck between the Turkish military and Kurdish forces, which has resulted in the deaths of hundreds of civilians and the potential militarization of young Kurds.

This instability and the argument that the AKP have transitioned the country into an authoritarian regime headed by Erdogan has been bolstered by the military coup in July of 2016. Although the situation in Turkey is complex and there has not been enough time to publish a full analysis of the causes of the coup and the events of July, the media and spectators have identified potential catalysts for the military's dissatisfaction with Erdogan and AKP. In a media report released just after the coup attempt, the Turkish army reportedly blamed Erdogan for tearing down Ataturk's republic and removing secularism for the country. They also reportedly blame Erdogan for backing Sunni extremists in Syria, who are flowing back over the border and conducting terrorist attacks in Turkey. Finally, the military members participating in the coup disagree with Erdogan's move to restart the war against the Kurds, which poses huge threats to individual soldiers and civilians as Kurds remain the net majority in the eastern part of the country. Understanding the military's discontent with the regime is important within the democratic context as the modern military was assured the freedom from partisan political interference and its transition into the new secular Turkey under Ataturk was done under the idea that the military would be "the leader of movements to achieve lofty national ideals . . . The Turkish nation . . . considers its army

the guardian of its ideals.” Thus, the military’s heady role not only within the government but across nearly all sectors of Turkish society provides them with the justification for a coup.

Thus, even with a single party rule, the politics in Turkey err to the more turbulent side when compared with other democracies, although the risk of this turbulence has been considered to be relatively low compared to previous eras in modern Turkish history.

### **Data Analysis: Correlation Between Political Events and Stock Market Volatility in Turkey**

On July 15, 2016, lower-ranking members of the Turkish military staged a coup d'état against President Erdogan and the AKP party. During the evening local time, tanks began to roll through the streets of Istanbul and the Turkish capital, Ankara. Soldiers in uniform stood on both sides of the Bosphorus Bridge, which connects the Asian and European sides of Istanbul, to block access. The military forced the media off air and offline, and there was an hour long blackout on the social media sites Facebook, Twitter, and YouTube. Hours later, around 12:30 AM local time, President Erdogan FaceTimed a CNN Turk anchor, who broadcasted the conversation to the nation.

In his address, he urged the Turkish people to go into the street to defeat the military uprising. A few hours later, the Turkish National Intelligence unit announced that the coup was over. Casualties included 290 dead and 1,400 injured, including both civilians and members of the military. Overall, 6,000 people were initially arrested, and 2,839 military officers and 200 court officials were detained. By morning, the coup and its initial effects were over; however, the impact of the coup continues as the administration continues to investigate and crack down on detractors and those involved.

### **Coup’s Impact on the Turkish Lira**

The Turkish market was closed when the coup began, and the coup was over before local markets opened again. However, the United States markets were still open, and when Turkish Prime Minister Binali Yildirim announced that the coup was underway, the Turkish lira sunk to a three-week low against the dollar on the American markets as America reached the end of trading on Friday the 15<sup>th</sup> of July. The drop in the lira was the most significant in eight years. However, on Monday, the lira grew back 2 percent of what had been lost, which mitigated the damage of the 4.6 percent loss that occurred Friday. Over the next week, the USD/TRY pairing demonstrated a trust in Erdogan and faith in headlines that demonstrated the government had effectively dealt with the coup: the lira skyrocketed from a low of 2.8764 to the dollar to 3.0579 before closing out at 3.0380 on Friday the 22<sup>nd</sup> of July, which was only one full week after the coup.

### **The Istanbul Borsa**

Trading hours were over by the time the military began its coup in July, and as mentioned, the coup was effectively over only a few hours after it began. When the Borsa opened again on Monday morning, the effects of the coup could still be felt, but it was not the complete decline that would have made sense given the instability and death of the weekend. However, the Borsa Istanbul BIST-100 index did fall over seven percent on Monday, and it closed at 76,957.61, which was the lowest closing figure since June 30 when whispering of possible political instability brought the in-

dex down. In the July slump after the coup, the financial stocks took the hardest hit, and the financial sector lost more than 2,900 points in one day. Industrial stocks also felt the slide, and industry felt the loss of 935 points. The week would bring a decline of 13 percent in only a week, which was recorded as one of the most dramatic declines in the history of the Borsa market. Yet, when discussing the outlook for the Turkish market, Piotr Matys from Rabobank told the Financial Times,

“We expect Turkish assets to be vulnerable in the short term. The worst-case scenario has been avoided as a successful coup would have triggered a full-scale sell-off. The damage, however, has been done. Turkish bonds and stocks face a turbulent period due to heightened political risk.”

However, Gyorgy Kovacs from UBS offered another perspective and defended his firm’s continued position in Turkey:

“The coup attempt appears to have failed, the macro fallout from these events is unclear but seems likely to be limited – and the market continues to trade cheaply relative to its own history and, especially against [other] global emerging markets.”

The Borsa Istanbul 100 Index may have experienced a slide of 13 percent during the turbulence the week after the coup; however, it fell within the 52-week range for the index, which is slated at 68,230.47- 86,931.34. It was also significantly higher than the mid-January 2016 lows that reached the 69,000 range. What is more, the renewed growth looks typical when compared to the growth after the January decline as seen in Figure 1.



Figure 1 Borsa 100 Index – Bloomberg <http://www.bloomberg.com/quote/XU100:IND> 13 September, 2016

## Analysis: Stability, Downplay, or Both?

Regardless of one's investing or political perspective, the crash in the week following the July 15 coup, which was followed by a recovery, was not as dramatic as earlier crashes had been even within the same 12-month period despite the instability of the coup. Additionally, the Turkish lira provided a strong rebound against the dollar only a few days after its slip. Still, understanding of the lack of decline is complex, and this is where it is important to draw upon the literature referenced previously for potential speculation as to why the Turkish markets and the Turkish lira began to rebound so quickly.

First, the dramatic drop immediately after the coup and the relatively-fast recovery solidifies Turkey's position as an integrated market, at least compared to other MENA markets. It can be posited that the Borsa market itself switched to local pricing in light of the complexities of the coup and the country's financial position; however, it seems that macroeconomic and global trends evened out the depression within a few weeks to reach previous prices in May, June, and early July, as shown in figure 1. This issue was brought to the fore in the Cutler, Poterba, & Summers paper, where they showed that while events like invasions and assassinations could be correlated with dips in the American market, there was not causation, and recovery in the market usually followed bar other financial factors.<sup>263</sup>

Second, the coup itself was noted as a dramatic but failed event in the press and by spokesmen from banks, as noted above. The event took place at a time when many of the world's markets were either already closed for the weekend or about to finish trading. Thus, there was no time to initiate a major sell-off before the markets opened again Monday morning, by which point, the coup had been effectively over for 48 hours. Had the coup been successful, or had it gone on longer than a few hours, the outcome for the markets may have been different. But, it is possible to argue that because of Turkey's transition to an autocracy with a strong leader, there was enough stability that the lira and the markets had the support and confidence required to rebound after a short dip. For international investors, these fears may have been soothed by the quick movement of Turkey's allies and foreign democratic leaders to condemn the coup and supports Erdogan's legitimacy in office.<sup>264</sup>

Furthermore, the rebounds came at time where President Erdogan was showing political strength as well as control over his country, which cements the notion that Turkey is in or has completed the transition from illiberal democracy into an autocracy. In the nearly two months after the coup failed, the administration has arrested over 40,000 people, and in September, the government removed mayors from 28 municipal administrations from across the country and fired over 11,000 teachers.<sup>265</sup> The move to eliminate potential blowback from the coup has transformed into an attempt to remove and silence any opposition to the government. It serves to play towards an authoritarian stance on behalf of the regime, which could be important in terms of market stability because it signals that despite further turmoil, Turkey's leadership and policies will remain the same and it will overcome future attempts, whether military or otherwise, to remove the government from power.

263 Cutler, Poterba, & Summers.

264 Mark Landler, "Obama's Support of Erdogan Is a Stark Reminder of Turkey's Value to U.S." *The New York Times*, 20 July 2016, <http://www.nytimes.com/2016/07/21/world/europe/obama-erdogan-turkey-coup-attempt.html>

265 Ceylan Yeginer, "Turkey Uses Post-Coup Emergency Decree to Purge Mayors and Teachers, *The New York Times*, 9 September 2016, <http://www.nytimes.com/2016/09/10/world/middleeast/turkey-uses-post-coup-emergency-decree-to-purge-mayors-and-teachers.html>

Thus, within a time of political turmoil, Turkey's government is working, right or wrong, to remove future chaos from the narrative, which could protect it from similar episodes in the financial markets, or keep the events from doing major long-term damage.

## Conclusion

Ultimately, the failed coup in Turkey did not affect the health of the country's currency or stock markets, at least on its own, over the long term because Turkey is home to an integrated market that features volatility that is subject to local pricing but is more adept to macroeconomic trends. Additionally, Turkey's move to authoritarianism may have impacted the political turmoil in the country, but there is not empirical evidence that says that Turkey's would be more impacted by an authoritarian government on its own than previously held illiberal democratic governments, and as evidenced by Erdogan's tight control of the events after the coup, his strong authoritarian rule could prevent major episodes, at least directly related to politics, from occurring in the markets by keeping change controlled.

## References

Anadolu Agency. 2016. "Markets shaking off post-coup attempt losses, as Turkish lira slowly rebounding against dollar." *Daily Sabah*, July 25. Accessed September 12, 2016. <http://www.dailysabah.com/finance/2016/07/25/markets-shaking-off-post-coup-attempt-losses-turkish-lira-slowly-rebounding-against-dollar>.

BBC. 2016. "Recep Tayyip Erdogan: Turkey's ruthless president." *BBC*, July 21. Accessed September 13, 2016. <http://www.bbc.com/news/world-europe-13746679>.

Bloomberg. 2016. *Borsa Istanbul 100 Index*. Accessed September 13, 2016. <http://www.bloomberg.com/quote/XU100:IND>.

—. 2016. "Turkish lira regains losses after failed coup attempt." *The National*, July 18. Accessed September 12, 2016. <http://www.thenational.ae/business/economy/turkish-lira-regains-losses-after-failed-coup-attempt>.

Cheng, A, M Jahan-Parvar, and P Rothman. 2010. "An empirical investigation fo stock market behavior in the Middle East and North Africa." *Journal of Empirical Finance* 17: 413-427.

Courcoulas, Constantine. 2016. "Turkish Lira Rises After Failed Coup as Stocks Slide with Bonds." *Bloomberg*, July 18. Accessed September 6, 2016. <https://www.bloomberg.com/news/articles/2016-07-17/turkish-lira-gains-in-early-trading-in-istanbul-after-coup-fails>.

Cutler, David, James Poterba, and Lawrence Summers. 1988. "What Moves Stock Prices?" *NBER Working Paper Series*.

Demir, Firat. 2005. "Militarization of the Market and Rent-Seeking Coalitions in Turkey." *Development and Change* 36 (4): 667-690.

Esen, Berk, and Sebnem Gumuscu. 2016. "Rising competitive authoritarianism in Turkey." *Third World Quarterly* 37 (9): 1581-1606.

Freund, Caroline, and Melise Jaud. 2014. *Regime Change, Democracy, and Growth*. Working Paper, Washington D.C.: Peterson Institute for International Economics. Accessed September 6, 2016. <https://piie.com/publications/wp/wp14-1.pdf>.

Gunay, Samet. 2016. "Is political risk still an issue for Turkish stock market?." *Borsa Istanbul Review* 16 (1): 21-31.

Kabir, Hassan, M, Neal C Maroney, Hassan M El-Sady, and A Telfah. 2003. "Country risk and stock market volatility, predictability, and diversification in the Middle East and Africa." *Economic Systems* 27: 63-82.

L.P. 2013. "Autocracy or democracy?" *The Economist*, March 27. Accessed September 6, 2016. <http://www.economist.com/blogs/freeexchange/2013/03/growth-0>.

Lagoarde-Segot, Thomas, and Brian Lucey. 2007. "International portfolio diversification: Is there a role for the Middle East and North Africa." *Journal of Multinational Financial Management* 17 (5): 401-416.

Landler, Mark. 2016. "Obama's Support of Erdogan Is a Stark Reminder of Turkey's Value to U.S." *The New York Times*, July 20. Accessed September 13, 2016. <http://www.nytimes.com/2016/07/21/world/europe/obama-erdogan-turkey-coup-attempt.html>.

Lehkonen, Heikki, and Kari Heimonen. 2015. "Democracy, political risks and stock market performance." *Journal of International Money and Finance* 59: 77-99.

Letsch, Constanze. 2013. "Turkey protests spread after violence in Istanbul over park demolition." *The Guardian*, June 1. Accessed 10 September. <https://www.theguardian.com/world/2013/may/31/istanbul-protesters-violent-clashes-police>.

Luttwak, Edward. 2016. "Why Turkey's Coup d'Etat Failed." *Foreign Policy*, July 16. Accessed September 10, 2016. <https://foreignpolicy.com/2016/07/16/why-turkeys-coup-detat-failed-erdogan/>.

Martin, Katie, Mehreen Kahn, and Joel Lewin. 2016. "Turkey's stocks fall but lira recovers." *Financial Times*, July 18. Accessed September 12, 2016. <http://www.ft.com/cms/s/0/46c462f6-4cb7-11e6-8172-e39ecd3b86fc.html#axzz4K87PrGH7>.

Narayan, C, F Karlml, F Fawzy, and S Pavlak. 2016. "Turkey coup attempt: How a night of death and mayhem unfolded." *CNN*, July 17. Accessed September 12, 2016. <http://edition.cnn.com/2016/07/15/world/turkey-military-coup-what-we-know/>.

Perotti, Enrico, and Pieter van Oijen. 2001. "Privatization, political risk and stock market development in emerging economies." *Journal of International Money and Finance* 20 (1): 43-69.

Reuters. 2016. "Turkish lira sinks as prime minister says coup attempt underway." *Reuters*, July 15. Accessed September 12, 2016. <http://www.reuters.com/article/us-global-forex-li-ra-idUSKCN0ZV2IR>.

Roe, Mark. 2006. "Legal Origins, Politics, and Modern Stock Markets." *Harvard Law Review* 120 (2): 460-527.

Tachau, Frank, and Metin Heper. 1983. "The State, Politics, and the Military in Turkey." *Comparative Politics* 16 (1): 17-33.

Tas, Hakkı. 2015. "Turkey - from tutelary to delegative democracy." *Third World Quarterly* 36 (4): 776-791.

The PRS Group. n.d. *International Country Risk Guide Methodology*. Guide, The PRS Group. Accessed September 12, 2016. <http://www.prsgroup.com/wp-content/uploads/2012/11/icrg-methodology.pdf>.

Tuysuz, Gul, and Elliott McLaughlin. 2016. "Failed coup in Turkey: What you need to know." *CNN*, July 18. Accessed September 12, 2016. <http://edition.cnn.com/2016/07/18/middleeast/turkey-failed-coup-explainer/>.

Unver, Akin. 2016. "Comment: Turkey and the Kurds, charting the end of a peace process." *Financial Times*, May 25. Accessed September 13, 2016. <http://www.ft.com/cms/s/0/9f06f0cc-1b85-11e6-b286-cddde55ca122.html#axzz4K87PrGH7>.

Yeginer, Ceylan. 2016. "Turkey Uses Post-Coup Emergency Decree to Purge Mayors and Teachers." *The New York Times*, September 9. Accessed September 12, 2016. <http://www.nytimes.com/2016/09/10/world/middleeast/turkey-uses-post-coup-emergency-decree-to-purge-mayors-and-teachers.html>.

Zurcher, Erik. n.d. *Turkey: A Modern History*.

# Wertheimer's Modes and Applications of Productive Thinking

Woo Jin Choi  
Korea International School - Jeju

---

## Abstract

Max Wertheimer is an influential figure in the development of the field of psychology, especially Gestalt psychology. His approach to studying human cognitive skills was original and even innovative since it provided a new paradigm through which to view the process of thinking and understanding similar interpretations of certain situations from different people. He published books such as *Productive Thinking* to explain his new perspective and how its application is not limited to psychology. For instance, his works were applied to the education field to maximize the learning abilities of students. Wertheimer's holistic view has served as a keystone of a new direction of education: promoting critical thinking and building connections as opposed to basic repetition.

## I. Introduction

Max Wertheimer's contribution to psychology has permeated minds across time and milieus. His reputation as a German-American psychologist stemmed from both his exceptional education and his career as a philosopher and a psychologist. Several testaments to his scholastic prowess are his works on productive thinking, gestalt theory, and the cognitive school of psychology. Ultimately, Wertheimer proved that learning as a process is a function of problem-solving dilemmas, and as such, the mind produces vectors that guide toward a solution, thereby ingeniously modifying every intricate situation towards productive change.

Wertheimer was born into the highly intellectual household of Wilhelm and Rosa Wertheimer on April 15, 1880, in Prague, Czechoslovakia (King, & Wertheimer, 2005). His father's career as a successful banker and bookkeeping tutor paved the way to the founding of the Handelschule Wertheimer, an educational institution of commerce. His mother held a doctorate from the University of Wurzburg (Watson, 1963).

He began his formal education at a Roman Catholic elementary school at the age of five and entered the Royal Imperial New City German State High School at age ten. He then studied law at Charles University but shifted to philosophy and psychology at the University of Berlin, from which he graduated summa cum laude with a doctorate (Kimble, Wertheimer, & White, 1991). Wertheim-

er's youth is characterized by a hunger to become an esteemed scholar. He was known to have had no bias to anything and seemed focused on knowing almost everything.

Wertheimer's professorship started at the University of Frankfurt's Psychological Institute where he worked with Wolfgang Kohler and Kurt Koffka (Wertheimer, 1991). He then immigrated to the USA and taught at the New School in New York. His studies on the intricacies of sensation and perception have made their mark on modern psychology (Koech & Nyaga, 2014). For instance, his work on the psychological diagnosis of criminal guilt is now utilized in surveillance and automated crime fighting (Zhong, Shi, & Visontai, 2004). The Phi phenomenon's applicability to the way that automated surveillance systems capture images is attributed to Gestalt theory. Today, Wertheimer is credited with being the father of Gestalt psychology, through which he sought to find a way of establishing the truth in various life situations, especially crime.

He continued with the study of insightful problem solving, which is a way of restructuring and reorganizing occurrences to foster clearer understanding. Hence, he began his book, *Productive Thinking*, with a reflective question: "What occurs when, now and then, thinking really works productively? What happens when, now and then, thinking forges ahead? What is really going on in such a process?" (Wertheimer, 1945, p. 1). Productive thinking, which is characterized by shifts in perspective, allows the problem solver to consider new and sometimes transformational approaches instead of basing learning solely from past experiences. For Wertheimer, to successfully solve a problem, one must understand the governing structure of a problem before seeing the role of its parts. Reproductive thinking, on the other hand, involves the application of familiar, routine procedures. It is believed that because of stereotypical—in its essence of being limiting—modes of thought that are used in approaching a problem, creativity might be impeded. Gestalt is driven by productive thinking because it requires a more unconventional way of thinking that leads to innovation, as opposed to thinking based on existing knowledge, familiar methods, and expectations.

*Productive Thinking* was published posthumously and is renowned for containing the procedural practices that enhanced the laws of logic and thought. In sum, Wertheimer proved that learning as a process is a function of problem-solving dilemmas, and as such, the mind produces vectors which act as a guide towards a solution, thereby modifying every situation to give a unique solution.

## II. Contribution to Gestalt Psychology

Max Wertheimer grew up in a household where cerebral discussions on governments and edification were merely a part of the routine. Not only did his parents, who were extreme intellectuals, educate him, but they also encouraged his artistic talents by engaging him to take piano and violin lessons. Wertheimer showed an isolated love of learning which persisted through adulthood. His grandfather, during one period, presented him a book of the great philosopher, Baruch Spinoza. As a result, Wertheimer developed an inclination towards philosophy; more so because he felt that Spinoza shared his beliefs and traits. Spinoza's work centered on the importance of the ability to grasp the meaning behind all phenomena. To wit, "The only thing good in itself is understanding; only that which hinders us from understanding is bad; and beings endowed with a human mind should devote themselves, as much as they can, to a contemplative life" (Koistinen, 2010, p1). Undoubtedly, the philosophies of Spinoza greatly influenced Wertheimer's works and helped paved his path to becoming a great thinker.

Spinoza's writings certainly shaped Wertheimer's psychological and philosophical mind, that he later applied them in his theories, one of which was the famous Gestalt. This connection is demonstrated by the fact that works of Spinoza and Wertheimer both focused on the power of holism. The former's were predisposed to view the world in a holistic manner—the unity of nature and the universe.

Wertheimer's convictions led him to develop the work in Gestalt which highlighted the importance and significance of a structured whole from which the parts are dependents.

Wertheimer's parents, however, believed that Spinoza's book was not appropriate for him to read; thus, they confiscated and hid it from him, but which he was able to retrieve eventually. This circumstance led to an interesting "what if" question: "If Wertheimer hadn't come across Spinoza's work, would he still have produced works that related to holism?" It is interesting how books can start a movement.

Wertheimer asserted that the early development of Gestalt psychology was divorced from reality, and Psychology failed to accurately define man in his natural environment. There must be something more than to what can be inferred through our basic sensations. This resonates with Kurt Koffka's, famous phrase, "The whole is other than the sum of its parts." Along with Wolfgang Kohler, Koffka was Wertheimer's assistant in executing experiments. Likewise, Wertheimer believed that the world is a sensible whole and reality is systematized into uniquely structured units (King, et al., 1994). The structural wholes, called "Gestalten" in his native language, determined the individual elements that make it up, rather than the latter determining the former. He was a strong proponent of the belief that the natural environment could be better understood through holism. He asserted that an encompassing view provides a different and far more meaningful result than by merely looking and sorting the individual parts.

### III. C. Piecemeal Analysis and the "Phi Phenomenon"

Piecemeal Analysis is an examination of actions made one piece or step at a given time. Max Wertheimer, through his musical experiments in Berlin, noted in his study that although piecemeal analysis works, it is not always applicable to all aggregates. Also, if a mechanism were to be analyzed in interrupted partialisms, its impact would be most likely unsatisfactory. Regarding music, the role required for each of the notes depends upon the structure of the whole music; the unification of musical notes leans towards the essence of the piece (Deutsch, 1984). For instance, one recognizes a piece of music even before the individual notes entered one's consciousness, as one recognizes Mozart even before hearing the whole piece. The single tone is what it is in the whole—as part, not as a piece; the whole breathes in every part (Riezler & Wertheimer, 2000). Accordingly, the listener works from the distinct parts towards the idea that inspired the whole--of which in the first place, determined the musical elements. A special unity brought into awareness is often comprehended from the core to which the parts are associated; akin to the center of a flower from which the petals are connected. The basic argument of Gestalt is that instead of probing the separate parts, combining them together, and lastly, deducing from them to arrive at a meaning of the whole, one must do the opposite—that is to penetrate into the innermost structure of the whole phenomenon to determine what happens to the characteristics of the separate parts. In other words, the action of the parts depends, not upon their summation or plurality, but upon the meaning of the whole.

According to Max Wertheimer, piecemeal stimuli can produce different reactions or sensations depending on the function and tendencies of the whole. By changing the condition of the whole, while the same stimuli are present, two parts can vary from one state to another. A good example is the motion picture, which can be better explained by Phi phenomenon. What Wertheimer discovered was not the phenomenon of apparent motion (between two fixed light bases flashing alternately) but a particular case (Wagemans, 2013). Phi phenomenon is when one perceives an apparent motion without seeing an object move from one place to another. It is a successive transition of an object that creates perceived motion as the observer sees it (Luchins, & Luchins, 1924). The implication, henceforth, is that the structured whole is the fundamental unit of mental life instead of the sensations that are produced solely by piecemeal stimuli. In regards to motion, Phi phenomenon helped define perception as a function of human interaction with the environment. In human experience, instead of the common stimulus-sensation formula, Gestalt Psychology aims to go beyond what is already there and strives to point out what is really taking place. For instance, when one watches a ballet performance, "lithe," "grace," and "elegant passion" are some of the words that come to mind. Nevertheless, the summation of bodily movement and instinct on the part of the onlooker cannot rationalize the entire epitome of the involvement. As Vittorio Benussi, an Italian psychologist holds, Gestalt perception involves a sense of activity plus a special psychic operation (Smith, 1988). Gestalt places more significance on what kind of organized whole a phenomenon is, not on cataloging separate parts. One has to look at the whole picture and contemplatively derive meaning from its innate quality based on its own ontological characteristics.

#### IV. D. Paradigms of Productive Thinking

Gestalt Psychologists have identified that there are mainly two approaches that a person goes through when he or she faces a problematic situation. These two perspectives are reproductive thinking, a process that involves prior knowledge or experience, and productive thinking, a process that involves something new (Branchini, Savardi, Bianchi, 2015). Notably, reproductive thinking is a repetition of the past. It is true that Wertheimer was more interested in productive thinking; his passion in that subject led to the development of the book *Productive Thinking*, which was published posthumously. In his works, he defined productive thinking as a cognitive process that starts from a deep understanding of the phenomenal structure of a problem (Branchini, Savardi, Bianchi, 2015). While performing this type of approach to solve a problem, one can face an obstacle called functional fixedness, which occurs when the person cannot approach a solution to a problem through using objects from daily life (Duncker, 1935). If one were to overcome this obstacle, he or she could use divergent thinking to use those materials that are encountered during everyday life and turn it into a key to solve a problem.

Because most of the school's learning system, such as memorizing, could lead to the decline in the productive thinking ability, Wertheimer highlighted the need for teachers, instructors, and textbook writers to think from the perspective of the student and impel the thought process of the learner. He believed that when texts were written with the consideration of the student's perspective, it fostered the growth of the student's learning better. Since the productive thinking and the creativity of the student are related to the student's educational development in school, Wertheimer used his knowledge about the cognitive process to highlight how it is important to have these educators to be considerate of the students (Wertheimer, 1996).

*Productive Thinking* asserts that functioning derives from the characteristics of a group and not piecemeal. Wertheimer believed that the productive thinking begins by trying to understand the structural characteristic of a problem. Successful problem-solving results from how a person structures the problem because of the possible new meanings that arise (Cunningham, 2016). This belief demonstrates how understanding the problem as a whole in a group is an essential element to a successful problem-solving. A holistic view of the problem relates to the fundamental idea of the Gestalt Psychology that the perspective towards individual parts in a group may differ when the parts are entirely viewed. However, despite the importance of holistic problem-solving, understanding the structure and the relationship between individual parts are also essential.

Repetition is a key to learning and skill improvement. For example, the utilization of drills and other avenues of memory work have been ingrained in diverse educational activities. Needless to say, Wertheimer's is one of the most widely-known statements and is utilized by many schools. However, Wertheimer noted that the repetition, in fact, inhibited critical thinking and instead promoted mechanization of the mind (from thesis). It simply trains the learner to passively integrate information.

Nonetheless, productive thinking should also be wielded properly. Because productive thinking, which is evidenced by creativity, relies on how one approaches the problem, continuous reinforcement of the same approach could lead to the insufficient practice of productive thinking, which leads to the decline in more advanced mental processes. Ergo, it must be noted that authorities such as educators should be careful to support different kinds of solutions so as to inspire novelty.

Structural truth or “whole truth” is the center of sensible reality which outlines situational expectations. Productive thinking is achieved when an individual’s honest determination fuels his quest for what is true. In relation to expectations, how one feels about a particular stimulus affects his/her search for truth. Individuals’ various dispositions to build plans, seek reasons, and assess explanations influence how sensible a construct is (Perkins, Jay, & Tishman, 1993). In Wertheimer’s words, “Without sincerity, our striving for truth is endangered by dilettantism, cheap resemblance of truth” (Morkuniene, 2004), p. 32). Hence, the highest form of reality is driven by the motivation to be genuinely aware of the innermost source of each situation.

Wertheimer’s “centering” and “recentering” are also noteworthy in explaining structural truth (Wolman, 1981). The transition from a person’s subjective expectations to a more objective understanding of the whole truth is termed centering. On the other hand, recentering happens when a new and poignant perspective is gained. A typical example is when scientists see problems from new angles which results in more creative procedures. As intellectual processes usually lead to utilitarian potentials, the structural truth is verified (King, & Wertheimer, 2005). For instance, in solving problems, Wertheimer as a professor first assumes that there is one truth, a certain answer. Then, in coming up with solutions, he often lectured that one must be honestly ‘joyful’ in working towards the truth. Moreover, he describes solutions with no structural relations as ‘ugly.’

Furthermore, Wertheimer gave an interesting statement on truth: “Truth and falsity, indeed understanding, is not necessarily something purely intellectual, remote from feelings and attitudes... It is in the total conduct of men rather than in their statements that truth or falsehood lives, more in what a man does, in his real reaction to other men and to things, in his will to do them justice, to live at one with them. Here lies the inner connection between truth and justice. In the realm of behavior and action, the problem recurs as to the difference between piece and part.” (Henle, 1961, p.28).

The most indispensable truth does not only rely on one witness or testimony. What is real and true is not dictated by what one simply hears. A conviction is not based on a single statement but the whole position.

*Productive Thinking* is meant to improve social circumstances. Experts have cited it as quintessential in responding to challenges in differing degrees. When minds work towards the unknown to known, progress is manifested. The perception of the connection of various elements of a structure positively guides actions (Branchini, Savardi, & Bianchi, 2015). Indeed, phenomenological perception is essential in understanding truth.

## V. Conclusions

Max Wertheimer objectively led Gestalt psychology to a new direction using experiments and the writings of Spinoza. The concepts on holism have been actualized through psychological truths. Though his influence on the field of psychology is usually associated with Gestalt psychology, his various achievements have applied to other related areas. His greatest achievements are in his ability to squash the ornamental application of piecemeal analysis and the phi phenomenon in productive thinking. He created and provided a new paradigm in the field of psychology and allowed other psychologists to approach human's cognitive science in a different way. Wertheimer's analysis of human cognition in a holistic view has been one of the most innovative and influential discoveries in the study of behavior. His efforts to view the problem as a whole instead of a group of single pieces helped him to find a different solution and analysis to the problem. Carefully looking into the depths of a phenomenon is characterized by appreciating the essential whole. For instance, the phi phenomenon implies that the perception evoked by the totality of a certain stimulus is far more superior than the effects of its separate components.

Productive Thinking, one of Wertheimer's greatest passions, showcased his views on the importance of phenomenal structure. He concluded that productive thinking starts with a problem and any other mode of learning such as meaningless repetitions negate the truth about the active learning process. He believed that productive thinking is the most efficient method for students to learn materials. He criticized conventional methods and claimed that the educators should consider the diverse perspectives of students. Thanks to Wertheimer's research, recent educational programs mostly focus on the cognitive processes of learners vis-à-vis the course material.

In his time, Wertheimer initiated a revolution that challenged traditional views such as that of Wilhelm Wundt, the father of modern psychology. Gestaltism went against the compartmentalized approach of structuralism as it opposes the principle that an analysis of an aggregate is adequate. With Wertheimer's work, the importance of each aspect and the synergy of all components have been pushed to the forefront.

## References

Branchini, E., Savardi, U., & Bianchi, I. (2015). Productive thinking: The role of perception and perceiving opposition. *Gestalt Theory*, 37 (1), 7-24.

Deutsch, D. (1984). Psychology and music. *Psychology and its Allied Disciplines*, 155-194. Retrieved from <http://deutsch.ucsd.edu/pdf/Ch-PsychMus.pdf>

King, D., & Wertheimer, M. (2005). Max Wertheimer and gestalt theory. New Brunswick: Transaction Publishers.

Luchins, A., & Luchins, E. (1924). Isomorphism in gestalt theory: Comparison of Wertheimer's and Kohler's concepts. Convention of the GTA. [http://www.gestalttheory.net/cms/uploads/pdf/archive/ab1990/Isomorphism\\_GT\\_Luchins.pdf](http://www.gestalttheory.net/cms/uploads/pdf/archive/ab1990/Isomorphism_GT_Luchins.pdf)

Morkuniene, J. (2004). Social philosophy: Paradigm of contemporary thinking. Washington, D.C. : The Council for Research in Values and Philosophy.

Perkins, D., Jay,E., & Tishman, S. (1993). Beyond abilities: A dispositional theory of thinking. *Merill-Palmer Quarterly*, 39, 1-21.

Smith, Barry. (1988). Gestalt Theory: An Essay In Philosophy. Munich and Vienna: Philosophia. p11-81.

Wagemans, Johan. (2013). Historical and Conceptual Background: Gestalt Theory. *Oxford Handbook of Perceptual Organization*. Oxford University Press

Wertheimer, M. & Riezler, K. (2000). Gestalt Pschology. New School of Social Research. Belle and Howell Information and Learning Company. P. 78.

Wolman, B. (1981). Contemporary theories and systems in Psychology. New York: Plenum Press.